



VENTURA PORT DISTRICT BOARD OF PORT COMMISSIONERS

Everard Ashworth, Chairman
Brian Brennan, Vice Chairman
Jim Friedman, Secretary
Chris Stephens, Commissioner
Jean Getchell, Commissioner

Oscar Peña, General Manager
Brian Pendleton, Deputy General Manager
Roland Trinh, Legal Counsel
Jessica Rauch, Clerk of the Board

PORT COMMISSION AGENDA REGULAR MEETING SEPTEMBER 12, 2018 AT 7:00PM FOUR POINTS SHERATON BALLROOM 1050 SCHOONER DRIVE, VENTURA, CA

*A Closed Session of the Board will be held at **5:30PM** at the Four Points Sheraton Captain's Room located at 1050 Schooner Drive, Ventura to discuss the items on the Attachment to Agenda-Closed Session Conference with Legal Counsel.*

*The Board will convene in **Open Session** at the Four Points Sheraton Ballroom located at 1050 Schooner Drive , Ventura for its Regular Meeting at **7:00PM.***

ADMINISTRATIVE AGENDA:

CALL TO ORDER: *By Chair Everard Ashworth*

PLEDGE OF ALLEGIANCE: *By Chair Everard Ashworth.*

ROLL CALL: *By the Clerk of the Board.*

ADOPTION OF AGENDA (3 minutes)

Consider and approve, by majority vote, minor revisions to agenda items and/or attachments and any item added to, or removed/continued from the Port Commission's agenda. Administrative Reports relating to this agenda and materials related to an item on this agenda submitted after distribution of the agenda packet are available for public review at the Port District's office located at 1603 Anchors Way Drive, Ventura, CA during business hours as well as on the District's website - www.venturaharbor.com. Each item on the agenda shall be deemed to include action by an appropriate motion, resolution or ordinance to take action on any item.

APPROVAL OF MINUTES (3 minutes)

The Minutes of the July 25, 2018 Regular Meeting and August 22, 2018 Special Meeting will be considered for approval.

PUBLIC COMMUNICATIONS (3 minutes)

The Public Communications period is set aside to allow public testimony on items not on today's agenda. Each person may address the Commission for up to three minutes or at the discretion of the Chair.

CLOSED SESSION REPORT (3 minutes)

Closed Sessions are not open to the public pursuant to the Brown Act. Any reportable actions taken by the Commission during Closed Session will be announced at this time.

BOARD COMMUNICATIONS (5 minutes)

Port Commissioner's may present brief reports on port issues, such as seminars, meetings and literature that would be of interest to the public and/or Commission, as a whole. Port Commissioner's must provide a brief summary and disclose any discussions he or she may have had with any Port District Tenants related to Port District business.

STAFF COMMUNICATIONS (5 minutes)

Ventura Port District Staff will update the Commission on important topics if needed.

LEGAL COUNSEL REPORT (5 minutes)**CONSENT AGENDA: (5 minutes)**

Matters appearing on the Consent Calendar are expected to be non-controversial and will be acted upon by the Board at one time, without discussion, unless a member of the Board or the public requests an opportunity to address any given item. Approval by the Board of Consent Items means that the recommendation is approved along with the terms set forth in the applicable staff reports.

A) Approval of Out of Town Travel Requests

Recommended Action: Voice Vote.

That the Board of Port Commissioners approve the out of town travel request for Electrician, John Collins.

B) Approval of New Restaurant Lease Agreement for Baja Bay Surf Taco

Recommended Action: Voice Vote.

That the Board of Port Commissioners approve a new Restaurant Lease Agreement between the Ventura Port District dba Ventura Harbor Village and Baja Bay Surf Taco for the premises located at 1567 Spinnaker Drive #104 consisting of a total of 773 square feet (623 patio) for a two (2) year term.

C) Approval of New Retail Lease Agreement for Barefoot Boutique

Recommended Action: Voice Vote.

That the Board of Port Commissioners:

- a) Approve by motion the termination of a lease agreement, dated November 16, 2015, for the premises located at 1575 Spinnaker Drive #106 A&B, consisting of 1,545 square feet (65 square feet storage); and
- b) Approve by motion a new retail lease agreement for the premises located at 1575 Spinnaker Drive #106 A&B, consisting of 1,545 square feet (236 square foot storage room) between the Ventura Port District dba Ventura Harbor Village and Elizabeth Marino dba Barefoot Boutique, LLC for a five-year term with one four-year option.

D) Approval of New Office Lease for Julianne Martin, Psy.D. and Gregory Gray, M.D.

Recommended Action: Voice Vote.

That the Board of Port Commissioners approve a new Office Lease Agreement between the Ventura Port District dba Ventura Harbor Village and Julianne Martin, Psy.D. and Gregory Gray, M.D. for the premises located at 1575 Spinnaker Drive #207 and #208 consisting of a total of 840 square feet for a one (1) year term with a one (1) year option.

STANDARD AGENDA:

1) Approval of Financial Statements and Checks for October through December 2017

Recommended Action: Roll Call Vote.

That the Board of Port Commissioners adopts Resolution No. 3360 to:

- a) Accept the following financial statements for the Quarter ended December 31, 2017; and
- b) Review the payroll and regular checks for October through December 2017.

2) Approval of Professional Services Agreement with White Nelson Diehl Evans

Recommended Action: Voice Vote.

That the Board of Port Commissioners:

- a) Approve the three year Professional Services Agreement with White Nelson Diehl Evans LLP to perform the District's financial audit of the fiscal years ending June 30, 2018, June 30, 2019 and June 30, 2020; and
- b) Appoint an Audit Liaison to work with staff and White Nelson Diehl Evans LLP throughout the audit process.

3) Approval of New Conflict of Interest and Disclosure Code

Recommended Action: Roll Call Vote.

That the Board of Port Commissioners adopt Resolution No. 3361 to approve the new Conflict of Interest Code Policy and rescind Resolution No. 3317.

4) Ventura Shellfish Enterprise Site Selection

Recommended Action: Information.

That the Board of Port Commissioners receive an informational report on the VSE site selection process with the anticipation of a final site recommendation with related permit applications, studies and reports on September 26, 2018.

REQUEST FOR FUTURE AGENDA ITEMS

ADJOURNMENT

This agenda was posted on Friday, September 7, 2018 by 5:00 p.m. at the Port District Office and online at www.venturaharbor.com - Port District Business - Meetings and Agendas.

♦

*In compliance with the Americans with Disabilities Act, if you need special assistance to participate in this meeting, please contact the Ventura Port District at (805) 642-8538. Notification 48 hours before the meeting will enable the District to make reasonable arrangements to ensure accessibility.
(28 CFR 35.102.35.104 ADA Title II)*

**ATTACHMENT TO PORT COMMISSION AGENDA
CLOSED SESSION CONFERENCE WITH LEGAL COUNSEL**

WEDNESDAY, SEPTEMBER 12, 2018

1. Conference with Real Property Negotiators - Per Government Code Section 54956.8:

- a) Property: **Federal Authorized Sea Bottom**
Negotiating Parties: Oscar Peña, Brian Pendleton, Roland Trinh
Under Negotiation: **Leasing or Permits for VSE Aquaculture Purposes**
- b) Property: **1583 Spinnaker Drive #104B, #105**
Negotiating Parties: Oscar Peña, Brian Pendleton, Roland Trinh
Under Negotiation: **Potential New Retail Lease with Health Minded, Corp. dba Frenchies Modern Nail Care**
- c) Property: **1567 Spinnaker Drive #104**
Negotiating Parties: Oscar Peña, Brian Pendleton, Roland Trinh
Under Negotiation: **New Restaurant Lease with Baja Bay Surf Taco**
- d) Property: **1575 Spinnaker Drive #106A&B**
Negotiating Parties: Oscar Peña, Brian Pendleton, Roland Trinh
Under Negotiation: **New Retail Lease with Barefoot Boutique**
- e) Property: **1575 Spinnaker Drive #207 & #208**
Negotiating Parties: Oscar Peña, Brian Pendleton, Roland Trinh
Under Negotiation: **New Office Lease with Julianne Martin, Psy.D. and Gregory Gray, M.D.**

2. Conference with Legal Counsel - Pending Litigation per Government Code Section 54956.9(d)(1): Rosemary Lazard vs. Ventura Port District; Case No. 56-2017-00500990-CU-PO-VTA. (Verbal Report)

3. Conference with Legal Counsel – Anticipated Litigation: Significant exposure to litigation pursuant to paragraph (2) of subdivision (d) of Section 54956.9: Three Cases. (Verbal Report)



BOARD OF PORT COMMISSIONERS

SEPTEMBER 12, 2018

APPROVAL OF MINUTES
JULY 25, 2018 REGULAR MEETING
AUGUST 22, 2018 SPECIAL MEETING

VENTURA PORT DISTRICT

BOARD OF PORT COMMISSIONERS MINUTES OF JULY 25, 2018



The Regular Meeting of the Ventura Board of Port Commissioners was called to order by Chairman Everard Ashworth at 7:09PM at the Ventura Port District Administration Office, 1603 Anchors Way Drive, Ventura, CA 93001.

Commissioners Present:

Everard Ashworth, Chairman
Jim Friedman, Secretary
Jean Getchell

Commissioners Absent:

Brian Brennan, Vice Chairman
Chris Stephens

Port District Staff:

Oscar Peña, General Manager
Brian Pendleton, Deputy General Manager
Gloria Adkins, Accounting Manager
Joe Gonzalez, Facilities Manager
Frank Locklear, Marina Manager
Jennifer Talt-Lundin, Marketing Manager
Robin Baer, Property Manager
Richard Parsons, Consultant
John Higgins, Harbormaster
Jessica Rauch, Clerk of the Board

Legal Counsel:

Andy Turner
Dominic Nunneri

AGENDA

CALL TO ORDER: By Chairman Everard Ashworth at 7:09PM.

PLEDGE OF ALLEGIANCE: By Commissioner Friedman.

ROLL CALL: Commissioner Brennan and Stephens were absent.

ADOPTION OF AGENDA

ACTON: Commissioner Getchell moved, seconded by Commissioner Friedman and carried by a vote of 3-0 to adopt the July 25, 2018 agenda.

APPROVAL OF MINUTES

The Minutes of July 11, 2018 Regular meeting were considered as follows:

ACTION: Commissioner Friedman moved, seconded by Commissioner Getchell and carried by a vote of 3-0 to approve the minutes of the July 11, 2018 regular meeting.

PUBLIC COMMUNICATIONS: Vikki Brock spoke about the Pine tree between National Park Visitor Center and Parcel 8. She feels it did not need to be cut down, but could be trimmed appropriately to accommodate whatever needs it was hindering.

CLOSED SESSION REPORT: Mr. Turner stated that the Board met in closed session; discussed and reviewed all items on the closed session agenda. Staff was given instructions on how to proceed as appropriate and there was no action taken that is reportable under The Brown Act.

BOARD COMMUNICATIONS: Commissioner Ashworth reported that he was fortunate to have attended the Change of Command Ceremony for the Army Corps of Engineers.

STAFF COMMUNICATIONS: Mr. Pendleton reported to the Board that ATE had done their vehicle survey in Harbor Village.

LEGAL COUNSEL REPORT: None.

CONSENT AGENDA:

A) Approval of Out of Town Travel Requests

Recommended Action: Voice Vote.

That the Board of Port Commissioners approve the out of town travel requests for the following employees:

- A) Facilities Manager, Joe Gonzalez to attend the CA JPIA Risk Management Educational Forum;
- B) Harbormaster, John Higgins to attend the CA JPIA Risk Management Educational Forum;
- C) Consultant, Richard Parsons to attend the CMANC Fall Meeting;
- D) Commissioner, Brian Brennan to attend the CMANC Fall Meeting;
- E) Deputy General Manager, Brian Pendleton to attend the PCSGA Annual Shellfish Conference;
- F) General Manager, Oscar Peña to attend the PCSGA Annual Shellfish Conference.

ACTION: Commissioner Friedman moved, seconded by Commissioner Getchell and carried by a vote of 3-0 to approve the out of town travel requests for the following employees:

- A) Facilities Manager, Joe Gonzalez to attend the CA JPIA Risk Management Educational Forum;
- B) Harbormaster, John Higgins to attend the CA JPIA Risk Management Educational Forum;
- C) Consultant, Richard Parsons to attend the CMANC Fall Meeting;
- D) Commissioner, Brian Brennan to attend the CMANC Fall Meeting;
- E) Deputy General Manager, Brian Pendleton to attend the PCSGA Annual Shellfish Conference;

F) General Manager, Oscar Peña to attend the PCSGA Annual Shellfish Conference.

B) Approval of Professional Services Agreement with Motionloft, Inc.

Recommended Action: Voice Vote.

That the Board of Port Commissioners approve a three year professional services agreement with Motionloft, Inc. for pedestrian and vehicle analytics in the amount of \$31,338.00.

ACTION: Commissioner Friedman moved, seconded by Commissioner Getchell and carried by a vote of 3-0 to approve a three year professional services agreement with Motionloft, Inc. for pedestrian and vehicle analytics in the amount of \$31,338.00.

STANDARD AGENDA:

1) Adoption of Resolution No. 3357 Authorizing the Execution and Delivery by the District of an Installment Sale Agreement and Authorizing the Execution of Other Necessary Documents and Related Actions for the Ventura Harbor Marina Dock Replacement Project

Recommended Action: Roll Call Vote.

That the Board of Port Commissioners adopt Resolution No. 3357:

- a) Authorizing the execution and delivery by the District of an Installment Sale Agreement Ventura Harbor Marina Dock Replacement Project; and
- b) Authorizing the execution of other necessary documents and related actions for the Ventura Harbor Marina Dock Replacement Project.

ACTION: Commissioner Getchell moved, seconded by Commissioner Friedman and carried by a vote of 3-0 to adopt Resolution No. 3357 authorizing the execution and delivery by the District of an Installment Sale Agreement Ventura Harbor Marina Dock Replacement Project; and authorizing the execution of other necessary documents and related actions for the Ventura Harbor Marina Dock Replacement Project.

2) Approval of a Professional Services Agreement for Bidding and Construction Phases of the Ventura Harbor Village Marina Dock Replacement Project

Recommended Action: Voice Vote.

That the Board of Port Commissioners approve a Professional Services Agreement with Noble Consultants in the amount of \$93,365 to provide engineering services during the bidding and construction phases of the Ventura Harbor Village Marina Dock Replacement Project.

ACTION: Commissioner Friedman moved, seconded by Commissioner Getchell and carried by a vote of 3-0 to approve a Professional Services Agreement with Noble Consultants in the amount of \$93,365 to provide engineering services during the bidding and construction phases of the Ventura Harbor Village Marina Dock Replacement Project.

3) Approval of a New Retail Lease Agreement for Commissioned Desserts, LLC dba Top This Chocolate

Recommended Action: Voice Vote.

That the Board of Port Commissioners approve a new Retail Lease Agreement between the Ventura Port District dba Ventura Harbor Village and Commissioned Desserts, LLC dba Top This Chocolate for the premises located at 1559 Spinnaker Drive #109 consisting of a total of 1,381 square feet for a three (3) year term with two separate three (3) year options.

ACTION: Commissioner Friedman moved, seconded by Commissioner Getchell and carried by a vote of 3-0 to approve a new Retail Lease Agreement between the Ventura Port District dba Ventura Harbor Village and Commissioned Desserts, LLC dba Top This Chocolate for the premises located at 1559 Spinnaker Drive #109 consisting of a total of 1,381 square feet for a three (3) year term with two separate three (3) year options.

Public Comment: Owner, Shana Elson introduced herself and explained her business concept.

4) Consider Possible Award of Contract to the Garland Company, Inc. for the Fish Pier Deck Resurfacing Project

Recommended Action: Voice Vote.

That the Board of Port Commissioners consider possible award of a Fish Pier Deck Resurfacing Contract to the Garland Company, Inc., subject to Legal Counsel's final approval of the contract documents.

ACTION: Commissioner Getchell moved, seconded by Commissioner Friedman and carried by a vote of 3-0 to continue this item to a future meeting.

AGENDA PLANNING GUIDE AND REQUEST FOR FUTURE AGENDA ITEMS: None.

ADJOURNMENT: The meeting was adjourned at 7:57PM.

Secretary

VENTURA PORT DISTRICT

BOARD OF PORT COMMISSIONERS MINUTES OF AUGUST 22, 2018



The Special Meeting of the Ventura Board of Port Commissioners was called to order by Chairman Everard Ashworth at 6:49PM at the Ventura Port District Administration Office, 1603 Anchors Way Drive, Ventura, CA 93001.

Commissioners Present:

Everard Ashworth, Chairman
Brian Brennan, Vice Chairman
Jim Friedman, Secretary
Chris Stephens
Jean Getchell

Commissioners Absent:

None.

Port District Staff:

Oscar Peña, General Manager
Brian Pendleton, Deputy General Manager
Gloria Adkins, Accounting Manager
Richard Parsons, Consultant
John Higgins, Harbormaster
Jessica Rauch, Clerk of the Board

Legal Counsel:

Timothy Gosney
Dominic Nunneri

AGENDA

CALL TO ORDER: By Chairman Everard Ashworth at 6:49PM.

PLEDGE OF ALLEGIANCE: By Commissioner Brennan.

ROLL CALL: All Commissioners were present.

ADOPTION OF AGENDA

ACTON: Commissioner Stephens moved, seconded by Commissioner Getchell and carried by a vote of 5-0 to adopt the August 22, 2018 agenda.

PUBLIC COMMUNICATIONS: Sam Sadove would like to receive the information the Commission asked for on the ridership of the trolley. He would also like to know why it has stopped coming to the Rhumb Line.

CLOSED SESSION REPORT: Mr. Gosney stated that the Board met in closed session; discussed and reviewed all items on the closed session agenda. Staff was given instructions on how to proceed as appropriate and there was no action taken that is reportable under The Brown Act.

BOARD COMMUNICATIONS: Commissioner Ashworth reported that the VSE has been working hard on the application that will be coming to the Board for approval on September 12th.

STAFF COMMUNICATIONS: Mr. Peña thanked Mr. Pendleton on his hard work in getting the VSE application finished. He also reported that Andria's sent a letter reporting that in 2017 their sales exceeded \$4M.

STANDARD AGENDA:

1) Approval of SEIU-Local 721 MOU Representing Full-Time Harbor Patrol

Recommended Action: Roll Call Vote.

That the Board of Port Commissioners:

- a) Adopt Resolution No. 3358, approving the Memorandum of Understanding Collective Bargaining Agreement between the Ventura Port District and the Service Employees International Union, SEIU-Local 721, representing all regular full-time employees classified as the Harbor Patrol; and
- b) Adopt Resolution No. 3359 between Ventura Port District and the California Public Employment Retirement System (PERS) ratifying the change to the Employer Paid Member Contribution (EPMC) to reflect the Service Employees International Union, SEIU-Local 721 Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) for the Harbor Patrol employees.

ACTION: Commissioner Friedman moved, seconded by Commissioner Getchell and carried by a vote of 5-0 to adopt Resolution No. 3358, approving the Memorandum of Understanding Collective Bargaining Agreement between the Ventura Port District and the Service Employees International Union, SEIU-Local 721, representing all regular full-time employees classified as the Harbor Patrol; and adopt Resolution No. 3359 between Ventura Port District and the California Public Employment Retirement System (PERS) ratifying the change to the Employer Paid Member Contribution (EPMC) to reflect the Service Employees International Union, SEIU-Local 721 Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) for the Harbor Patrol employees.

2) Approval of Pipeline License Agreement between Ventura Port District and ARTPS, LLC

Recommended Action: Voice Vote.

That the Board of Port Commissioners approve the License Agreement by and between the Ventura Port District, a California Port District, (Licensor) and ARTPS, LLC, a Texas Limited Liability Company (Licensee) to operate and utilize a 22 inch diameter pipeline and the appurtenances thereto that run 6,643 linear feet through, along, across and underneath the surface of a portion of the District's property for the transport of oil.

ACTION: Commissioner Brennan moved, seconded by Commissioner Stephens and carried by a vote of 5-0 to approve the License Agreement by and between the Ventura Port District, a California Port District, (Licensor) and ARTPS, LLC, a Texas Limited Liability Company (Licensee) to operate and utilize a

22 inch diameter pipeline and the appurtenances thereto that run 6,643 linear feet through, along, across and underneath the surface of a portion of the District's property for the transport of oil, contingent upon the Public Utilities Commission's (PUC) approval and if any changes per the PUC, Legal Counsel and General Manager review.

3) Award of Contract to the Garland Company, Inc. for the Fish Pier Deck Resurfacing Project

Recommended Action: Voice Vote.

That the Board of Port Commissioners:

- a) Award the Fish Pier Deck Resurfacing Contract to the Garland Company, Inc., in the amount of \$499,950, subject to Legal Counsel's final approval of the contract documents; and
- b) Approve an increased appropriation for the Fish Pier Resurfacing Project of \$175,000 bringing the total project cost to \$575,000.

ACTION: Commissioner Stephens moved, seconded by Commissioner Getchell and carried by a vote of 5-0 to award the Fish Pier Deck Resurfacing Contract to the Garland Company, Inc., in the amount of \$499,950, subject to Legal Counsel's final approval of the contract documents; and approve an increased appropriation for the Fish Pier Resurfacing Project of \$175,000 bringing the total project cost to \$575,000.

ADJOURNMENT: The meeting was adjourned at 7:10PM.

Secretary



BOARD OF PORT COMMISSIONERS
SEPTEMBER 12, 2018

CONSENT AGENDA ITEM A
APPROVAL OF OUT OF
TOWN TRAVEL REQUESTS

**VENTURA PORT DISTRICT
BOARD COMMUNICATION**

CONSENT AGENDA ITEM A
Meeting Date: September 12, 2018

TO: Board of Port Commissioners
FROM: Oscar F. Peña, General Manager
SUBJECT: Out of Town Travel Requests

RECOMMENDATION:

That the Board of Port Commissioners approve by motion the following out of town travel requests for:

- A) Electrician, John Collins to travel to Ontario, California to participate in the California Building Officials Education Week (CALBO) on October 14 – 17, 2018. Attending this conference will allow Mr. Collins to keep up with continuing education units for Port District property inspections. Estimated cost for the travel is as follows:

Registration	\$830.00
Lodging	\$410.40
Meals	\$475.00
Mileage	\$113.77
TOTAL	\$1,829.17



BOARD OF PORT COMMISSIONERS

SEPTEMBER 12, 2018

CONSENT AGENDA ITEM B

APPROVAL OF NEW RESTAURANT

LEASE AGREEMENT FOR BAJA BAY

SURF TACO

**VENTURA PORT DISTRICT
BOARD COMMUNICATION**

CONSENT AGENDA ITEM B
Meeting Date: September 12, 2018

TO: Board of Port Commissioners
FROM: Robin Baer, Property Manager
SUBJECT: Approval of New Restaurant Lease Agreement for Baja Bay Surf Taco
1567 Spinnaker Drive #104

RECOMMENDATION:

That the Board of Port Commissioners approve a new Restaurant Lease Agreement between the Ventura Port District dba Ventura Harbor Village and Baja Bay Surf Taco for the premises located at 1567 Spinnaker Drive #104 consisting of a total of 773 square feet (623 patio) for a two (2) year term.

SUMMARY:

Baja Bay Surf Taco has been a Tenant since May 2007. Staff has re-negotiated with this tenant who will now be signing a two-year term lease. He will be updating his outside and inside furniture, painting the interior of the restaurant and adding desserts to the menu.

BACKGROUND:

After visiting Ensenada, a city on the Pacific coast of Mexico's Baja California, Mr. Rangel's vision was to bring to the Harbor his experience of Mexican cuisine. He has been a chef for over twenty years and specializes in fish tacos, burritos and tostadas along with the traditional Mexican dishes for lunch, dinner and desserts.

FISCAL IMPACT:

This new lease reflects current market rental rates for restaurant space in the complex. The annual occupancy cost for the first year of this lease is approximately \$25,000. The minimum rent over the two year term is adjusted annually by 3%. The District will be contributing \$5,000 towards paint, interior modifications and replacing the kitchen fan.

ATTACHMENTS:

None.



BOARD OF PORT COMMISSIONERS

SEPTEMBER 12, 2018

CONSENT AGENDA ITEM C

APPROVAL OF NEW RETAIL LEASE
AGREEMENT FOR BAREFOOT
BOUTIQUE

**VENTURA PORT DISTRICT
BOARD COMMUNICATION**

CONSENT AGENDA ITEM C
Meeting Date: September 12, 2018

TO: Board of Port Commissioners
FROM: Robin Baer, Property Manager
SUBJECT: Termination of Agreement and Approval of New Retail Lease Agreement for Elizabeth Marino dba Barefoot Boutique LLC, 1575 Spinnaker Drive #106 A&B

RECOMMENDATION:

That the Board of Port Commissioners:

- a) Approve by motion the termination of a lease agreement, dated November 16, 2015, for the premises located at 1575 Spinnaker Drive #106 A&B, consisting of 1,545 square feet (65 square feet storage); and
- b) Approve by motion a new retail lease agreement for the premises located at 1575 Spinnaker Drive #106 A&B, consisting of 1,545 square feet (236 square foot storage room) between the Ventura Port District dba Ventura Harbor Village and Elizabeth Marino dba Barefoot Boutique, LLC for a five-year term with one four-year option.

SUMMARY:

Ms. Marino has been a tenant since June 2013. Staff has re-negotiated with this tenant who will now be signing a five-year lease term with one four-year option.

BACKGROUND:

Barefoot Boutique opened in 2013 in a 609 square foot unit. In November 2015, to better serve her customer base, she expanded to a unit with 1,545 square feet. She specializes in hip and trendy clothing that reflects the fun and active lifestyle of California. She also carries unique local, artisan jewelry and soaps. Ms. Marino's success is surpassing her expectations and she looks forward to a continued profitable future in Ventura Harbor Village.

FISCAL IMPACT:

This new lease reflects current market rental rates for retail space in the complex. The annual occupancy cost for the first year of this lease is approximately \$43,488. The minimum rent over the five year term is adjusted annually by 3%. There are no improvements to this space that the District will be contributing.

ATTACHMENTS:

None.



BOARD OF PORT COMMISSIONERS

SEPTEMBER 12, 2018

CONSENT AGENDA ITEM D

APPROVAL OF NEW OFFICE LEASE
AGREEMENT FOR JULIANNE MARTIN,
PSY.D. AND GREGORY GRAY, M.D.

**VENTURA PORT DISTRICT
BOARD COMMUNICATION**

CONSENT AGENDA ITEM D
Meeting Date: September 12, 2018

TO: Board of Port Commissioners
FROM: Robin Baer, Property Manager
SUBJECT: Approval of New Office Lease Agreement for Julianne Martin, Psy.D. and Gregory Gray, M.D.
1575 Spinnaker Drive #207 & #208

RECOMMENDATION:

That the Board of Port Commissioners approve a new Office Lease Agreement between the Ventura Port District dba Ventura Harbor Village and Julianne Martin, Psy.D. and Gregory Gray, M.D. for the premises located at 1575 Spinnaker Drive #207 and #208 consisting of a total of 840 square feet for a one (1) year term with a one (1) year option.

SUMMARY:

Staff has re-negotiated with this tenant who will now be signing a one-year term lease, with one year option. They are looking to retire soon, but don't know quite when. No improvements are required for this space.

BACKGROUND:

Julianne Y. Martin, Psy.D. (Psychologist) and Gregory E. Gray, M.D. (Psychiatrist) has been a Harbor Village tenant since September 2015. Between the two, they have over 38 years of experience in their fields. They relocated from Channel Islands Harbor to the Ventura Harbor and previously signed a one year lease in 2015. In 2016, a two year leased was signed. They have enjoyed the Village and would like to continue tenancy.

FISCAL IMPACT:

This new lease reflects current market rental rates for office space in the complex. The annual occupancy cost for year one will be approximately \$19,000 for year one. The option year will be increased by 3%.

ATTACHMENTS:

None.



BOARD OF PORT COMMISSIONERS SEPTEMBER 12, 2018

STANDARD AGENDA ITEM 1 APPROVAL OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND CHECKS FOR OCTOBER THROUGH DECEMBER 2017

**VENTURA PORT DISTRICT
BOARD COMMUNICATION**

STANDARD AGENDA ITEM 1
Meeting Date: September 12, 2018

TO: Board of Port Commissioners
FROM: Gloria Adkins, Accounting Manager
SUBJECT: Approval of Financial Statements and Checks for January through March 2018

RECOMMENDATION:

That the Board of Port Commissioners adopts Resolution No. 3360 to:

- a) Accept the following financial statements for the Quarter ended March 31, 2018; and
- b) Review the payroll and regular checks for January through March 2018.

SUMMARY:

Attached for the Board's review are the financial statements for the quarter ended March 31, 2018 and the check registers for January through March 2018.

BACKGROUND:

The financial statements consist of Statement of Revenue and Expenses, Budget Analysis Notes, Annual Budget Compared to Year-to-Date Expenditures, Balance Sheet, Cash Flow Statement, Distribution of Cash, Comparison of Lease Rents, and a Three Year Comparative Statement of Revenue and Expenses.

The financial statements for the Aquaculture Grant Fund are included here as Attachment 3.

Operational Disbursements

The accounts payable check registers for January through March are located after all the financial statement documents as Attachment 4. The registers include a brief description of the purpose for each check.

I have explained some of the major accounts payable check expenditures below. (Regular payments such as monthly service contracts, utilities, legal services, etc. are not shown below as they are recurring each month.):

January 2018 -

- Ventura Harbor Storage was paid \$12,226 for the December and January fisherman's storage area rental. This monthly fee is reimbursed back to the District as per the lease with Karen Dupuy dba Harbor Boat & Storage.
- Garland/DBS, Inc. was paid \$299,006 on 1/11/18 as a progress payment on the Village roof project.
- Viola Inc. was paid \$38,789 on 1/16 and \$40,000 on 1/24 as progress payments on the Phase 3 Carousel Courtyard renovation project.
- Downtown Ventura Partners was paid \$8,200 on 1/25, \$8,000 was advertising on the trolley as per trolley partnership for the period January thru June 2018 and \$200 was for Big Belly advertising.
- Noble Consultants Inc. was paid \$61,345 on 1/25, \$44,305 for services related to the Village dock renovation of slips C, D, G & H; \$12,930 related to the condition inspection of the fish pier and \$4,110 related to the purchasing of the new fish pier crane.

- Seaworthy Marine Products was paid \$13,569 on 1/26 for a replacement boat engine and miscellaneous parts.
- ID Plans Corporation was paid \$13,600 on 1/25 for updated 'as built' floor plans for existing spaces in Harbor Village.
- Marcos Ramos Painting was paid \$10,305 on 1/25 for ten separate jobs throughout the Village including dry rot repair, doorway entry features, restroom and equipment room, and upstairs hand rails.

February 2018 -

- Downtown Ventura Partners was paid \$12,400 on 2/08, \$12,000 was as per the trolley partnership for the January thru June 2018 period and \$400 was for Big Belly advertising.
- Marcos Ramos Painting was paid \$10,150 on 2/08 for six separate jobs throughout the Village including window frame dry rot repair, inner courtyard stairs, and pressure wash and paint retainer walls.
- West Coast Air Conditioning was paid \$9,580 on 2/08 for a replacement air conditioning unit at 1691 National Park Service suite and the quarterly HVAC maintenance contract for units in the Village and the District headquarters.
- Cal Coast Motorsports was paid \$24,488 for the two replacement personal watercraft crafts used by Patrol in water rescues.
- Kratos Construction was paid \$12,350 on 2/08 for office suite renovations at 1575 Spinnaker #205.
- Noble Consultants was paid \$11,206 on 2/21, \$1,875 for services related to the Village dock renovation of slips C, D, G & H; \$133 related to the condition inspection of the fish pier and \$9,198 related to the purchasing of the new fish pier crane.
- ThyssenKrupp Elevator Corp was paid \$43,808 on 2/21 as the final payment on the elevator modernization project in the 1583 Spinnaker building located behind the Boatyard Pub suite.

March 2018 -

- Sparky's Electric Inc. was paid \$16,535 on 3/08 for the electrical upgrades and fire alarm box replacements in the 1583 elevator as part of the modernization project.
- Ventura County Air Pollution Control District was paid \$18,335 on 3/08 for the annual environmental permit renewal as needed for dredging.

Details reflecting purchases made through the District's Chase Bank credit cards for January through March 2018 are included as Attachment 5.

Payroll Disbursements

The District has 26 bi-weekly pay periods per year; ten months of the year will have two regular payroll periods and two months will have three regular pay periods. January and February contained two regular pay periods each. The payroll for the month of March is higher than normal because it contains three payroll periods and the quarterly accrued compensation hours pay-off run.

FISCAL IMPACT:

The Statement of Income and Expenses reflects a positive 'Change in Net Position' of \$1,114,106 for the period ended March 31, 2018.

ATTACHMENTS:

Attachment 1 – Resolution No. 3360

Attachment 2 – Statement of Income Expenses – Quarter Ended March 31, 2018

Attachment 3 – Aquaculture Fisheries Grant Fund Financial Statements at March 31, 2018

Attachment 4 – Accounts Payable Check Registers January - March 2018

Attachment 5 – Chase Credit Card Charges January – March 2018

ATTACHMENT 1



RESOLUTION NO. 3360

**RESOLUTION OF THE BOARD OF PORT COMMISSIONERS OF THE
VENTURA PORT DISTRICT CONSENTING TO THE ACCEPTANCE OF THE
FINANCIAL STATEMENT AND APPROVAL OF CHECKS**

BE IT RESOLVED by the Board of Port Commissioners of the Ventura Port District, that:

- A. Accept the Financial Statements for the Quarter ended March 31, 2018;
- B. The following Checks are hereby reviewed:
 - 1) Payroll Checks #9489-9568 and direct deposits inclusive in the amounts of \$129,111 for January 2018 salaries, \$131,139 for February 2018 salaries, and \$233,826 for March 2018 salaries.
 - 2) Regular Checks #47429-47915, in the amounts of \$835,891 for January 2018 expenditures, \$323,411 for February 2018 expenditures, and \$227,365 for March 2018 expenditures.

PASSED, APPROVED, AND ADOPTED at a Regular Meeting of the Board of Port Commissioners of the Ventura Port District held on September 12, 2018, Resolution No. 3360 was adopted by the following vote:

AYES:
NOES:
Abstain:
Absent:

Attest:

Chairman

Secretary

(Seal)



ATTACHMENT 2

Ventura Port District Statement of Income and Expenses For the Period Ended March 31, 2018

	< ----- Quarter (3 mos) ----- >			< ----- Year-to-Date ----- >		
	Budget	Activity	Variance	Budget	Activity	Variance
OPERATING REVENUES						
Parcel Lease Income	\$ 1,065,500	\$ 1,071,930	\$ 6,430	\$ 2,803,500	\$ 2,813,552	\$ 10,052
Dry Storage Income	30,000	31,425	1,425	90,000	93,492	3,492
Fisherman's Storage	18,360	18,652	292	55,460	55,330	(130)
Parking Income	11,000	4,552	(6,448)	50,000	39,379	(10,621)
Miscellaneous Income/Rentals	2,395	2,495	100	42,985	43,320	335
Village Income						
Harbor Village Lease Income	559,000	597,881	38,881	1,917,000	1,970,792	53,792
Commercial Fishing	96,300	109,507	13,207	302,200	327,025	24,825
Miscellaneous Income	1,395	1,412	17	4,135	7,357	3,222
Harbor Event Fees	7,200	3,184	(4,016)	21,700	14,840	(6,860)
Marketing Booth/Vendor Income	4,200	2,188	(2,012)	6,800	3,453	(3,347)
Co-Op Advert/Sponsorship	3,501	500	(3,001)	10,503	13,120	2,617
Merchants Promo Fund	26,700	25,333	(1,367)	78,000	76,807	(1,193)
Slip Rentals	219,000	233,023	14,023	646,000	660,075	14,075
Dock Electrical Income	10,000	6,507	(3,493)	19,000	15,798	(3,202)
C A M Income	84,000	83,926	(74)	250,500	251,190	690
Total Oper. Revenues	\$ 2,138,551	\$ 2,192,515	\$ 53,964	\$ 6,297,783	\$ 6,385,530	\$ 87,747
OPERATING EXPENSES						
Personnel Expenses						
Salaries & Wages						
Regular Salaries	\$ 590,415	\$ 595,510	\$ (5,095)	\$ 1,686,915	\$ 1,674,797	\$ 12,118
Part-time Help	19,900	19,739	161	56,900	50,145	6,755
Overtime Pay	21,900	19,567	2,333	77,300	71,809	5,491
Holiday Pay	11,500	12,430	(930)	34,250	27,557	6,693
Total Salaries & Wages	\$ 643,715	\$ 647,246	\$ (3,531)	\$ 1,855,365	\$ 1,824,308	\$ 31,057
Other personnel expenses						
Retirement Contributions/Exp	\$ 128,560	\$ 122,179	\$ 6,381	\$ 367,310	\$ 369,179	\$ (1,869)
Payroll Taxes	11,796	11,267	529	40,856	32,955	7,901
Worker's Comp Ins.	42,990	42,990	0	128,970	128,970	0
OPEB Liability	31,239	30,633	606	93,717	92,103	1,614
Medical & Life Ins.	70,734	70,009	725	212,202	207,332	4,870
Optional Benefit Plan	57,495	55,593	1,902	172,485	160,932	11,553
Uniforms & Tool Allowances	7,245	8,149	(904)	21,735	21,541	194
Total - Other Personnel Expenses	\$ 350,059	\$ 340,820	\$ 9,239	\$ 1,037,275	\$ 1,013,012	\$ 24,263
Total Personnel Expenses	\$ 993,774	\$ 988,066	\$ 5,708	\$ 2,892,640	\$ 2,837,320	\$ 55,320

ATTACHMENT 2

Ventura Port District Statement of Income and Expenses For the Period Ended March 31, 2018

	< ----- Quarter (3 mos) ----- >			< ----- Year-to-Date ----- >		
	Budget	Activity	Variance	Budget	Activity	Variance
General Expenses						
Advertising	\$ 1,749	\$ 1,999	\$ (250)	\$ 9,247	\$ 9,141	\$ 106
Leasing & Real Estate	4,998	3,968	1,030	14,994	13,914	1,080
Auto Mileage & Allowance	3,495	3,392	103	10,485	9,992	493
Auto/Boat Equip & Maint	39,895	30,707	9,188	113,985	81,804	32,181
Bad Debt	0	449	(449)	0	914	(914)
Bank Fees & Other Misc	3,900	1,647	2,253	11,650	7,282	4,368
Building Maintenance	102,255	96,219	6,036	284,765	268,373	16,392
Communications	11,250	9,455	1,795	33,750	27,559	6,191
Conferences & Training	20,880	9,070	11,810	49,960	22,843	27,117
Dock Maint. & Repair	11,100	5,941	5,159	32,400	14,887	17,513
Village Enhancements	7,500	0	7,500	22,500	0	22,500
Equipment Rental	3,375	2,696	679	10,125	10,518	(393)
General Insurance	66,498	66,498	0	199,494	199,494	0
Grounds Maintenance	34,505	25,378	9,127	120,515	106,240	14,275
General Harbor Maintenance	900	300	600	2,700	300	2,400
Janitorial Supplies	13,750	11,572	2,178	46,250	40,497	5,753
Land/Building Rental Expense	18,360	18,652	(292)	55,460	55,152	308
Marketing & Promotions	62,875	52,432	10,443	214,350	197,320	17,030
Memberships & Subscriptions	998	2,682	(1,684)	20,494	21,716	(1,222)
Office Supplies & Equipment	10,122	6,337	3,785	29,866	20,922	8,944
Computer Equip & Supplies	10,248	3,452	6,796	30,744	21,158	9,586
Operating Supplies	14,700	5,590	9,110	46,200	27,768	18,432
Other Equipment & Repairs	10,880	10,601	279	34,620	30,260	4,360
Professional Services - Legal	63,900	45,460	18,440	200,700	176,640	24,060
Professional/Outside Services	124,850	101,985	22,865	427,450	335,058	92,392
Prof. Serv.-VSE Aquaculture	24,000	14,045	9,955	77,000	54,774	22,226
Utilities	86,230	75,794	10,436	296,020	270,506	25,514
Dredging Related Expenses	87,555	72,247	15,308	184,945	158,631	26,314
Total General Expenses	\$ 840,768	\$ 678,568	\$ 162,200	\$ 2,580,669	\$ 2,183,663	\$ 397,006
Total Operating Expenses	\$ 1,834,542	\$ 1,666,634	\$ 167,908	\$ 5,473,309	\$ 5,020,983	\$ 452,326
Oper. Income(Loss) Before Deprec.	\$ 304,009	\$ 525,881	\$ 221,872	\$ 824,474	\$ 1,364,547	\$ 540,073
Depreciation	\$ 273,000	\$ 251,108	\$ 21,892	\$ 687,000	\$ 663,152	\$ 23,848
Operating Income (Loss)	\$ 31,009	\$ 274,773	\$ 243,764	\$ 137,474	\$ 701,395	\$ 563,921

ATTACHMENT 2

Ventura Port District Statement of Income and Expenses For the Period Ended March 31, 2018

	<----- Quarter (3 mos) ----->			<----- Year-to-Date ----->		
	Budget	Activity	Variance	Budget	Activity	Variance
NON-OPERATING REVENUES						
General						
Investment Income (Loss)	\$ 15,000	\$ 36,707	\$ 21,707	\$ 45,000	\$ 92,716	\$ 47,716
Tax Income	15,000	19,922	4,922	695,000	727,903	32,903
Intergov't Revenue	0	0	0	0	20,284	20,284
Sale of Fixed Assets	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>1,320</u>	<u>1,320</u>
Total General Non-Oper. Income	\$ 30,000	\$ 56,629	\$ 26,629	\$ 740,000	\$ 842,223	\$ 102,223
Special Funding						
DBAW Grants-Misc	\$ 0	\$ 0	\$ 0	\$ 0	\$ 0	\$ 0
DBAW Grant-Equipment	<u>15,000</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>(15,000)</u>	<u>15,000</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>(15,000)</u>
Total Special Funding	\$ 15,000	\$ 0	\$ (15,000)	\$ 15,000	\$ 0	\$ (15,000)
TOTAL NON-OPER. REVENUES	<u>\$ 45,000</u>	<u>\$ 56,629</u>	<u>\$ 11,629</u>	<u>\$ 755,000</u>	<u>\$ 842,223</u>	<u>\$ 87,223</u>
NON-OPERATING EXPENSES						
Interest Expense	\$ 206,910	\$ 205,497	\$ 1,413	\$ 431,300	\$ 429,512	\$ 1,788
Total Non-Oper. Expenses	\$ 206,910	\$ 205,497	\$ 1,413	\$ 431,300	\$ 429,512	\$ 1,788
Non-Operationing Income (Loss)	<u>\$ (161,910)</u>	<u>\$ (148,868)</u>	<u>\$ 13,042</u>	<u>\$ 323,700</u>	<u>\$ 412,711</u>	<u>\$ 89,011</u>
CHANGES IN NET POSITION	<u><u>\$ (130,901)</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 125,905</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 256,806</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 461,174</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 1,114,106</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 652,932</u></u>

ATTACHMENT 2

Supplementary Notes to Statement of Income and Expenses Continued for the quarter ending March 31, 2018 – Budget to Actual Analysis

Please note staff makes an attempt to follow seasonal patterns when distributing the annual budget by month whenever it is feasibly possible. Many line items are divided equally through the year.

Operating Income:

Harbor Village Lease Income – (exceeds budget 53,792) This category reflects Retail, Restaurant, Office and Charters. This increase is primarily in the Restaurant and Charters categories. Restaurant income to the District is up 7% over the same period last year and Charters are up 12%. Boatyard Pub's sales are up 58% from this period last year. Island Packers sales are up 55%. Staff did not budget for this high of increases for these tenants.

Commercial Fishing – (exceeds budget \$24,825) This category is up 61% over the same period last year. \$16,000 of this income was due to a onetime lease processing fee paid by Del Mar Seafood. The offloading of squid has been sporadic. October, November and December 2017 was better than anticipated. Commercial Fishing is actually up 53% for this period when you remove the onetime fee discussed above.

Operating Expenses:

Personnel Expenses – (under budget \$55,320)

- Salaries and wages were under budget thru March by \$31,057. As with the previous year, the budget includes contingencies for MOU obligations, vacation buyouts, shift coverages, and merit increases. These contingencies were spread out equally over all the pay periods. The Harbor Patrol were still in negotiations on their MOU at the end March, therefore no wage increases have been implemented. Also, the Maintenance Department was not able to fill their vacant custodian position until September thereby reducing the actual wages for two months of the custodian wage for that department.
- The other personnel expense categories are under budget by \$24,263. This variance is spread out over retirement contributions, payroll taxes (including unemployment), medical insurance, and the optional benefit plan. The wage related items listed above have a direct relation to these other personnel categories which contribute to the variances.
 - Retirement Contributions are over budget primarily due to the Harbor Patrol MOU still in progress at March 31. The budget reflects the Patrol employees paying 6% of their PERS employee contribution. They will continue to pay 4% until negotiations for the MOU are completed in August 2018.
 - Payroll taxes are under budget due to unemployment tax not being as high as anticipated.
 - Optional benefit plan is under budget primarily due to two things. 1) Vision insurance was included in the FY1718 budget but did not actually begin until July 2018. This cost would be approximately \$7,900 thru March 2018 and 2) Employees who participate in the 'medical expense reimbursement' plan have not submitted any requests for reimbursement for fiscal year 2018 at 3/31/18.

Auto/Boat Equip & Maint – (under budget \$32,181) This variance primarily reflects the Harbor Patrol department. \$18,000 of the variance represents boat maintenance, \$9,000 represents boat fuel purchases and \$2,600 represents maintenance to the patrol vehicles. The remaining \$2,500 variance reflects the vehicles in the Maintenance Department. The Harbormaster reports that he is having an unusually high amount of boat maintenance problems this fiscal year and that the boats were all down at different times; thereby reducing fuel consumption. Also due to the high maintenance problems with the boats, the budgeted plumbing conversion and general maintenance needed on fire boat 1 and the non-skid decking repairs needed on boat 19 were postponed.

Conferences & Training – (under budget \$27,117) This variance is primarily in the Administration and Harbor Patrol Departments, \$13,000 and \$10,000, respectively. The conference budget for the Administration Department is divided equally by 12 periods. The CMANC conferences for February & March came in under budget by about \$9,000 and a contingency was put in budget for miscellaneous trainings and meetings. The Harbormaster was unable to attend one of his larger conferences due to staffing constraints. Also Patrol was anticipating being funded

ATTACHMENT 2

Supplementary Notes to Statement of Income and Expenses Continued for the quarter ending March 31, 2018 – Budget to Actual Analysis

by a grant to add more training opportunities. This grant did not come through for this year, so some of the training budget will not be utilized.

Dock Maint. & Repair – (under budget \$17,513) This line item is more of a contingency factor rather than specific budget repairs. These funds will be utilized if needed. A specific repair was not identified for FY2017-18.

Village Enhancements – (under budget \$22,500) This category primarily reflects tenant awnings and signage. These enhancements are pending the final plans on the Village painting project.

Marketing and Promotions – (under budget \$17,030) Marketing's monthly expenditures can vary greatly from the monthly budget distribution based on many factors. The budget is distributed based on scheduled events and advertising promotions. About \$4,000 of this variance is in web site design, development and maintenance; \$8,700 is in event production; and \$4,000 in joint advertising. Web site costs are bit less than anticipated for this fiscal year. Event production and joint advertising should be used in the next three months as staff prepares for Pirate Days event.

Professional/Outside Services – (under budget \$92,392) In this category, items that can be readily identified as to when they will be expensed are placed in their appropriate budget months. For example, we know exactly when the Trolley partnership is due to be paid, July and January. All remaining funds are spread out evenly over the twelve month budget cycle.

- Approximately \$47,000 of this variance is related to the Administration department. The following services were not utilized at 3/31/18:
 - \$15,000 for an HR manual review (quote as per LCW) - deferred
 - \$10,000 for ATE parking survey's (in FY18-19 budget) - deferred
 - \$5,000 contingency for possible lease finding fees
 - \$5,000 miscellaneous contingency
 - \$10,000 accounting assistance
- Approximately \$38,500 of the outside services variance is related to the Maintenance department. The following services were not utilized:
 - \$5,000 boat salvage costs
 - \$20,000 cost increases for janitorial services were over budgeted
 - \$10,000 contingency built into budget

Utilities - (under budget \$25,514) This category consists of water, electricity, gas and trash expenses. Electricity represents the largest portion of this variance. Staff anticipated higher rate increases in the water and electricity categories when we were creating the FY17-18 budget. We are happy to report that the increase in the electricity rates were not as high as expected. Trash services have been increased throughout the year to keep up with the demand in the Village and the beaches. The gas budget was increased to accommodate the new fire pit in the Carousel courtyard for FY17. We budgeted a bit a high.

- Water is under budget by \$1,924,
- Electricity is under budget by \$18,468,
- Gas under budget by \$4,798 and
- Trash under budget by \$324.

ATTACHMENT 2

Supplementary Notes to Statement of Income and Expenses Continued for the quarter ending March 31, 2018 – Budget to Actual Analysis

Non-operating Revenue:

Investment Income – (exceeds budget \$47,716) This budget item is very conservative. LAIF continues to earn higher than anticipated rates.

Tax Income – (exceeds budget \$32,903) The quarter ending 3/31/18 brought in more County taxes than expected. The District has not seen the anticipated property tax loss that the County informed the District may happen.

Intergov't Revenue – (exceeds budget \$20,284) This category reflects the income received from the County based on the Recognized Obligation Payment Schedule (ROPS) for the Redevelopment Property Tax Trust Fund (RPTTF) allocation to the District. This is not a category budgeted by the District.

ATTACHMENT 2

Ventura Port District Budget Analysis For the Period Ended March 31, 2018

	Current Annual Budget	Current YTD Activity	Remaining Budget	% Remaining	Prior Year Annual Budget	Prior Year YTD Activity	Remaining Budget	% Remaining
INCOME								
Operating Income								
Parcel Lease Income	3,590,000	2,813,552	776,448	22	4,540,000	3,788,818	751,182	17
Dry Storage Income	120,000	93,492	26,508	22	110,000	91,542	18,458	17
Fisherman's Storage	74,000	55,330	18,670	25	70,000	59,490	10,510	15
Parking Income	72,000	33,614	38,386	53	70,000	37,532	32,468	46
Miscellaneous Income/Rentals	46,000	43,285	2,715	6	46,000	53,655	(7,655)	(17)
Village Income								
Harbor Village Lease Income	2,580,000	1,970,792	609,208	24	2,355,000	1,862,083	492,917	21
Commercial Fishing	340,000	327,025	12,975	4	230,000	203,647	26,353	11
Miscellaneous Income	5,500	13,158	(7,658)	(139)	5,500	16,091	(10,591)	(193)
Harbor Event Fees	29,000	14,840	14,160	49	34,500	17,844	16,656	48
Marketing Booth/Vendor Income	7,500	3,453	4,047	54	7,500	2,089	5,411	72
Co-Op Advert/Sponsorship	14,000	13,120	880	6	14,000	10,255	3,745	27
Merchants Promo Fund	105,000	76,807	28,193	27	95,000	74,330	20,670	22
Slip Rentals	865,000	660,075	204,925	24	880,000	663,369	216,631	25
Dock Electrical Income	25,000	15,798	9,202	37	30,000	23,791	6,209	21
C A M Income	335,000	251,190	83,810	25	305,000	253,537	51,463	17
Total Operating Income	\$ 8,208,000	\$ 6,385,531	\$ 1,822,469	22 %	\$ 8,792,500	\$ 7,158,073	\$ 1,634,427	19 %
Non-operating Income								
Investment Income	50,000	92,716	(42,716)	(85)	25,000	59,208	(34,208)	(137)
Tax Income	1,160,000	727,903	432,097	37	1,090,000	677,665	412,335	38
Intergov't Revenue	0	20,284	(20,284)	0	0	13,348	(13,348)	0
Sale of Fixed Assets	0	1,320	(1,320)	0	0	0	0	0
DBAW Grants-Misc	15,000	0	15,000	100	24,000	0	24,000	100
DBAW Grant-Equipment	15,000	0	15,000	100	55,000	0	55,000	100
City of Ventura	0	0	0	0	0	1,133	(1,133)	0
Total Non-Operating Income	\$ 1,240,000	\$ 842,223	\$ 397,777	32 %	\$ 1,194,000	\$ 751,354	\$ 442,646	37 %
TOTAL INCOME	\$ 9,448,000	\$ 7,227,754	\$ 2,220,246	23 %	\$ 9,986,500	\$ 7,909,427	\$ 2,077,073	21 %
EXPENSES								
Personnel Expenses								
Salaries & Wages	2,410,500	1,824,309	586,191	24	2,310,000	1,719,618	590,382	26
Retirement Contributions	477,500	369,179	108,321	23	500,500	373,243	127,257	25
Payroll Taxes	51,000	32,955	18,045	35	40,500	31,573	8,927	22
Worker's Comp Ins.	172,000	128,970	43,030	25	185,000	147,534	37,466	20
OPEB Liability	124,956	92,103	32,853	26	124,280	91,898	32,382	26
Medical & Life Ins.	283,000	207,332	75,668	27	273,000	197,949	75,051	27
Other Employee Benefits	230,000	160,932	69,068	30	194,000	138,305	55,695	29
Uniforms & Tool Allowances	29,500	21,541	7,959	27	30,500	17,003	13,497	44
Total Personnel Expenses	\$ 3,778,456	\$ 2,837,321	\$ 941,135	25 %	\$ 3,657,780	\$ 2,717,123	\$ 940,657	26 %

ATTACHMENT 2

Ventura Port District Budget Analysis For the Period Ended March 31, 2018

	Current Annual Budget	Current YTD Activity	Remaining Budget	% Remaining	Prior Year Annual Budget	Prior Year YTD Activity	Remaining Budget	% Remaining
General Expenses								
Advertising	31,000	23,055	7,945	26	28,000	20,287	7,713	28
Auto Mileage & Allowance	14,000	9,992	4,008	29	11,500	7,292	4,208	37
Auto/Boat Equip & Maint	200,500	81,804	118,696	59	134,500	41,624	92,876	69
Bad Debt	18,000	914	17,086	95	25,000	1,960	23,040	92
Bank Fees & Other Misc	15,500	7,282	8,218	53	15,500	6,433	9,067	58
Building Maintenance	431,000	268,373	162,627	38	288,000	181,440	106,560	37
Bldg Maint-Tenant Improvments	42,000	0	42,000	100	500,000	67,444	432,556	87
Accessibility Improvements	0	0	0	0	60,000	6,700	53,300	89
Communications	45,000	30,078	14,922	33	50,000	35,940	14,060	28
Conferences & Training	65,000	22,843	42,157	65	59,000	19,294	39,706	67
Dock Maint. & Repair	44,500	14,887	29,613	67	44,500	25,177	19,323	43
Equipment Rental	19,500	10,518	8,982	46	21,500	8,952	12,548	58
General Insurance	266,000	199,494	66,506	25	224,000	177,999	46,001	21
Grounds Maintenance	156,000	106,240	49,760	32	154,000	97,908	56,092	36
General Harbor Maintenance	4,000	300	3,700	92	4,000	2,679	1,321	33
Janitorial Supplies	61,000	40,497	20,503	34	57,000	32,403	24,597	43
Land/Building Rental Expense	74,000	55,152	18,848	25	70,000	53,729	16,271	23
Marketing & Promotions	289,000	197,320	91,680	32	285,000	170,987	114,013	40
Memberships & Subscriptions	21,500	21,716	(216)	(1)	23,000	19,245	3,755	16
Office Supplies & Equipment	39,500	20,922	18,578	47	39,500	21,531	17,969	45
Computer Equip & Supplies	41,000	21,158	19,842	48	23,000	6,047	16,953	74
Operating Supplies	61,000	25,249	35,751	59	65,000	32,454	32,546	50
Other Equipment & Repairs	45,500	30,260	15,240	33	42,000	41,640	360	1
Professional Services - Legal	265,000	176,640	88,360	33	225,000	196,261	28,739	13
Professional/Outside Services	640,000	389,832	250,168	39	498,500	280,219	218,281	44
Utilities	406,500	270,506	135,994	33	378,000	249,771	128,229	34
Dredging Related Expenses	244,500	158,631	85,869	35	236,000	155,528	80,472	34
Total General Expenses	\$ 3,540,500	\$ 2,183,663	\$ 1,356,837	38 %	\$ 3,561,500	\$ 1,960,944	\$ 1,600,556	45 %
Non-operating Expenses								
Interest Expense	440,000	429,512	10,488	2	440,000	429,652	10,348	2
Boat Motor Replacement	0	0	0	0	55,000	0	55,000	100
Total Non-Oper. Expenses	\$ 440,000	\$ 429,512	\$ 10,488	2 %	\$ 495,000	\$ 429,652	\$ 65,348	13 %
TOTAL EXPENSES	\$ 7,758,956	\$ 5,450,496	\$ 2,308,460	30 %	\$ 7,714,280	\$ 5,107,719	\$ 2,606,561	34 %

ATTACHMENT 2

Ventura Port District Budget Analysis For the Period Ended March 31, 2018

	Current Annual Budget	Current YTD Activity	Budget Funds Remaining
CAPITAL IMPROVEMENT PROJECTS/EQUIPMENT			
Automotive	\$ 51,000	\$ 11,182	\$ 39,818
Watercraft & Equipment	30,000	29,091	909
Assets -Fish Pier Crane/Hoist	150,000	14,076	135,924
Assets-Beach Brick Walls	20,000	0	20,000
Assets-Pay&Display machine	45,000	0	45,000
Assets-Building Improve-Replace	145,000	129,073	15,927
Assets-Village roof system	680,000	523,154	156,846
Assets-HVAC 1583 Marketing Offi	18,000	9,200	8,800
Assets-VHV Fish Pier Improv	400,000	21,993	378,007
Assets-Vlg Parkinglot Trash Enclos	65,000	0	65,000
Assets-Village Painting	60,000	9,286	50,714
Assets-1583 Spinnaker	110,000	107,740	2,260
Assets-HVAC System 1691 Bldg	10,000	8,960	1,040
Assets-Beach Refurbish Showers	25,000	0	25,000
Assets-Parkinglot repairs&slurry	400,000	198,854	201,146
Assets-BS Tap Room Renovation	350,000	0	350,000
Assets-Carousel Bldg-Renovation	300,000	0	300,000
Assets-ADA Restroom Improv-159	65,000	188	64,812
Assets-AirCon Unit-Lost Socks	10,000	0	10,000
Assets-NPS Seismic Evaluation	20,000	0	20,000
Assets-BS Tap Room-Utility Upgra	104,000	0	104,000
Assets-Carousel Courtyard/Prome	500,000	329,184	170,816
Assets-VHV Marina Part G&H Doc	75,000	105,619	(30,619)
Total Capital Improvements	\$ 3,633,000	\$ 1,497,600	\$ 2,135,400

ATTACHMENT 2

Ventura Port District Balance Sheet For the Period Ended March 31, 2018

CURRENT ASSETS

Cash in Banks	3,064,210
Accounts Receivable	412,243
Intercompany Receivable-Grant Fund	120,000
Notes Receivable	0
Taxes Receivable	62,522
Interest Receivable	42,522
Prepaid Expenses	176,202
Inventory of supplies	51,892

TOTAL CURRENT ASSETS \$3,929,591

RESTRICTED ASSETS

Cash - Dredging	3,023,913
Cash - Improvement	5,497,429
Cash - Fisheries Complex	151,468

TOTAL RESTRICTED ASSETS \$8,672,810

FIXED ASSETS

Land	2,342,629
Harbor Improvements	37,772,143
Equipment	1,652,912

Accumulated depreciation (16,737,790)

NET FIXED ASSETS \$25,029,894

TOTAL ASSETS \$37,632,295

DEFERRED OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES

Deferred amount on refundings	248,135
Deferred amount on pension plan	1,077,912

TOTAL DEFERRED OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES \$1,326,047

**TOTAL ASSETS AND DEFERRED
OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES** \$38,958,342

CURRENT LIABILITIES

Accounts Payable	231,801
Accrued Interest Payable	174,630
Current Portion of Long Term Debt	829,100
Current Portion OPEB Liability	10,962
Accrued Liabilities	57,702
Current Portion of Compensated Absences	170,963

TOTAL CURRENT LIABILITIES \$1,475,158

LONG TERM DEBT

ltd - Notes Payable	11,367,300
---------------------	------------

TOTAL LONG TERM DEBT \$11,367,300

OTHER LIABILITIES

OPEB Liability-Long Term	702,221
Compensated Absences-Long Term	73,885
Net Pension Liability	3,183,350
Unearned Revenue	168,555
Security Deposits	284,060

TOTAL OTHER LIABILITIES \$4,412,071

TOTAL LIABILITIES \$17,254,529

EQUITY

Contributed Capital	4,632,128
Retained Earnings-Reserved	645,536
Retained Earnings- Unreserved	15,085,015
Current Year Retained Earnings	1,114,106

TOTAL EQUITY \$21,476,785

DEFERRED INFLOW OF RESOURCES

Deferred amount from pension plan	227,028
-----------------------------------	---------

TOTAL DEFERRED INFLOW OF RESOURCES \$227,028

**TOTAL LIABILITIES, EQUITY, AND
DEFERRED INFLOW OF RESOURCES** \$38,958,342

ATTACHMENT 2

Ventura Port District Cashflow Statement As of March 31, 2018

Enterprise Fund (Includes Grant Fund)

Operating Income	6,458,571
Non-Operating Income	842,223
Total Income	<u>\$ 7,300,794</u>
Operating Expenses	5,757,176
Non-Operating Expenses	429,512
Total Expenses	<u>\$ 6,186,688</u>
Change in Net Position-Accrual Basis	\$ 1,114,106
Cashflows for Capital and Financing Activities:	
Principle paid on debt	(829,100)
Deferred amount on refundings	19,925
Acquisitions/Retirements of Capital Assets	<u>(1,497,600)</u>
Net Cash provided (used) by Capital & Financing	\$ (2,306,775)
Operating Income Adjustments:	
Depreciation	663,152
(Increase)decrease in receivables	(66,087)
(Increase)decrease in prepaid Items	190,860
Increase(decrease) in payables	(321,594)
Increase(decrease) in unearned revenue	(43,403)
Increase (decrease) in tenant deposits	<u>1,576</u>
Net Cash provided by Operating Activities	\$ 424,504
NET Increase (Decrease) in Cash	\$ (768,165)
Add: Beginning Cash 7/1/17	\$ 12,552,144
Ending Cash at 3/31/18	\$ 11,783,979

Monthly Report
(Unaudited)

ATTACHMENT 2

Ventura Port District Distribution of Cash as of March 31, 2018

<u>Enterprise Fund</u>	<u>Current Balance</u>
<u>Cash</u>	
Cash on Hand (undeposited)	1,608
Cash in Checking (Wells Fargo Bank)	426,258
Cash in County Treasury	<u>17,171</u>
Total Cash Available for Normal Operations	\$ 445,037
 <u>Investments Unrestricted Reserves</u>	
Local Agency Investment Fund (LAIF)	<u>2,619,173</u>
Total Investments Unrestricted Reserves	\$ 2,619,173
 <u>Dredging Reserves</u>	
Local Agency Investment Fund (LAIF)	<u>3,023,913</u>
Total Dredging Reserves	\$ 3,023,913
 <u>Capital Improvement Reserves</u>	
Local Agency Investment Fund (LAIF)	<u>5,497,429</u>
Total Capital Improvement Reserves	\$ 5,497,429
 <u>Fisheries Complex Reserves</u>	
Local Agency Investment Fund (LAIF)	<u>151,468</u>
Total Fisheries Complex Reserves	\$ 151,468
 <u>Aquaculture Grant Funds</u>	
Cash in Checking (Wells Fargo Bank)	<u>46,959</u>
Total Aquaculture Grant Funds	\$ 46,959
 TOTAL CASH AND INVESTMENTS	<u>\$ 11,783,979</u>

ATTACHMENT 2

Ventura Port District Comparison of Lease Rent

	Year to Date Ended <u>3/31/2018</u>	Year to Date Ended <u>3/31/2017</u>	Increase (Decrease)	
Parcel Leases				
Ventura Harbor Marine Assoc	161,757	135,696	26,061	19%
Dave's Fuel Dock	8,696	8,008	688	9%
Sheraton 4 Points-Harbortown	397,852	362,029	35,823	10%
Harbortown Point	71,344	70,725	619	1%
Oceans West Marina	239,511	228,524	10,987	5%
Ventura Isle Marina	572,504	500,573	71,931	14%
Ventura Marina Mobile Park	336,496	329,713	6,783	2%
Ventura West Marina	398,401	381,030	17,371	5%
Ventura Yacht Club	93,274	91,047	2,227	2%
Vta Harbor Boatyard	308,717	322,723	(14,006)	-4%
Portside Partners Ventura Harbor	225,000	156,250	68,750	44%
Total Parcel Lease	<u>2,813,552</u>	<u>2,586,318</u>	<u>227,234</u>	9%
Appreciation rent & Option Fee	<u>-</u>	<u>1,202,500</u>	<u>(1,202,500)</u>	
Total Parcel Leases	2,813,552	3,788,818	(975,266)	-26%
Ventura Harbor Village				
Retail Rents	381,694	370,938	10,756	3%
Restaurant Rents	821,346	769,707	51,639	7%
Office Rents	476,898	461,952	14,946	3%
Charters	290,854	259,486	31,368	12%
Total Village	<u>1,970,792</u>	<u>1,862,083</u>	<u>108,709</u>	6%
Commercial Fishing	327,025	203,647	123,378	61%
TOTAL	5,111,369	5,854,548	(743,179)	-13%

Monthly Report
(Unaudited)

ATTACHMENT 2

Ventura Port District Three Year Comparative For the Current Quarter and Year to Date

	Quarter Ending March 31st			Year-To-Date March 31st			% change FY16-17 to Current Yr
	2015-16	2016-17	Current	2015-16	2016-17	Current	
<u>Operating Income</u>							
Parcel Leases	981,417	1,028,649	1,071,930	2,459,026	2,588,818	2,813,552	9%
Option Fee					1,200,000		
Dry Storage	29,100	29,478	31,425	83,292	91,542	93,492	2%
Other Operating	35,813	35,198	25,699	174,198	160,759	138,029	-14%
Harbor Village Leases	527,899	525,468	597,881	1,768,788	1,862,083	1,970,792	6%
Commercial Fishing	30,588	57,541	109,507	152,564	203,647	327,025	61%
Slips	207,701	216,823	233,023	667,026	663,369	660,075	0%
CAM	78,929	84,804	83,926	228,215	253,537	251,190	-1%
Marketing	22,547	25,097	25,333	65,344	74,330	76,807	3%
Electrical Slips	9,693	10,302	6,507	24,895	23,791	15,798	-34%
Other Operating	11,927	7,117	7,284	61,903	36,197	38,770	7%
Total Operating Income	1,935,614	2,020,477	2,192,515	5,685,251	7,158,073	6,385,530	-11%
<u>Operating Expenses</u>							
Harbor Patrol	280,719	286,891	308,309	921,871	881,437	958,061	9%
Maintenance	440,689	289,689	314,289	1,341,912	855,565	917,309	7%
Administration	406,035	459,491	503,098	1,352,552	1,395,585	1,524,855	9%
Marina	162,032	167,001	170,093	489,456	493,757	504,426	2%
C A M	183,662	173,432	187,898	616,951	582,539	594,430	2%
Marketing	124,021	113,176	110,700	355,186	313,655	363,271	16%
Dredging	200,823	70,193	72,247	295,232	155,528	158,631	2%
Total Operating Expenses	1,797,981	1,559,873	1,666,634	5,373,160	4,678,066	5,020,983	7%
NET OPERATING INCOME	137,633	460,604	525,881	312,091	2,480,007	1,364,547	-45%
<u>Non-operating Income</u>							
Interest	22,902	22,747	36,707	33,212	59,208	92,716	57%
Taxes	17,185	16,857	19,922	646,409	677,665	727,903	7%
Other	97,444	-	-	97,444	14,481	21,604	49%
Total Non-operating Income	137,531	39,604	56,629	777,065	751,354	842,223	12%
<u>Non-Operating Expenses</u>							
Depreciation	242,442	211,908	251,108	722,752	639,050	663,152	4%
Debt Service	207,182	218,974	205,497	644,166	429,652	429,512	0%
Other	22,000	-	-	40,000	-	-	
Total Non-operating Expenses	471,624	430,882	456,605	1,406,918	1,068,702	1,092,664	2%
NET NON-OPER. INCOME	(334,093)	(391,278)	(399,976)	(629,853)	(317,348)	(250,441)	-21%
NET CHANGE IN POSITION	(196,460)	69,326	125,905	(317,762)	2,162,659	1,114,106	-48%

Monthly Report
(Unaudited)

ATTACHMENT 3

Ventura Port District
Aquaculture Fisheries Study Grant Fund
Balance Sheet
For the Period Ended March 31, 2018

CURRENT ASSETS

Cash in Banks	46,959
Accounts Receivable-Grant	73,041
TOTAL CURRENT ASSETS	\$120,000

CURRENT LIABILITIES

Accounts Payable	0
Intercompany Payable-Enterprise Fund	120,000
TOTAL CURRENT LIABILITIES	\$120,000

LONG TERM ASSETS

Long Term Assets	0
TOTAL LONG TERM ASSETS	0

EQUITY

Retained Earnings	-
Current Year Retained Earnings	0
TOTAL EQUITY	\$0

TOTAL ASSETS	\$120,000
---------------------	------------------

TOTAL LIABILITIES AND EQUITY	\$120,000
-------------------------------------	------------------

ATTACHMENT 3

Ventura Port District
Aquaculture Fisheries Study Grant Fund
Statement of Income, Expense and Change in Net Position
For the Period Ended March 31, 2018

INCOME

VSE Grant Reimbursement	73,041
Total Income	<u>73,041</u>

EXPENSES

Legal-VSE Grant	11,525
Professional Services	61,516
Total Expenses	<u>73,041</u>

CHANGE IN NET POSITION

<u>-</u>
<u>-</u>

Monthly Report
(Unaudited)

ATTACHMENT 4

Accounts Payable Check Register - January 2018

Ventura Port District
Wells Fargo Enterprise Fund

4/12/2018

Check	Date	Payee	Name	Description	Amount	Voided Amount
47429	01/04/18	42430	Jade Hendrix-Roach	Marketing Village entertainment	250.00	
47430	01/08/18	5945	Office Depot Credit Plan	office chair mat & postage machine ink	130.44	
47431	01/08/18	7434	Southern Calif. Edison ** Voided **	Check stub used to list invoices		0.00
47432	01/08/18	7434	Southern Calif. Edison	Utilities	11,678.21	
47433	01/08/18	8251	Ventura Water ** Voided **	Check stub used to list invoices		0.00
47434	01/08/18	8251	Ventura Water	Utilities	35,908.97	
47435	01/10/18	3781	The Holly Workshop	Harbor seasonal décor setup/take down	23,900.00	
47436	01/10/18	7032	Alliant Insurance Services	Annual marine/docks/boat liability insurance premiums	57,582.00	
47437	01/11/18	1045	ADT Security Services	NPS alarm monitoring	179.85	
47438	01/11/18	1060	AFLAC	Salary reduction benefit	1,381.03	
47439	01/11/18	1282	Arjay's	1567 Spinnaker # 201 window coverings	955.00	
47440	01/11/18	1378	BC Tree Service Inc	Xmas tree decorating & diseased tree removal	8,500.00	
47441	01/11/18	1440	Beacon Marine Chandlery Inc	Village dock repair parts	99.31	
47442	01/11/18	1625	Byrd Locksmithing Inc.	Service call / repair locks - 1567 Spinnaker # 201/202	145.00	
47443	01/11/18	1663	Burons Preferred Pumping Inc.	Quarterly grease trap/main sewer line maintenance	1,895.00	
47444	01/11/18	1676	Carquest Auto Parts	Truck parts	197.70	
47445	01/11/18	1725	CED (Consolidated Electrical Distributors)-1567 Spinnaker #201-internet box		100.35	
47446	01/11/18	1731	C.A.H.M.P.C. (CA Assoc Harbor Masters & Port Captains)-2018 membership		300.00	
47447	01/11/18	1915	Cintas Corp	Uniform rental/cleaning, door mats, rags	1,038.72	
47448	01/11/18	1918	CCI Central	Postage machine supplies	58.36	
47449	01/11/18	1925	City Of S. Buenaventura	Trash service	100.00	
47450	01/11/18	2065	Certified Credit Reporting Inc	Credit report for potential tenant	105.00	
47451	01/11/18	2100	CyberCopy Inc.	Blue print copies	18.21	
47452	01/11/18	2174	Dan Harding	Marketing-advertising	175.00	
47453	01/11/18	2202	Dave's	Patrol boat fuel-November 2017	1,239.60	
47454	01/11/18	2331	Dial Security Inc	Dockmaster/security coverage	1,320.00	
47455	01/11/18	2446	DocuProducts	Copier maintenance fees	260.46	
47456	01/11/18	2604	E.J. Harrison & Sons Inc.	Trash service	6,847.22	
47457	01/11/18	2751	Empire Cleaning Supply	Janitorial supplies	1,852.96	
47458	01/11/18	2935	Farmer Bros. Co	Coffee supplies	348.15	
47459	01/11/18	2936	Fast Signs	Village accessibility route marker signage	512.78	
47460	01/11/18	2980	Fausset Printing, LLC	Marketing-event production	674.00	
47461	01/11/18	2986	Ferguson Enterprises Inc.	1559 Spinnaker-restroom repair parts	68.36	
47462	01/11/18	3050	All That's Fit to Print	Marketing-ad production	2,315.00	
47463	01/11/18	3100	Flooring 101	Flooring for three Village office suites	13,881.26	

ATTACHMENT 4

Accounts Payable Check Register - January 2018

Ventura Port District
Wells Fargo Enterprise Fund

4/12/2018

Check	Date	Payee	Name	Description	Amount	Voided Amount
47464	01/11/18	3155	Franchise Tax Board	Payroll deduction	833.70	
47465	01/11/18	3490	Grainger Inc.	Lantern batteries, Village restroom parts	496.78	
47466	01/11/18	3492	Green Thumb International	Landscape equipment parts and plants	748.98	
47467	01/11/18	3592	Hansen's Plumbing, Inc.	1691 Spinnaker - water heater laundry & shower facilities	6,800.00	
47468	01/11/18	4057	Health & Human Resource Center	Employee Assistance Program (EAP)	177.14	
47469	01/11/18	4247	Jani-King of CA Inc.	Janitorial Service in Village and VPD headquarters	5,710.63	
47470	01/11/18	4421	Johnsons-Batteries Plus	1591 Spinnaker key system battery	58.08	
47471	01/11/18	4742	Kratos Construction	1567 Spinnaker #202-door installation; electrical upgrades	440.00	
47472	01/11/18	4897	PORAC Legal Defense Fund	Patrol-salary reduction benefit	168.00	
47473	01/11/18	5013	Los Angeles Magazine	Marketing-advertising	4,790.00	
47474	01/11/18	5016	Lowe's	Xmas lighting decor; building maintenance materials	1,698.63	
47475	01/11/18	5190	Matilija Water	Reverse osmosis water system-December 2017	45.00	
47476	01/11/18	5210	McCormix Corp.	Maintenance vehicle fuel	474.51	
47477	01/11/18	5213	McMaster-Carr	HVAC filters; 1567 Spinnaker #203-electrical box	725.52	
47478	01/11/18	5505	Muzicraft Inc.	Ambient music in Village	329.50	
47479	01/11/18	5625	ReadyRefresh	Bottled water service	22.48	
47480	01/11/18	5995	Ojai Valley News Inc.	Marketing-advertising	200.00	
47481	01/11/18	6178	PERS Long Term Care Program	Salary reduction benefit	448.74	
47482	01/11/18	6201	Pamela Griffin	Wellness program	80.00	
47483	01/11/18	6284	Peace Officers Research Assoc. (PORAC)-Quarterly membership-salary reduction benefit		138.00	
47484	01/11/18	6361	Pitney Bowes	Postage meter lease/Vlg office	34.72	
47485	01/11/18	6409	Plauche & Carr	VSE Aquaculture	165.00	
47486	01/11/18	6850	R P Barricade	Caution tape, delineator rentals & 'lot full' signage-POL	309.87	
47487	01/11/18	6865	Rasmussen & Associates Inc	Village roof project & ADA Restroom Rehab.-1591 Spinnaker	1,450.63	
47488	01/11/18	7221	SWRCB/AFRS (State Water Resources Control Board)-Marina Permit/Dredging permit		2,340.00	
47489	01/11/18	7411	Smogies Smog Shop	Vehicle smog fees: H10, M42,M43,M40, M28	243.75	
47490	01/11/18	7536	Sparkey's Electric Inc.	Deposit on electrical work for elevator modernization project	1,690.00	
47491	01/11/18	7572	Standard Insurance Company	Group Term Life/Long-term Disability	3,379.20	
47492	01/11/18	7761	The Gas Company	Utilities	34.35	
47493	01/11/18	7762	The Home Depot	Christmas décor, gangway trash cans, door hardware	2,003.20	
47494	01/11/18	7777	The Signal	Marketing-advertising	395.00	
47495	01/11/18	7818	TOTALFUNDS	Postage	500.00	
47496	01/11/18	8228	Ventana Monthly	Marketing-advertising	495.00	
47497	01/11/18	8233	Venco Power Sweeping, Inc	Monthly Village parking lot & fish pier sweeping- December 2017	545.38	
47498	01/11/18	8239	Ventura County Reporter	Marketing-advertising	1,345.00	

ATTACHMENT 4

Accounts Payable Check Register - January 2018

Ventura Port District
Wells Fargo Enterprise Fund

4/12/2018

Check	Date	Payee	Name	Description	Amount	Voided Amount
47499	01/11/18	8244	Ventura Harbor Storage	Fishermen's storage/net repair area-December/January	12,226.02	
47500	01/11/18	8250	Ventura Visitors & Convention	Marketing-advertising-promotions	800.00	
47501	01/11/18	8263	Ventura Pest Control	Village service-December 2017	348.00	
47502	01/11/18	8453	Virtual Pacific Networks	IT Services	6,290.00	
47503	01/11/18	8519	Western Dredging Association	Membership	150.00	
47504	01/11/18	8531	Whisenhunt Communication	Public relations services	112.50	
47505	01/11/18	8551	Williams Automotive Inc.	Maintenance vehicle-radiator M-42	298.10	
47506	01/11/18	8552	Village Carousel	Marketing-event production - Carousel rides	100.00	
47507	01/11/18	11570	Amazon Capital Services	Marketing-event production	365.00	
47508	01/11/18	12300	AT&T Business Services	Fiber/Wi-Fi services VPD HDQ	45.23	
47509	01/11/18	12945	Assurant Employee Benefits	Dental insurance premiums	1,591.06	
47510	01/11/18	15751	Bob's Towing Service	Tow for repairs - Patrol H10B and Maintenance M41	170.00	
47511	01/11/18	17582	California Travel Media	Marketing-advertising	1,500.00	
47512	01/11/18	20200	CoStar Realty Information, Inc	Leasing marketing data software	952.72	
47513	01/11/18	22900	Destination Creative Group LLC	Marketing-advertising	2,126.00	
47514	01/11/18	32750	Garland/DBS, Inc	Progress payment on the Village roof renovation project	299,005.85	
47515	01/11/18	42471	JaniTek Cleaning Solutions	Janitorial service for National Park Service Offices	157.50	
47516	01/11/18	50071	LoopNet	Internet leasing advertising	369.95	
47517	01/11/18	51731	Marcos Ramos Painting	1575, 1567 Spinnaker - painting	5,630.00	
47518	01/11/18	61954	Pacific Marine Repair	Engine repair - Fire boat 1	312.50	
47519	01/11/18	61991	P & R Paper Supply Co.	Janitorial supplies	1,687.58	
47520	01/11/18	62810	Peter Holguin Construction Inc	1567 Spinnaker # 203 - Windows	2,200.00	
47521	01/11/18	70281	Ring Central Inc	Phone service	1,889.36	
47522	01/11/18	74343	Sommerville Associates	Marketing public relations services	2,000.00	
47523	01/11/18	77921	Tom's Towing	Relocation of 50 vehicles as necessary for paving project	2,000.00	
47524	01/11/18	82201	Valley Scene Magazine	Marketing-advertising	1,344.00	
47525	01/11/18	82471	Ventura Rental Party Center	Marketing-event production	187.27	
47526	01/11/18	82562	Ventura West Marina	Reimburse film event fee permit	300.00	
47527	01/11/18	PM OneTime	Aimee Quemuel	Security deposit refund	600.00	
47528	01/11/18	PM OneTime	Cipriano Olivo	Key deposit refund	25.00	
47529	01/11/18	PM OneTime	COASTWIDE CORPORATION	Security deposit refund	1,989.00	
47530	01/16/18	84600	Viola Inc.	Progress payment-Phase 3 - Carousel Courtyard & Fire pit	38,789.30	
47531	01/24/18	84600	Viola Inc.	Progress payment-Phase 3 - Carousel Courtyard & Fire pit	40,000.00	
47532	01/25/18	1036	Accurate First Aid Services	Replenish first aid stations	241.47	
47533	01/25/18	1037	Acorn Newspapers	Marketing-advertising	1,275.60	

ATTACHMENT 4

Accounts Payable Check Register - January 2018

Ventura Port District
Wells Fargo Enterprise Fund

4/12/2018

Check	Date	Payee	Name	Description	Amount	Voided Amount
47534	01/25/18	1178	American Office Products	Wall planner, tape cartridges	71.26	
47535	01/25/18	1492	Big Brand Tire Company	Tires - 2014 Toyota Tacoma	323.80	
47536	01/25/18	1676	Carquest Auto Parts	Truck parts	423.66	
47537	01/25/18	1725	CED (Consolidated Electrical Distributers)-shop stock-lighting materials		706.19	
47538	01/25/18	1820	CE Solutions	Online medical training - Harbor Patrol	1,161.00	
47539	01/25/18	1844	Certex USA Inc.	Hoist repair	160.00	
47540	01/25/18	1915	Cintas Corp	Uniform rental/cleaning, door mats, rags	531.94	
47541	01/25/18	1925	City Of S. Buenaventura	Trash service	100.00	
47542	01/25/18	2093	Cumulus Broadcasting Inc.	Marketing-advertising	2,880.00	
47543	01/25/18	2202	Dave's	Patrol boat fuel-December 2017	1,361.15	
47544	01/25/18	2331	Dial Security Inc	Dockmaster/security coverage	800.00	
47545	01/25/18	2448	Downtown Ventura Partners	Marketing-Trolley and Big Belly Ads	8,200.00	
47546	01/25/18	2604	E.J. Harrison & Sons Inc.	Trash service	7,029.58	
47547	01/25/18	2751	Empire Cleaning Supply	Janitorial supplies	1,231.77	
47548	01/25/18	2936	Fast Signs	Village accessibility route marker signage	791.36	
47549	01/25/18	2980	Fausset Printing, LLC	Marketing-event production	269.50	
47550	01/25/18	2986	Ferguson Enterprises Inc.	1591 Spinnaker-restroom repair parts	389.31	
47551	01/25/18	3050	All That's Fit to Print	Marketing-ad production	862.50	
47552	01/25/18	3155	Franchise Tax Board	Payroll deduction	416.85	
47553	01/25/18	3490	Grainger Inc.	Miscellaneous truck & restroom parts	551.51	
47554	01/25/18	3492	Green Thumb International	Landscape equipment parts and plants	57.22	
47555	01/25/18	3592	Hansen's Plumbing, Inc.	Village sewer, waterline and backflow repairs	2,931.81	
47556	01/25/18	4295	Jensen Design & Survey Inc.	Services on the pavement repair and slurry seal project	48.49	
47557	01/25/18	4852	Lagerlof Senecal Gosney	Legal services	16,647.58	
47558	01/25/18	5071	Luners Production Services	Marketing-event production	210.11	
47559	01/25/18	5190	Matilija Water	Reverse osmosis water system-January 2018	45.00	
47560	01/25/18	5210	McCormix Corp.	Maintenance vehicle fuel	888.22	
47561	01/25/18	5213	McMaster-Carr	Shop tools	138.53	
47562	01/25/18	5505	Muzicraft Inc.	Ambient music in Village	329.50	
47563	01/25/18	5744	Noble Consultants Inc.	Services pertaining to Village docks & fish pier inspection	61,345.47	
47564	01/25/18	6178	PERS Long Term Care Program	Salary reduction benefit	224.37	
47565	01/25/18	6194	Pacific Oil Company	Used oil pick-up	597.75	
47566	01/25/18	6470	LegalShield	Salary reduction benefit	166.40	
47567	01/25/18	6850	R P Barricade	Barricade rental for use on fish pier	1,338.00	
47568	01/25/18	7000	Richard W. Parsons	Dredging/Project Management services	8,998.09	

ATTACHMENT 4

Accounts Payable Check Register - January 2018

Ventura Port District
Wells Fargo Enterprise Fund

4/12/2018

Check	Date	Payee	Name	Description	Amount	Voided Amount
47569	01/25/18	7240	AT&T	Harbor Patrol emergency land line	54.33	
47570	01/25/18	7294	Service-Pro Fire Protection	Fire Extinguishers - annual service	768.78	
47571	01/25/18	7299	Seaworthy Marina Products	Boat parts/Engine replacement	13,569.44	
47572	01/25/18	7410	Smith Pipe & Supply Inc.	Village landscaping	323.15	
47573	01/25/18	7434	Southern Calif. Edison ** Voided **	Check stub used to list invoices		0.00
47574	01/25/18	7434	Southern Calif. Edison	Utilities	13,435.49	
47575	01/25/18	7608	Susan Bogue	Expense reimbursement	44.35	
47576	01/25/18	7719	Teamsters Local No. 186	Union dues for Dockmasters	160.00	
47577	01/25/18	7761	The Gas Company	Utilities	623.57	
47578	01/25/18	7777	The Signal	Marketing-advertising	484.00	
47579	01/25/18	8233	Venco Power Sweeping, Inc	Monthly Village parking lot - January 2018	415.38	
47580	01/25/18	8239	Ventura County Reporter	Marketing-advertising	545.00	
47581	01/25/18	8241	** Voided **	Check lost per vendor - reissued payment March 2018		1,912.98
47582	01/25/18	8250	Ventura Visitors & Convention	Marketing-space rent and advertising	225.00	
47583	01/25/18	8254	Ventura Harbor Storage Ent LLC	Fishermen's storage/net repair area-annual property tax	313.30	
47584	01/25/18	8263	Ventura Pest Control	Village service-January 2018	348.00	
47585	01/25/18	8530	White Nelson Diehl Evans LLP	Progress payment on Financial Audit-FY16-17	2,100.00	
47586	01/25/18	8551	Williams Automotive Inc.	Truck repairs	82.80	
47587	01/25/18	10444	Adam Yox	Patrol expense reimbursement	41.40	
47588	01/25/18	11413	Alec Ledbetter	Marketing-entertainment	250.00	
47589	01/25/18	11415	Alertline Communications	Elevator emergency phone service-quarterly	630.00	
47590	01/25/18	12300	AT&T Business Services	Fiber/Wi-Fi services VPD HDQ	109.00	
47591	01/25/18	12851	Arion Global, Inc.	Recycle lights and batteries	260.50	
47592	01/25/18	12945	Assurant Employee Benefits	Dental insurance premiums	1,548.48	
47593	01/25/18	14580	Blake Stok	VSE Aquaculture	1,020.00	
47594	01/25/18	20175	Complete Paperless Solutions	Laserfishe support renewal	400.00	
47595	01/25/18	24350	Dog Waste Depot	Operating supplies-mutt mitts	775.67	
47596	01/25/18	25351	Dudek	VSE Aquaculture	312.52	
47597	01/25/18	36521	Herc Rentals Inc.	Marketing-event production-tower lights	762.35	
47598	01/25/18	39701	ID Plans Corporation	Updated 'as built' plans for existing spaces in the Village	13,600.00	
47599	01/25/18	43451	Jim McKewon Inc.	1567 Spinnaker - 1st floor conception design	4,800.00	
47600	01/25/18	51731	Marcos Ramos Painting	1691, 1567,1575,1583, 1591 Spinnaker - painting	10,305.00	
47601	01/25/18	61991	P & R Paper Supply Co.	Janitorial supplies	842.42	
47602	01/25/18	70075	Ricoh USA, Inc.	Copier lease	1,483.82	
47603	01/25/18	70281	Ring Central Inc	Phone service	947.61	

ATTACHMENT 4

Accounts Payable Check Register - January 2018

Ventura Port District

4/12/2018

Wells Fargo Enterprise Fund

<u>Check</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Payee</u>	<u>Name</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>	<u>Voided Amount</u>
47604	01/25/18	76013	Suncat Creations	Marketing-event production	150.00	
47605	01/25/18	85219	West Marine Pro	External boat speakers	64.61	
47606	01/25/18	PM OneTime	Ed Anderson	Key deposit refund	25.00	
47607	01/25/18	PM OneTime	Todd Riffel	Key deposit refund	25.00	
47608	01/25/18	2986	Ferguson Enterprises Inc.	1591 Spinnaker-restroom repair parts	121.65	
47609	01/25/18	42471	JaniTek Cleaning Solutions	Janitorial service for National Park Service Offices	1,282.05	
Total Check Register					\$ 835,891.33	\$ 1,912.98

Wells Fargo Grant Fund

<u>Check</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Payee</u>	<u>Name</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>	<u>Voided Amount</u>
1054	01/25/18	25351	Dudek	VSE Aquaculture Grant	3,475.53	
1055	01/25/18	76013	** Voided **	Printing error		150.00
Total Check Register					\$ 3,475.53	\$ 150.00

ATTACHMENT 4

Accounts Payable Check Register - February 2018

Ventura Port District

4/12/2018

Wells Fargo Enterprise Fund

<u>Check</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Payee</u>	<u>Name</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>	<u>Voided Amount</u>
47610	02/08/18	1045	ADT Security Services	NPS Alarm monitoring	179.85	
47611	02/08/18	1049	Adams Printing & Graphic	Marketing-brochures	741.31	
47612	02/08/18	1060	AFLAC	Salary reduction benefit	1,381.03	
47613	02/08/18	1154	Alejandra's Nursery	VHV landscaping	378.80	
47614	02/08/18	1178	American Office Products	Miscellaneous office supplies	94.41	
47615	02/08/18	1182	SiteOne Landscape Supply, LLC	1591 Spinnaker-building stucco material	86.10	
47616	02/08/18	1377	B & R Tool Supply Co.	Small tools: bit sets, screw extractor	297.14	
47617	02/08/18	1679	Carpi & Clay	Washington lobbyist (2 months)	10,000.00	
47618	02/08/18	1725	CED (Consolidated Electrical Distributors)	replacement staircase light fixtures at 1567 Spinnaker	1,880.68	
47619	02/08/18	1915	Cintas Corp	Uniform rental/cleaning, door mats, rags	555.74	
47620	02/08/18	2029	Cover 2 Cover Music Inc.	Marketing Village entertainment	320.00	
47621	02/08/18	2174	Dan Harding	Marketing-advertising	50.00	
47622	02/08/18	2331	Dial Security Inc	Dockmaster/security coverage	1,200.00	
47623	02/08/18	2448	Downtown Ventura Partners	Trolley partnership Jan-Jun2018 & Marketing advertising	12,400.00	
47624	02/08/18	2604	E.J. Harrison & Sons Inc.	Trash service	448.29	
47625	02/08/18	2751	Empire Cleaning Supply	Janitorial supplies	697.13	
47626	02/08/18	2935	Farmer Bros. Co	Coffee supplies	337.90	
47627	02/08/18	2936	Fast Signs	Village accessibility route marker signage	242.44	
47628	02/08/18	2980	Fausset Printing, LLC	Marketing-event brochures-ribbon cutting	220.00	
47629	02/08/18	3050	All That's Fit to Print	Marketing-ad production	885.00	
47630	02/08/18	3155	Franchise Tax Board	Payroll deduction	33.94	
47631	02/08/18	3203	Fuller Paint & Glass	1431 Spinnaker-emergency board up	607.07	
47632	02/08/18	3490	Grainger Inc.	Raingear, boat parts, small tools, shop stock	722.17	
47633	02/08/18	3491	The Greek Mediterranean Steak	Marketing-advertising	50.00	
47634	02/08/18	3592	Hansen's Plumbing, Inc.	Backflow repair@ D dock; 1691/1559 Spinnaker sewer lines	4,584.22	
47635	02/08/18	3602	Happenings Magazine	Marketing-advertising	739.00	
47636	02/08/18	4057	Health & Human Resource Center	Employee Assistance Program (EAP)	177.14	
47637	02/08/18	4939	Life-Assist Inc.	Medical supplies	158.28	
47638	02/08/18	5016	Lowe's	1567 Spinnaker #201 interior doors; window coverings	893.87	
47639	02/08/18	5050	MailFinance	VPD Office postage machine rental - quarterly	401.23	
47640	02/08/18	5188	Matthew Bender & Co. Inc.	Patrol reference/code books	246.14	
47641	02/08/18	5210	McCormix Corp.	maintenance vehicle fuel	478.92	
47642	02/08/18	5213	McMaster-Carr	VPD shop stock	631.20	
47643	02/08/18	5625	ReadyRefresh	Bottled water service	165.77	
47644	02/08/18	5945	Office Depot Credit Plan	Copy paper, toner/ink, file folders & envelopes, misc supplies	921.08	

ATTACHMENT 4

Accounts Payable Check Register - February 2018

Ventura Port District

4/12/2018

Wells Fargo Enterprise Fund

<u>Check</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Payee</u>	<u>Name</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>	<u>Voided Amount</u>
47645	02/08/18	6178	PERS Long Term Care Program	Salary reduction benefit	224.37	
47646	02/08/18	6283	Petty Cash Fund	Launch ramp parking refunds; coin counting fees; notary service	370.17	
47647	02/08/18	6446	PowerHouse Construction Inc.	Dry Storage facility entry gate repair	345.00	
47648	02/08/18	6865	Rasmussen & Associates Inc	Village roof project	492.50	
47649	02/08/18	7000	Richard W. Parsons	Hotel reimbursement -CMANC winter meeting	400.32	
47650	02/08/18	7240	AT&T	Harbor Patrol land line	44.94	
47651	02/08/18	7245	Santa Barbara Family Life	Marketing-advertising	798.00	
47652	02/08/18	7294	Service-Pro Fire Protection	Fire extinguisher service/maintenance	322.50	
47653	02/08/18	7572	Standard Insurance Company	Group Term Life/Long-term Disability	3,534.42	
47654	02/08/18	7581	Steve Stafford	Marketing Village entertainment	250.00	
47655	02/08/18	7719	Teamsters Local No. 186	Union dues for Dockmasters	160.00	
47656	02/08/18	7768	ThyssenKrupp Elevator Corp	Quarterly elevator maintenance service	4,776.14	
47657	02/08/18	7777	The Signal	Marketing-advertising	384.00	
47658	02/08/18	7818	TOTALFUNDS	Postage	46.72	
47659	02/08/18	8233	Venco Power Sweeping, Inc	Monthly fish pier sweeping-January 2018	130.00	
47660	02/08/18	8250	Ventura Visitors & Convention	Marketing-space rent and advertising	225.00	
47661	02/08/18	8251	Ventura Water	Utilities	293.30	
47662	02/08/18	8267	Ventura Harbor Marina & Yacht	Boat maintenance	422.65	
47663	02/08/18	8455	Vortex Construction	Final retainer on Village window replacement project	6,423.16	
47664	02/08/18	8501	Warren Distributing Inc.	Service lube for maintenance vehicles	142.08	
47665	02/08/18	8531	Whisenhunt Communication	Public relations services	1,162.50	
47666	02/08/18	14580	Blake Stok	VSE Aquaculture	3,175.00	
47667	02/08/18	16161	Brian Brennan	Mileage reimbursement -Winter meeting	95.48	
47668	02/08/18	19252	City of Ventura	Semi annual entertainment permit	311.36	
47669	02/08/18	19800	Coffee Dock & Post	Harbor special events-ribbon cutting ceremony	150.00	
47670	02/08/18	20200	CoStar Realty Information, Inc	Leasing marketing data software	952.72	
47671	02/08/18	24481	Downtown Ventura Organization	Donation - Thomas Fire	150.00	
47672	02/08/18	42471	JaniTek Cleaning Solutions	Janitorial service/supplies-National Park Service Offices	1,439.55	
47673	02/08/18	42605	Jaycie Lafrican	Marketing-event production	50.00	
47674	02/08/18	50071	LoopNet	Internet leasing advertising	369.95	
47675	02/08/18	51731	Marcos Ramos Painting	Six miscellaneous paint & rot repair projects throughout Village	10,150.00	
47676	02/08/18	61954	Pacific Marine Repair	Boat repair/maintenance	743.70	
47677	02/08/18	61991	P & R Paper Supply Co.	Janitorial supplies	1,331.44	
47678	02/08/18	64100	PRAXAIR Distribution, Inc	Medical supplies-Harbor Patrol	221.88	
47679	02/08/18	70061	Rich Thompson	Marketing Village entertainment	150.00	

ATTACHMENT 4

Accounts Payable Check Register - February 2018

Ventura Port District

4/12/2018

Wells Fargo Enterprise Fund

<u>Check</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Payee</u>	<u>Name</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>	<u>Voided Amount</u>
47680	02/08/18	70075	Ricoh USA, Inc.	Copier page charges: Admin/Marketing	79.76	
47681	02/08/18	74343	Sommerville Associates	Marketing public relations services	2,000.00	
47682	02/08/18	75712	Stacey Reed Petrides	Marketing-event production	60.00	
47683	02/08/18	82351	Ventura Breeze	Marketing-advertising	625.00	
47684	02/08/18	85219	West Marine Pro	Switches, parts for boats	118.48	
47685	02/08/18	85261	West Coast Air Conditioning	Replace HVAC-1691 Spinnaker (NPS); preventive maint. services	9,580.00	
47686	02/08/18	PM OneTime	Kenneth Jones	Refund security deposit	410.00	
47687	02/14/18	2658	Eishun Fukui	Marketing Village entertainment	250.00	
47688	02/14/18	8453	Virtual Pacific Networks	IT Services	4,682.35	
47689	02/14/18	22113	Dave Werneburg	Reimbursement for DM Radio	129.29	
47690	02/14/18	44200	JV Custom Iron	Deposit on stainless steel handrails fabrication and install-Village	2,000.00	
47691	02/14/18	70075	Ricoh USA, Inc.	Copier lease	741.91	
47692	02/14/18	84600	Viola Inc.	Progress payment-Phase 3 - Carousel Courtyard & fire pit	6,672.19	
47693	02/15/18	17565	Cal Coast Motorsports	2 Yamaha VXR personal water craft-Harbor Patrol Rescue	24,487.78	
47694	02/21/18	1036	Accurate First Aid Services	Replenish first aid stations	179.80	
47695	02/21/18	1282	Arjay's	1567 Spinnaker #201 - Window coverings	955.24	
47696	02/21/18	1440	Beacon Marine Chandlery Inc	Block cleats, lettering kit	46.15	
47697	02/21/18	1676	Carquest Auto Parts	Vehicles maintenance supplies	11.80	
47698	02/21/18	1886	Channel Watch Marine, Inc.	Survey for docks D, G, & H	100.00	
47699	02/21/18	1892	Chemsearch	Janitorial supplies	1,163.97	
47700	02/21/18	1915	Cintas Corp	Uniform rental/cleaning, door mats, rags	498.70	
47701	02/21/18	2100	CyberCopy Inc.	Project plan copies	16.16	
47702	02/21/18	2174	Dan Harding	Marketing-advertising	70.00	
47703	02/21/18	2202	Dave's	Patrol boat fuel-January 2018	1,072.19	
47704	02/21/18	2331	Dial Security Inc	Dockmaster/security coverage	800.00	
47705	02/21/18	2604	E.J. Harrison & Sons Inc.	Trash service	571.60	
47706	02/21/18	2751	Empire Cleaning Supply	Janitorial supplies	214.45	
47707	02/21/18	2980	Fausset Printing, LLC	Marketing-advertising-posters	280.00	
47708	02/21/18	3050	All That's Fit to Print	Marketing-ad production	1,853.10	
47709	02/21/18	3328	George Kabris	Reimbursement for EMT renewal	182.00	
47710	02/21/18	3490	Grainger Inc.	Miscellaneous lighting stock	397.70	
47711	02/21/18	3492	Green Thumb International	Landscape equipment parts and plants	138.61	
47712	02/21/18	4247	Jani-King of CA Inc.	Janitorial service	5,150.63	
47713	02/21/18	4613	Kelly Cleaning and Supplies	Janitorial supplies	485.00	
47714	02/21/18	4742	Kratos Construction	1575 Spinnaker #205 - office refurbishment	12,350.00	

ATTACHMENT 4

Accounts Payable Check Register - February 2018

Ventura Port District

4/12/2018

Wells Fargo Enterprise Fund

<u>Check</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Payee</u>	<u>Name</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>	<u>Voided Amount</u>
47715	02/21/18	4852	Lagerlof Senecal Gosney	Legal services	17,920.00	
47716	02/21/18	4943	Liebert Cassidy Whitmore	Legal services	420.00	
47717	02/21/18	5190	Matilija Water	Reverse osmosis water system	45.00	
47718	02/21/18	5213	McMaster-Carr	Boat parts - Fire boat 1	44.68	
47719	02/21/18	5744	Noble Consultants Inc.	Services pertaining to Village docks D,G,H; inspect fish pier; crane	11,205.89	
47720	02/21/18	6178	PERS Long Term Care Program	Salary reduction benefit	448.74	
47721	02/21/18	6201	Pamela Griffin	Wellness program	80.00	
47722	02/21/18	6361	Pitney Bowes	Postage meter lease/Vlg office	34.72	
47723	02/21/18	6409	Plauche & Carr	VSE Aquaculture	1,677.50	
47724	02/21/18	6470	LegalShield	Salary reduction benefit	166.40	
47725	02/21/18	7000	Richard W. Parsons	Dredging/Project Management services	9,999.00	
47726	02/21/18	7029	Robert Weinerth	Reimbursement for work shoes	155.15	
47727	02/21/18	7299	Seaworthy Marina Products	Boat parts	149.99	
47728	02/21/18	7410	Smith Pipe & Supply Inc.	Landscape repair parts throughout harbor	708.81	
47729	02/21/18	7434	Southern Calif. Edison ** Voided **	Check stub used to list invoices		0.00
47730	02/21/18	7434	Southern Calif. Edison	Utilities	11,100.47	
47731	02/21/18	7581	Steve Stafford	Marketing Village entertainment	250.00	
47732	02/21/18	7719	Teamsters Local No. 186	Union dues for Dockmasters	160.00	
47733	02/21/18	7768	ThyssenKrupp Elevator Corp	Final payment on contract for elevator modernization project	43,808.00	
47734	02/21/18	8233	Venco Power Sweeping, Inc	Monthly fish pier sweeping-February 2018	130.00	
47735	02/21/18	8235	Ventura Chamber Of Commerce	Annual fee for Connection Breakfast Slide ad	180.00	
47736	02/21/18	8241	Ventura County Star	Marketing-advertising	744.50	
47737	02/21/18	8243	Ventura Harbor Boat Yard	Boat supplies	27.13	
47738	02/21/18	8244	Ventura Harbor Storage	Fishermen's storage/net repair area	6,113.01	
47739	02/21/18	8263	Ventura Pest Control	Village service	348.00	
47740	02/21/18	8501	Warren Distributing Inc.	Service parts: Harbor Patrol boats 17/19	368.92	
47741	02/21/18	8534	HDS White Cap Const. Supply	Dock repair supplies	184.83	
47742	02/21/18	16150	Brendan Daly Photography	Marketing-event photos	225.00	
47743	02/21/18	25351	Dudek	VSE Aquaculture	828.45	
47744	02/21/18	42419	Jack Peck ** Voided **	Entertainment venue cancelled		250.00
47745	02/21/18	51731	Marcos Ramos Painting	1575 Spinnaker #205-office refurbishment; dry rot repair	7,860.00	
47746	02/21/18	61991	P & R Paper Supply Co.	Janitorial supplies	460.75	
47747	02/21/18	70281	Ring Central Inc	Phone service	947.70	
47748	02/21/18	70650	SWCA, Incorporated (Soil and Water Conservation Assist)-testing as necessary for dredging		6,891.61	
47749	02/21/18	72419	SBR Signs & Graphics	Metal signs for parking lots	1,548.00	

ATTACHMENT 4

Accounts Payable Check Register - February 2018

Ventura Port District

4/12/2018

Wells Fargo Enterprise Fund

<u>Check</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Payee</u>	<u>Name</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>	<u>Voided Amount</u>
47750	02/21/18	75712	Stacey Reed Petrides	Marketing-event production	67.50	
47751	02/21/18	75910	Stringer Appliance Repair, Inc	Washer/dryer repair in 1691 Spinnaker building	338.67	
47752	02/21/18	79652	Traffic Technologies LLC	Temporary parking signs	210.97	
47753	02/21/18	82201	Valley Scene Magazine	Marketing-advertising	730.00	
47754	02/21/18	82471	Ventura Rental Party Center	Advertising-event production	640.06	
47755	02/21/18	12945	Assurant Employee Benefits	Dental insurance premiums	1,569.77	
47756	02/22/18	1440	Beacon Marine Chandlery Inc	Rope, screws, clamps, fasteners	140.19	
47757	02/22/18	2604	E.J. Harrison & Sons Inc.	Trash service	448.29	
47758	02/22/18	7622	Sweet Pea Flowers & Gifts	Employee sympathy gift	98.00	
47759	02/28/18	7761	The Gas Company	Utilities	650.85	
47760	02/28/18	8251	Ventura Water ** Voided **	Check stub used to list invoices		0.00
47761	02/28/18	8251	Ventura Water	Utilities	31,466.20	
Total Check Register					<u>\$ 323,411.31</u>	<u>\$ 250.00</u>

Wells Fargo Grant Fund

<u>Check</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Payee</u>	<u>Name</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>	<u>Voided Amount</u>
1056	02/08/18	72760	Scott Lindell	VSE Aquaculture Grant	11,454.66	
1057	02/21/18	25351	Dudek	VSE Aquaculture Grant	9,208.27	
Total Check Register					<u>\$ 20,662.93</u>	<u>\$ -</u>

ATTACHMENT 4

Accounts Payable Check Register - March 2018

Ventura Port District

4/12/2018

Wells Fargo Enterprise Fund

<u>Check</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Payee</u>	<u>Name</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>	<u>Voided Amount</u>
47762	03/08/18	1060	AFLAC	Salary reduction benefit	1,381.03	
47763	03/08/18	1154	Alejandra's Nursery	Village planters-refresh plants	1,123.20	
47764	03/08/18	1213	Andria's Seafood	Marketing-event production-Chowder Fest tickets	150.00	
47765	03/08/18	1321	Avalon Door & Windows Inc.	Door hardware	34.48	
47766	03/08/18	1378	BC Tree Service Inc	Trim palm trees along Anchor Way Drive	1,920.00	
47767	03/08/18	1440	Beacon Marine Chandlery Inc	Miscellaneous parts & supplies	168.50	
47768	03/08/18	1676	Carquest Auto Parts	Supplies; battery M-45; shop tool; parts	497.34	
47769	03/08/18	1725	CED (Consolidated Electrical Distributers)	Shop stock; fire pit parts	282.37	
47770	03/08/18	1755	California Electrical Supply	1575 Spinnaker #205 - light fixtures	713.83	
47771	03/08/18	1915	Cintas Corp	Uniform rental/cleaning, door mats, rags	502.20	
47772	03/08/18	2099	Custom Embroidery	Uniforms	77.56	
47773	03/08/18	2174	Dan Harding	Marketing-advertising	60.00	
47774	03/08/18	2331	Dial Security Inc	Dockmaster/security coverage	1,412.00	
47775	03/08/18	2604	E.J. Harrison & Sons Inc.	Trash service	6,644.92	
47776	03/08/18	2751	Empire Cleaning Supply	Janitorial supplies	921.06	
47777	03/08/18	2936	Fast Signs	Village accessibility route marker signage	195.57	
47778	03/08/18	2980	Fausset Printing, LLC	Printing Marketing-printing services/advertising	383.00	
47779	03/08/18	2986	Ferguson Enterprises Inc.	Building maintenance and restrooms parts	368.02	
47780	03/08/18	3050	All That's Fit to Print	Marketing-ad production	542.50	
47781	03/08/18	3457	Gov't Finance Officers Assoc. (GFOA)	Subscription renewal	50.00	
47782	03/08/18	3490	Grainger Inc.	Parts; restroom supplies; rain gear	628.73	
47783	03/08/18	3491	The Greek Mediterranean Steak	Marketing-event production-Chowder Fest tickets	150.00	
47784	03/08/18	3592	Hansen's Plumbing, Inc.	1575 Spinnaker restroom plumbing services	625.00	
47785	03/08/18	3602	Happenings Magazine	Marketing-advertising	506.00	
47786	03/08/18	3752	HLI Systems	Internet/Email services	150.00	
47787	03/08/18	4057	Health & Human Resource Center	Employee Assistance Program (EAP)	177.14	
47788	03/08/18	4247	Jani-King of CA Inc.	Janitorial service in Village, VPD headquarters	5,150.63	
47789	03/08/18	4295	Jensen Design & Survey Inc.	VPD Survey easement review parcels 5 & 8	4,790.00	
47790	03/08/18	5016	Lowe's	Office suite exterior/interior doors & maintenance supplies	2,140.85	
47791	03/08/18	5071	Luners Production Services	Marketing-event production	91.59	
47792	03/08/18	5210	McCormix Corp.	Maintenance vehicle fuel	787.21	
47793	03/08/18	5213	McMaster-Carr	Parts - VPD truck # 28; Hose bib; dock clamps	218.12	
47794	03/08/18	5505	Muzicraft Inc.	Ambient music in Village	329.50	
47795	03/08/18	5625	ReadyRefresh	Bottled water service	114.83	

ATTACHMENT 4

Accounts Payable Check Register - March 2018

Ventura Port District

4/12/2018

Wells Fargo Enterprise Fund

<u>Check</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Payee</u>	<u>Name</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>	<u>Voided Amount</u>
47796	03/08/18	6030	3Digit Media	Marketing-advertising	955.00	
47797	03/08/18	6201	Pamela Griffin	Wellness program instructor	60.00	
47798	03/08/18	6361	Pitney Bowes	Postage meter lease/Vlg office	34.72	
47799	03/08/18	7011	Robin Baer	Mileage reimbursement - ICSC conference	106.38	
47800	03/08/18	7240	AT&T	Harbor Patrol land line	44.46	
47801	03/08/18	7294	Service-Pro Fire Protection	Quarterly inspection & elevator fire sprinkler repairs	961.00	
47802	03/08/18	7410	Smith Pipe & Supply Inc.	Village landscaping repairs	505.96	
47803	03/08/18	7434	Southern Calif. Edison	Utilities	33.56	
47804	03/08/18	7536	Sparkey's Electric Inc.	Elevator-electrical and fire alarm system, alarm box	16,535.00	
47805	03/08/18	7572	Standard Insurance Company	Group Term Life/Long-term Disability	3,400.59	
47806	03/08/18	7777	The Signal	Marketing-advertising	484.00	
47807	03/08/18	7818	TOTALFUNDS	Postage	500.00	
47808	03/08/18	8232	Ventura County APCD (Air Pollution Control District)-annual permit renewal as needed for dredging		18,335.28	
47809	03/08/18	8233	Venco Power Sweeping, Inc	Monthly Village parking lot-February 2018	415.38	
47810	03/08/18	8239	Ventura County Reporter	Marketing-advertising	275.00	
47811	03/08/18	8241	Ventura County Star	Marketing-advertising	1,912.98	
47812	03/08/18	8241	Ventura County Star	Marketing-advertising	124.34	
47813	03/08/18	8250	Ventura Visitors & Convention	Marketing-space rent and advertising	325.00	
47814	03/08/18	8251	Ventura Water	Utilities	529.87	
47815	03/08/18	8453	Virtual Pacific Networks	IT Services	3,980.00	
47816	03/08/18	8501	Warren Distributing Inc.	Parts M-44, service lubes for all patrol boats	187.77	
47817	03/08/18	8531	Whisenhunt Communication	Public relations services	2,150.40	
47818	03/08/18	13831	Baja Bay Surf and Taco	Marketing-event production-Chowder Fest tickets	150.00	
47819	03/08/18	14580	Blake Stok	VSE Aquaculture	5,472.50	
47820	03/08/18	15732	Boatyard Pub	Marketing-event production-Chowder Fest tickets	150.00	
47821	03/08/18	16231	Brophy Brothers	Marketing-event production-Chowder Fest tickets	150.00	
47822	03/08/18	18861	Chantel Durelli	Marketing-event production	1,675.00	
47823	03/08/18	19252	City of Ventura	Trash Service - Harbor Cove	100.00	
47824	03/08/18	20021	Coastal View News	Marketing-advertising	1,656.00	
47825	03/08/18	20200	CoStar Realty Information, Inc	Leasing marketing data software	952.72	
47826	03/08/18	24481	Downtown Ventura Organization	Marketing-advertising	400.00	
47827	03/08/18	26591	805 Bar & Grilled Cheese	Marketing-event production-Chowder Fest tickets	150.00	
47828	03/08/18	42471	JaniTek Cleaning Solutions	Janitorial service/supplies-National Park Service Offices	1,695.10	
47829	03/08/18	42919	Jessica Howard	Marketing Village entertainment	50.00	

ATTACHMENT 4

Accounts Payable Check Register - March 2018

Ventura Port District

4/12/2018

Wells Fargo Enterprise Fund

<u>Check</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Payee</u>	<u>Name</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>	<u>Voided Amount</u>
47830	03/08/18	44150	Joe Beraldo	Marketing Village entertainment	450.00	
47831	03/08/18	48542	Le Petit Cafe and Bakery	Marketing-event production-Chowder Fest tickets	100.00	
47832	03/08/18	48601	Latitudes Fine Art Gallery	Licensing fee-harbor images	300.00	
47833	03/08/18	50071	LoopNet	Internet leasing advertising	369.95	
47834	03/08/18	51731	Marcos Ramos Painting	1575,1583 Spinnaker - painting	5,130.00	
47835	03/08/18	61991	P & R Paper Supply Co.	Janitorial supplies	1,338.81	
47836	03/08/18	70075	Ricoh USA, Inc.	Copier additional charges: Admin/Marketing	222.80	
47837	03/08/18	72345	Sara Stutt	Marketing Village entertainment	230.00	
47838	03/08/18	74343	Sommerville Associates	Marketing public relations services	2,000.00	
47839	03/08/18	82201	Valley Scene Magazine	Marketing-advertising-February 2018	630.00	
47840	03/08/18	82351	Ventura Breeze	Marketing-advertising	625.00	
47841	03/08/18	84600	Viola Inc.	Progress payment-Phase 3 - Carousel Courtyard & fire pit	5,085.50	
47842	03/08/18	84850	Wahoo International, Inc	Two water life sleds for Patrol's personal water craft	4,603.12	
47843	03/08/18	PM OneTime	Alan Perry	Key deposit refund	25.00	
47844	03/08/18	PM OneTime	Mark Andrade	Key deposit refund	25.00	
47845	03/08/18	PM OneTime	Sam Logan	Key deposit refund	30.00	
47846	03/22/18	1036	Accurate First Aid Services	Replenish first aid stations	164.20	
47847	03/22/18	1326	Ayalas Backflow Services	VPD,VHV annual backflow testing, repair	2,230.00	
47848	03/22/18	1440	Beacon Marine Chandlery Inc	Parts	7.40	
47849	03/22/18	1679	Carpi & Clay	Washington lobbyist	5,000.00	
47850	03/22/18	1915	Cintas Corp	Uniform rental/cleaning, door mats, rags	527.87	
47851	03/22/18	2029	Cover 2 Cover Music Inc.	Marketing Village entertainment	320.00	
47852	03/22/18	2174	Dan Harding	Marketing-advertising	75.00	
47853	03/22/18	2331	Dial Security Inc	Dockmaster/security coverage	800.00	
47854	03/22/18	2604	E.J. Harrison & Sons Inc.	Trash service	370.86	
47855	03/22/18	2924	FMP Uniform Co.	Logo/name embroidery services	24.78	
47856	03/22/18	2935	Farmer Bros. Co	Coffee supplies	244.45	
47857	03/22/18	2936	Fast Signs	Village accessibility route marker signage	411.68	
47858	03/22/18	3050	All That's Fit to Print	Marketing-ad production	476.74	
47859	03/22/18	3100	Flooring 101	Vinyl install 1575 Spinnaker #205 & 1583 Elevator	7,686.77	
47860	03/22/18	3490	Grainger Inc.	Trash cans; shop stock; VPD safety supplies	376.11	
47861	03/22/18	3592	Hansen's Plumbing, Inc.	Village restrooms plumbing services	790.00	
47862	03/22/18	3752	HLI Systems	Internet/Email services	69.00	
47863	03/22/18	4057	Health & Human Resource Center	Employee Assistance Program (EAP)	177.14	

ATTACHMENT 4

Accounts Payable Check Register - March 2018

Ventura Port District

4/12/2018

Wells Fargo Enterprise Fund

<u>Check</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Payee</u>	<u>Name</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>	<u>Voided Amount</u>
47864	03/22/18	4404	Jonathan Freeman	EMS certification renewal	91.00	
47865	03/22/18	4742	Kratos Construction	1575, 1567, 1559 Spinnaker - electrical/fiber optic refurbish	8,150.00	
47866	03/22/18	4852	Lagerlof Senecal Gosney	Legal services	13,560.00	
47867	03/22/18	4897	PORAC Legal Defense Fund	Salary reduction benefit-Patrol	168.00	
47868	03/22/18	5016	Lowe's	Village suite improvements & misc. operating supplies	1,560.48	
47869	03/22/18	5190	Matilija Water	Reverse osmosis water system	45.00	
47870	03/22/18	5210	McCormix Corp.	Maintenance vehicle fuel	606.01	
47871	03/22/18	5213	McMaster-Carr	Shop stock; fire pit parts	122.37	
47872	03/22/18	5505	Muzicraft Inc.	Ambient music in Village	329.50	
47873	03/22/18	5632	MJP Technologies, Inc	IT services for SPAM filtering	110.00	
47874	03/22/18	5744	Noble Consultants Inc.	Services pertaining to Village docks & fish pier inspection	1,470.00	
47875	03/22/18	6178	PERS Long Term Care Program	Salary reduction benefit	448.74	
47876	03/22/18	6194	Pacific Oil Company	Pickup / disposal of used oil/rags	617.00	
47877	03/22/18	6284	Peace Officers Research Assoc.(PORAC)	Salary reduction benefit-Patrol	138.00	
47878	03/22/18	6409	Plauche & Carr	VSE Aquaculture	1,842.50	
47879	03/22/18	6470	LegalShield	Salary reduction benefit	166.40	
47880	03/22/18	7000	Richard W. Parsons	Dredging/Project Management services	11,040.66	
47881	03/22/18	7294	Service-Pro Fire Protection	Automatic fire sprinkler repairs & hydrant repair	1,218.58	
47882	03/22/18	7296	Searle Creative Group	Marketing-social media web site design	312.50	
47883	03/22/18	7346	Shell Fleet Plus	Patrol vehicle fuel	650.57	
47884	03/22/18	7410	Smith Pipe & Supply Inc.	Sand bags; landscape supplies; sprinkler repair parts	260.39	
47885	03/22/18	7434	Southern Calif. Edison ** Voided **	Check stub used to list invoices		0.00
47886	03/22/18	7434	Southern Calif. Edison	Utilities	11,297.58	
47887	03/22/18	7719	Teamsters Local No. 186	Union dues for Dockmasters	160.00	
47888	03/22/18	7762	The Home Depot	VHV landscaping, building improvement supplies	1,008.70	
47889	03/22/18	7768	ThyssenKrupp Elevator Corp	Maintenance - emergency repair call	1,401.00	
47890	03/22/18	8233	Venco Power Sweeping, Inc	Monthly Village parking lot & fish pier sweeping-March 2018	545.38	
47891	03/22/18	8244	Ventura Harbor Storage	Fishermen's storage/net repair area	6,113.01	
47892	03/22/18	8250	Ventura Visitors & Convention	Marketing-advertising	100.00	
47893	03/22/18	8530	White Nelson Diehl Evans LLP	Progress payment on Fiscal Year 17 financial audit	6,000.00	
47894	03/22/18	8551	Williams Automotive Inc.	Auto parts	70.41	
47895	03/22/18	16161	Brian Brennan	Reimburse- CMANC DC trip-Mileage, Flight	1,308.55	
47896	03/22/18	16181	Brian Pendleton	Reimburse- CMANC DC trip-Mileage, Flight	571.07	
47897	03/22/18	25351	Dudek	VSE Aquaculture	736.33	

ATTACHMENT 4

Accounts Payable Check Register - March 2018

Ventura Port District

4/12/2018

Wells Fargo Enterprise Fund

<u>Check</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Payee</u>	<u>Name</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>	<u>Voided Amount</u>
47898	03/22/18	36079	Harold Lloyd Wyckoff	Marketing Village entertainment	250.00	
47899	03/22/18	44132	Joseph M. Ramieri	Marketing Village entertainment	250.00	
47900	03/22/18	46531	Troy LeDuc	Marketing Village entertainment	75.00	
47901	03/22/18	51731	Marcos Ramos Painting	1575, 1591, 1559 Spinnaker - painting	6,200.00	
47902	03/22/18	51891	Matthew Relis	Marketing Village entertainment	250.00	
47903	03/22/18	61955	Pacific Coast Shellfish Grower	Allied member dues	475.00	
47904	03/22/18	61991	P & R Paper Supply Co.	Janitorial supplies	356.51	
47905	03/22/18	64721	Proforma	Harbor Patrol supplies-large & small decals	1,305.93	
47906	03/22/18	70075	Ricoh USA, Inc.	Copier lease	741.91	
47907	03/22/18	70281	Ring Central Inc	Router replacement for large conference room	1,046.48	
47908	03/22/18	70650	SWCA, Incorporated(Soil and Water Conservation Assist)	Harbor water monitoring	1,241.94	
47909	03/22/18	72805	Sean L Wiggins	Marketing Village entertainment	250.00	
47910	03/22/18	74343	Sommerville Associates	Marketing public relations services	2,000.00	
47911	03/22/18	82201	Valley Scene Magazine	Marketing-advertising-March 2018	630.00	
47912	03/22/18	85219	West Marine Pro	Boat parts, replacement running lights -Fireboat #1	317.83	
47913	03/22/18	85445	William Schneider	Marketing Village entertainment	300.00	
47914	03/22/18	85601	Zero Waste USA	Operating supplies-mutt mitts	775.67	
47915	03/22/18	8266	Ventura Harbor Marine Fuel	Vehicle supplies	17.19	
Total Check Register					\$ 227,365.56	\$0.00

Wells Fargo Grant Fund

<u>Check</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Payee</u>	<u>Name</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>	<u>Voided Amount</u>
1058	03/22/18	25351	Dudek	VSE Aquaculture Grant	8,183.46	
Total Check Register					\$ 8,183.46	\$0.00

ATTACHMENT 5

Ventura Port District Chase Business Credit Card Charges January 2018

Chase Credit Card holders

Oscar Peña, General Manager
Brian Pendleton, Deputy General Manager
Jessica Rauch, Administrative Assistant/Clerk
Robin Baer, Property Manager
Joe Gonzalez, Facilities Manager
Jennifer Talt-Lundin, Marketing Manager
Frank Locklear, Marina Manager
John Higgins, Harbormaster

<u>Staff</u>	<u>Trans Date</u>	<u>Vendor</u>	<u>Category</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>
Oscar Peña	1/25/2018	DUN & BRADSTREET	Service	Credit Builder Plus	1,599.00
Total General Manager's Expenses					1,599.00
Brian Pendleton	1/18/2018	THE BOATYARD INC	Business meal	Meeting with Commissioner Valance	28.11
Brian Pendleton	1/20/2018	DOUBLETREE HOTELS	Conference	CMANC winter meeting hotel	464.07
Total Deputy General Manager's Expenses					492.18
Jessica Rauch	01/24/18	YLP* SHOP@YELP.COM	Business meal	Closed session Board meeting dinner	158.83
Jessica Rauch	01/04/18	VENTURA CHAMBER OF COMMERCE	Conference	Pendleton refund for Poinsettia Awards	(45.00)
Jessica Rauch	01/12/18	ACT*California Marine	Conference	Brennan CMANC WDC registration	445.00
Jessica Rauch	01/12/18	ICSC	Conference	Baer ICSC registration	95.00
Jessica Rauch	01/15/18	PRICELINE.COM	Conference	Brennan CMANC winter meeting hotel	86.64
Jessica Rauch	01/23/18	ACT*California Marine	Conference	Pendleton CMANC WDC registration	450.00
Jessica Rauch	01/23/18	ACT*California Marine	Conference	Parsons CMANC WDC registration	450.00
Jessica Rauch	01/25/18	ACT*California Marine	Conference	Brennan CMANC WDC registration	450.00
Jessica Rauch	01/30/18	VIRGIN AMER 9842152924585	Conference	Brennan CMANC WDC airline	356.60
Jessica Rauch	01/18/18	CA SECRETARY OF STATE WEB	Miscellaneous	E-filing for Statement of Info for VPD	20.00
Jessica Rauch	01/24/18	AATRIX SOFTWARE	Miscellaneous	Sage accounting software-payroll tax filing	0.25
Jessica Rauch	01/17/18	CALIFORNIA SPECIAL DISTRICT	Training	Harassment training-Managers	495.00
Jessica Rauch	01/23/18	CALIFORNIA SPECIAL DISTRICT	Training	Rauch CSDA webinar	65.00
Total Administrative Assistant's Expenses					3,027.32

ATTACHMENT 5

Ventura Port District Chase Business Credit Card Charges January 2018

Chase Credit Card holders

Oscar Peña, General Manager
Brian Pendleton, Deputy General Manager
Jessica Rauch, Administrative Assistant/Clerk
Robin Baer, Property Manager
Joe Gonzalez, Facilities Manager
Jennifer Talt-Lundin, Marketing Manager
Frank Locklear, Marina Manager
John Higgins, Harbormaster

<u>Staff</u>	<u>Trans Date</u>	<u>Vendor</u>	<u>Category</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>
Robin Baer	01/10/18	SQ *VENTURA SANDWICH COMPANY	Business meal	Closed session Board meeting dinner	142.02
Robin Baer	01/17/18	VENTURA COIUNTY STAR	Subscription	Online subscription	4.35
Robin Baer	01/18/18	Dropbox*V25PVM6ZXYRN	Subscription	Online subscription-file transfer software	1,200.00
Total Property Manager's Expenses					1,346.37
Joe Gonzalez	01/09/18	VENTURA TOYOTA	Auto maintenance	M-49 - Tire liner	92.83
Joe Gonzalez	01/10/18	HALDEMAN INC	Equipment maintenance	Elevator room miscellaneous parts	149.30
Joe Gonzalez	01/23/18	IN *AVENUE WELDING AND SUPPLY	Equipment maintenance	Landscaping trailer repair (welded parts)	250.00
Joe Gonzalez	01/31/18	LANDSCAPE LIGHTING WORLD	Grounds maintenance	VHV low voltage landscaping lighting.	1,420.52
Total Facilities Manager's Expenses					1,912.65
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	01/12/18	MILANO'S ITALIAN RESTAURANT	Advertising	Sunsets & Sips Contest	25.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	01/12/18	805 BAR & GRILL CHEESE	Advertising	Sunsets & Sips Contest	25.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	01/17/18	SPROUT SOCIAL	Advertising	Social Media calendar	99.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	01/30/18	LE PETIT CAFE & BAKERY	Advertising	Social Media promotion	33.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	01/30/18	GREEK MEDITERRANEAN STEAK	Advertising	Sunset & Sips Contest	25.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	01/31/18	COFFEE DOCK & POST	Advertising	Visit CA / Visit Ventura FAM	30.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	01/12/18	PAYPAL *ALLTHATSFIT	Brochures	Rack cards Tall Ship/Mermaid Event	137.60
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	01/22/18	COFFEE DOCK & POST	Business meal	Meeting with bride	4.50
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	01/30/18	GREEK MEDITERRANEAN STEAK	Business meal	Tenant meeting	40.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	01/30/18	VENTURA CHAMBER OF COMMERCE	Business meal	Connection Breakfast	60.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	01/12/18	LUIGIS AT THE BEACH	Conference	SD Travel & Adventure Show	22.74

ATTACHMENT 5

Ventura Port District Chase Business Credit Card Charges January 2018

Chase Credit Card holders

Oscar Peña, General Manager
Brian Pendleton, Deputy General Manager
Jessica Rauch, Administrative Assistant/Clerk
Robin Baer, Property Manager
Joe Gonzalez, Facilities Manager
Jennifer Talt-Lundin, Marketing Manager
Frank Locklear, Marina Manager
John Higgins, Harbormaster

<u>Staff</u>	<u>Trans Date</u>	<u>Vendor</u>	<u>Category</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	01/13/18	GASLAMP UKT	Conference	SD Travel & Adventure Show	19.69
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	01/13/18	SAN DIEGO CONV CTR CONC 0	Conference	SD Travel & Adventure Show	4.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	01/14/18	BAHIA HOTEL	Conference	SD Travel & Adventure Show	479.68
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	01/14/18	SAN DIEGO CONV CTR CONC 0	Conference	SD Travel & Adventure Show	6.75
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	01/14/18	STARBUCKS STORE 23916	Conference	SD Travel & Adventure Show	5.95
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	01/15/18	BAHIA HOTEL	Conference	SD Travel & Adventure Show	(16.45)
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	01/09/18	CTC*CONSTANTCONTACT.COM	E-Advertising	Harbor Views	20.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	01/20/18	FS *AngelCam	E-Advertising	Web CAM	20.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	01/21/18	MAILCHIMP *MONTHLY	E-Advertising	Enewsletter	75.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	01/31/18	FACEBK *PYKMQG2SY2	E-Advertising	Boosted ad posts	33.70
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	01/31/18	FACEBK *QYKMQG2SY2	E-Advertising	Boosted ad posts	18.30
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	01/29/18	LAKESHORE LEARNING #38	Event production	Bubble product return	(12.33)
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	01/29/18	VITAROCK.COM	Miscellaneous	Ribbon cutting gifts	360.50
Total Marketing Manager's Expenses					1,516.63
Frank Locklear	01/04/18	ATT*BILL PAYMENT	Communications	Integrated network internet	240.17
Frank Locklear	01/09/18	LOGMEIN*GOTOMEETING	Communications	Port District teleconference charge	49.00
Frank Locklear	01/12/18	FRY'S ELECTRONICS # 44	Computer supplies	Various network components	350.88
Frank Locklear	01/09/18	LOADITY.COM	Miscellaneous	Disputed charge 1 855-728-0977	39.99
Frank Locklear	01/03/18	WAL-MART #3650	Office supplies	Coffee maker Marketing / Marina office	117.45
Frank Locklear	01/14/18	DTV*DIRECTV SERVICE	Operating supplies	Direct TV service *Harbor Patrol	19.99
Total Marina Manager's Expenses					817.48

ATTACHMENT 5

Ventura Port District Chase Business Credit Card Charges January 2018

Chase Credit Card holders

Oscar Peña, General Manager
Brian Pendleton, Deputy General Manager
Jessica Rauch, Administrative Assistant/Clerk
Robin Baer, Property Manager
Joe Gonzalez, Facilities Manager
Jennifer Talt-Lundin, Marketing Manager
Frank Locklear, Marina Manager
John Higgins, Harbormaster

<u>Staff</u>	<u>Trans Date</u>	<u>Vendor</u>	<u>Category</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>
John Higgins	01/31/18	CBI*WINZIP	Computer supplies	HM computer software	59.95
John Higgins	01/08/18	BOATUS ONLINE	Conference	Online AIS/DSC registration	25.00
John Higgins	01/13/18	MARINA RECREATION	Conference	Marina Recreation Conference	169.00
John Higgins	01/17/18	CALIFORNIA PEACE OFFICER	Membership	Harbormaster membership	125.00
John Higgins	01/20/18	USLA Events	Membership	Group membership	510.00
John Higgins	01/10/18	COSTCO GAS #0420	Miscellaneous	Mistake-employee reimbursed District with cash	39.01
John Higgins	01/09/18	WWW COSTCO COM	Operating supplies	Engine hoist	366.34
John Higgins	01/10/18	SIGNARAMA	Operating supplies	Vehicle logo final payment	608.80
John Higgins	01/10/18	SIGNARAMA	Operating supplies	Credit card use fee	6.14
John Higgins	01/15/18	APL* ITUNES.COM/BILL	Operating supplies	Patrol #1 phone storage	0.99
John Higgins	01/15/18	APL* ITUNES.COM/BILL	Operating supplies	Patrol #2 phone storage	0.99
John Higgins	01/25/18	SIGNARAMA	Operating supplies	Vehicle logo deposit	614.94
John Higgins	01/19/18	BAJA FRESH 50312	Training	Training	36.16
John Higgins	01/08/18	VENTURA HARBOR MARINE FUEL	Uniforms	Rain boots (Part-time employee uniforms)	187.46
John Higgins	01/09/18	WGD*ARAMARK CORP NORWL	Uniforms	Uniforms	1,112.77
John Higgins	01/11/18	WGD*ARAMARK CORP NORWL	Uniforms	Uniforms	328.43
John Higgins	01/12/18	WGD*ARAMARK CORP NORWL	Uniforms	Uniforms	694.74
Total Harbormaster's Expenses					4,885.72
Total Chase Credit Card Expenses					<u>\$ 15,597.35</u>

ATTACHMENT 5

Ventura Port District Chase Business Credit Card Charges February 2018

Chase Credit Card holders

Oscar Peña, General Manager
Brian Pendleton, Deputy General Manager
Jessica Rauch, Administrative Assistant/Clerk
Robin Baer, Property Manager
Joe Gonzalez, Facilities Manager
Jennifer Talt-Lundin, Marketing Manager
Frank Locklear, Marina Manager
John Higgins, Harbormaster

<u>Staff</u>	<u>Trans Date</u>	<u>Vendor</u>	<u>Category</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>
Oscar Peña	02/22/18	LAZY DOG RESTAURANT 14	Business meal	Meeting with Commissioner Ashworth	40.39
Total General Manager's Expenses					40.39
Brian Pendleton	02/17/18	THE BOATYARD INC	Business meal	Meeting with Commissioner Valance	44.81
Total Deputy General Manager's Expenses					44.81
Jessica Rauch	02/14/18	TOPPERS PIZZA PLACE 6 ONL	Business meal	Closed session Board meeting dinner	152.59
Jessica Rauch	02/16/18	VCNVENTURACO*SERVICE FEE	Miscellaneous	Fictitious Business Name Filing-Fee	2.50
Jessica Rauch	02/16/18	VENTURACORECORDERCTR*V	Miscellaneous	Fictitious Business Name Filing	53.00
Total Administrative Assistant's Expenses					208.09
Robin Baer	02/21/18	RUTH'S CHRIS STEAK HOUSE	Conference	ICSC Conference-meal	11.70
Robin Baer	02/22/18	HILTON HOTELS	Conference	ICSC Conference-Anaheim	166.98
Robin Baer	02/15/18	VENTURA COIUNTY STAR	Subscription	Online subscription	4.35
Total Property Manager's Expenses					183.03
Joe Gonzalez	02/21/18	CARROLL EMERSON	Equipment repairs	Heater Knobs for 1567 Suite 205	26.95
Joe Gonzalez	02/05/18	LANDSCAPE LIGHTING WORLD	Grounds maintenance	VHV Landscaping low voltage lighting	2,333.25
Joe Gonzalez	02/02/18	SIGNARAMA	Signage	Event parking signs	650.34
Total Facilities Manager's Expenses					3,010.54

ATTACHMENT 5

Ventura Port District Chase Business Credit Card Charges February 2018

Chase Credit Card holders

Oscar Peña, General Manager
Brian Pendleton, Deputy General Manager
Jessica Rauch, Administrative Assistant/Clerk
Robin Baer, Property Manager
Joe Gonzalez, Facilities Manager
Jennifer Talt-Lundin, Marketing Manager
Frank Locklear, Marina Manager
John Higgins, Harbormaster

<u>Staff</u>	<u>Trans Date</u>	<u>Vendor</u>	<u>Category</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/08/18	PAYPAL *ALLTHATSFIT	Ad Production	Rack cards / Tall Ship & Mermaid Event	201.18
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/06/18	CANVA FOR WORK YEARLY	Advertising	Annual renewal for design software	119.40
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/12/18	COFFEE DOCK AND POST	Business meal	Tour with Ventura County Coast ED	14.50
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/16/18	GREEK MEDITERRANEAN STEAK	Business meal	Media visit to Harbor	35.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/09/18	CTC*CONSTANTCONTACT.COM	E-Advertising	Harbor Views Enewsletter	20.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/17/18	SPROUT SOCIAL	E-Advertising	Annual renewal for social post tracking	99.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/20/18	FS *AngelCam	E-Advertising	Harbor Entrance Web CAM	20.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/22/18	MAILCHIMP *MONTHLY	E-Advertising	Village Enewsletter	75.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/28/18	FACEBK *GURRYEJSY2	E-Advertising	Boosted ad posts	10.19
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/28/18	FACEBK *93Q75FSJW2	E-Advertising	Boosted ad posts	10.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/28/18	FACEBK *FURRYEJSY2	E-Advertising	Boosted ad posts	39.81
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/05/18	PAYPAL *ALLTHATSFIT	Event production	Mermaid month promo magnets	168.66
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/05/18	PAYPAL *ALLTHATSFIT	Event production	Tall Ship promo magnets	168.66
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/07/18	OTC BRANDS INC	Event production	Tall Ship scavenger hunt prizes	57.16
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/13/18	GREEK MEDITERRANEAN STEAK	Event production	Tall Ship crews welcome reception	160.95
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/14/18	MICHAELS STORES 4800	Event production	VIP Tall Ship gift bags	51.42
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/14/18	MICHAELS STORES 4800	Event production	VIP Tall Ship gift bags	35.51
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/14/18	MICHAELS STORES 4800	Event production	Return on event items	(65.40)
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/15/18	PARTY CITY	Event production	Bubbles for Village machine	34.40
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/16/18	ANDRIA'S SEAFOOD	Event production	Meal for roaming pirates on 2/17	75.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/16/18	BROPHY BROS RESTAURANT	Event production	Sunset & Sips photo contest prize	25.00

ATTACHMENT 5

Ventura Port District Chase Business Credit Card Charges February 2018

Chase Credit Card holders

Oscar Peña, General Manager
 Brian Pendleton, Deputy General Manager
 Jessica Rauch, Administrative Assistant/Clerk
 Robin Baer, Property Manager
 Joe Gonzalez, Facilities Manager
 Jennifer Talt-Lundin, Marketing Manager
 Frank Locklear, Marina Manager
 John Higgins, Harbormaster

<u>Staff</u>	<u>Trans Date</u>	<u>Vendor</u>	<u>Category</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/16/18	GREEK MEDITERRANEAN STEAK	Event production	Meal for roaming pirates on 2/18	75.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/22/18	MICHAELS STORES 4800	Event production	Spring / Easter / Mother's Day-selfie board	341.26
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/27/18	ETSY.COM	Event production	Mermaid promo selfie backdrop	205.65
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/28/18	TARGET 00002980	Event production	Bubbles for Village machine	36.84
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/28/18	LAKESHORE LEARNING #38	Event production	Mermaid event crafts	34.44
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/07/18	OTC BRANDS INC	Miscellaneous	Ribbon cutting-gift bags / napkins /fish Promo	436.07
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/11/18	MICHAELS STORES 4800	Miscellaneous	Ribbon cutting-vases / gift giveaways	141.56
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/13/18	SMARTNFINAL39010103901	Miscellaneous	Ribbon cutting-drinks / Tall Ship gift bags	68.50
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/14/18	SPROUTS FARMERS MAR	Miscellaneous	Tenant bereavement gift	9.99
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/15/18	HARBOR MARKET AND LIQUOR	Miscellaneous	Ribbon cutting-ice/ sweatshirt for gift bag	36.57
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	02/15/18	WNPA CHANNEL ISLANDS	Miscellaneous	Ribbon cutting-gift bag giveaway	33.34
Total Marketing Manager's Expenses					2,774.66
Frank Locklear	02/09/18	LOGMEIN*GOTOMEETING	Communications	Port District teleconference charge	49.00
Frank Locklear	02/23/18	FRY'S ELECTRONICS # 44	Computer supply	Computer / TV hookup cables, etc. for small conference room	65.47
Frank Locklear	02/14/18	DTV*DIRECTV SERVICE	Operating supplies	Direct TV service *Harbor Patrol	19.99
Total Marina Manager's Expenses					134.46

ATTACHMENT 5

Ventura Port District Chase Business Credit Card Charges February 2018

Chase Credit Card holders

Oscar Peña, General Manager
 Brian Pendleton, Deputy General Manager
 Jessica Rauch, Administrative Assistant/Clerk
 Robin Baer, Property Manager
 Joe Gonzalez, Facilities Manager
 Jennifer Talt-Lundin, Marketing Manager
 Frank Locklear, Marina Manager
 John Higgins, Harbormaster

<u>Staff</u>	<u>Trans Date</u>	<u>Vendor</u>	<u>Category</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>
John Higgins	02/05/18	VISAT FORD OF OXNARD-Service	Auto maintenance	Install door lock keypad	126.45
John Higgins	02/27/18	AVNGATE*X1 SEARCH	Computer supply	Computer software	69.90
John Higgins	02/27/18	EASTERN MARINE	Equipment maintenance	Trailer maintenance parts	741.04
John Higgins	02/12/18	AMERICAN SHORE AND BEACH	Membership	Association membership	75.00
John Higgins	02/02/18	FRY'S ELECTRONICS # 44	Operating supplies	Operating supplies	71.62
John Higgins	02/04/18	COSTCO WHSE #0420	Operating supplies	Miscellaneous truck and operating supplies	445.98
John Higgins	02/15/18	APL* ITUNES.COM/BILL	Operating supplies	Patrol #1 phone storage	0.99
John Higgins	02/15/18	APL* ITUNES.COM/BILL	Operating supplies	Patrol #2 phone storage	0.99
John Higgins	02/25/18	COSTCO WHSE #0420	Operating supplies	Flashlights & operating supplies	165.81
John Higgins	02/20/18	GOLD COAST RECYCLING	Salvage	Vessel disposal	28.50
John Higgins	02/06/18	ARAMARK*87621356	Uniform	Uniform return	(135.66)
John Higgins	02/22/18	DVOR.COM	Uniform	Uniform pants	454.00
Total Harbormaster's Expenses					2,044.62
Total Chase Credit Card Expenses					<u><u>8,440.60</u></u>

ATTACHMENT 5

Ventura Port District Chase Business Credit Card Charges March 2018

Chase Credit Card holders

Oscar Peña, General Manager
Brian Pendleton, Deputy General Manager
Jessica Rauch, Administrative Assistant/Clerk
Robin Baer, Property Manager
Joe Gonzalez, Facilities Manager
Jennifer Talt-Lundin, Marketing Manager
Frank Locklear, Marina Manager
John Higgins, Harbormaster

<u>Staff</u>	<u>Trans Date</u>	<u>Vendor</u>	<u>Category</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>
Oscar Peña	03/15/18	LE PETIT CAFÉ & BAKERY	Business meal	Meeting with Commissioners	35.09
Oscar Peña	03/16/18	LAZY DOG RESTAURANT 14	Business lunch	Meeting with Commissioners	45.41
Total General Manager's Expenses					80.50
Brian Pendleton	03/05/18	SQ *TRANSPORTATION SERVIC	Conferences	CMANC Washington DC-March2018	17.41
Brian Pendleton	03/05/18	UBER *TRIP 3NARZ	Conferences	CMANC Washington DC-March2018	63.18
Brian Pendleton	03/05/18	SQ *UVC	Conferences	CMANC Washington DC-March2018	11.07
Brian Pendleton	03/06/18	PP*TAXI CAB	Conferences	CMANC Washington DC-March2018	11.09
Brian Pendleton	03/06/18	DUBLINER	Conferences	CMANC Washington DC-March2018	19.84
Brian Pendleton	03/06/18	SQ *BAY CAB	Conferences	CMANC Washington DC-March2018	9.83
Brian Pendleton	03/06/18	UBER *TRIP RRMEA	Conferences	CMANC Washington DC-March2018	4.69
Brian Pendleton	03/07/18	DIRKSEN NORTH 11202637	Conferences	CMANC Washington DC-March2018	8.05
Brian Pendleton	03/07/18	TAXI SVC WASHINGTON	Conferences	CMANC Washington DC-March2018	9.01
Brian Pendleton	03/08/18	THE PARKING SPOT 215	Conferences	CMANC Washington DC-March2018	102.80
Brian Pendleton	03/08/18	THE LIAISON CAPITOL HILL	Conferences	CMANC Washington DC-March2018	1,512.14
Brian Pendleton	03/08/18	CARVING ROOM	Conferences	CMANC Washington DC-March2018	29.85
Brian Pendleton	03/08/18	UBER *TRIP R4F7E	Conferences	CMANC Washington DC-March2018	30.06
Total Deputy General Manager's Expenses					1,829.02
Jessica Rauch	03/01/18	THE BOATYARD INC	Business meal	Closed session Board meeting dinner-2/28	152.23
Jessica Rauch	03/15/18	ANDRIA'S SEAFOOD	Business meal	Closed session Board meeting dinner-3/14	142.80
Jessica Rauch	03/28/18	VENTURA CHAMBER OF COMMER	Business meal	Pena - State of the City meeting	45.00
Jessica Rauch	03/19/18	VCNVENTURACO*SERVICE FEE	Miscellaneous	County Filing Fee - Notice of Completion - 1583 Elevator	2.50
Jessica Rauch	03/19/18	VENTURACORECORDERCTR*V	Miscellaneous	County Filing - Notice of Completion - 1583 Elevator	99.00
Total Administrative Assistant's Expenses					441.53

ATTACHMENT 5

Ventura Port District Chase Business Credit Card Charges March 2018

Chase Credit Card holders

Oscar Peña, General Manager
Brian Pendleton, Deputy General Manager
Jessica Rauch, Administrative Assistant/Clerk
Robin Baer, Property Manager
Joe Gonzalez, Facilities Manager
Jennifer Talt-Lundin, Marketing Manager
Frank Locklear, Marina Manager
John Higgins, Harbormaster

<u>Staff</u>	<u>Trans Date</u>	<u>Vendor</u>	<u>Category</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>
Robin Baer	03/15/18	VENTURA COIUNTY STAR	Subscriptions	Online Subscription	4.35
Total Property Manager's Expenses					4.35
Joe Gonzalez	03/01/18	www.windrangers.com	Grounds maintenance	Coast Pneumatics, Inc-Fire pit wind monitor system	987.93
Joe Gonzalez	03/06/18	COAST PNEUMATICS INC	Grounds maintenance	Coast Pneumatics, Inc-Fire pit wind monitor system	93.74
Joe Gonzalez	03/07/18	LANDSCAPE LIGHTING WORLD	Grounds maintenance	VHV Landscaping low voltage lighting	466.88
Joe Gonzalez	03/28/18	DIVERSIFIED LIGHTING SUP	Grounds maintenance	VHV Landscaping low voltage lighting	1,010.26
Joe Gonzalez	03/08/18	BUILDING SAFETY CTY SAN	Operating supplies	City of Ventura-annual maintenance permit	577.96
Joe Gonzalez	03/16/18	AMERICAN FIREGLASS	Operating supplies	VHV Fire Pit beads	338.83
Joe Gonzalez	03/23/18	AMERICAN FIREGLASS	Operating supplies	VHV Fire Pit beads	338.83
Joe Gonzalez	03/29/18	APPLIED PWR805-9811991	Operating supplies	NPS Sign (powder coating)	332.25
Total Facilities Manager's Expenses					4,146.68
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/17/18	SPROUT SOCIAL	Advertising	Social Media Programming	99.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/25/18	GOOGLE *LOOPSSURVEY APP	Advertising	Marketing advertising tool	99.99
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/13/18	LE PETIT CAFE & BAKERY	Business meal	Tenant meeting	52.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/14/18	GREEK MEDITERRANEAN STEAK	Business meal	Tenant meeting	48.10
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/28/18	VENTURA BOAT RENTALS	Business meal	Media visit	23.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/06/18	FS *AngelCam	E-Advertising	New Live Web CAM - Sunset	30.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/09/18	CTC*CONSTANTCONTACT.COM	E-Advertising	Harbor Views Enewsletter	20.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/19/18	ICONOSQUARE	E-Advertising	Annual Fee for Instagram Analytics	351.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/20/18	FS *AngelCam	E-Advertising	Harbor Entrance Web CAM	20.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/21/18	MAILCHIMP *MONTHLY	E-Advertising	Village Enewsletter	75.00
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/31/18	FACEBK *CS488FWJW2	E-Advertising	Boosted ad posts	8.50
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/31/18	FACEBK *LR488FWJW2	E-Advertising	Boosted ad posts	1.50
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/31/18	FACEBK *YG387FSSY2	E-Advertising	Boosted ad posts	51.70

ATTACHMENT 5

Ventura Port District Chase Business Credit Card Charges March 2018

Chase Credit Card holders

Oscar Peña, General Manager
 Brian Pendleton, Deputy General Manager
 Jessica Rauch, Administrative Assistant/Clerk
 Robin Baer, Property Manager
 Joe Gonzalez, Facilities Manager
 Jennifer Talt-Lundin, Marketing Manager
 Frank Locklear, Marina Manager
 John Higgins, Harbormaster

<u>Staff</u>	<u>Trans Date</u>	<u>Vendor</u>	<u>Category</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/31/18	FACEBK *XG387FSSY2	E-Advertising	Boosted ad posts	137.44
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/03/18	CVS/PHARMACY #09235	Event production	Golden Eggs for spring promotion	6.95
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/06/18	OTC BRANDS INC.	Event production	Mermaid Month	26.02
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/06/18	OTC BRANDS INC.	Event production	Mermaid Month	152.30
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/06/18	LOWES #01734*	Event production	Clips for Mermaid Month	13.75
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/13/18	OTC BRANDS INC	Event production	Credit from Mermaid Month	(26.99)
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/15/18	PARTY CITY	Event production	Bubbles	27.95
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/20/18	TARGET 00002980	Event production	Golden Eggs for spring promotion	42.10
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/21/18	OTC BRANDS	Event production	Harbor is Hopping Easter Sunday Eggs	26.95
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/21/18	MICHAELS STORES 4800	Event production	Mermaid parade Items	52.80
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/28/18	LAKESHORE LEARNING #38	Event production	Bubbles	37.66
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/28/18	THE HOME DEPOT 1040	Event production	Spring selfie / experience board-tarp	12.37
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/28/18	MICHAELS STORES 4800	Event production	Flowers for spring selfie board	21.55
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/28/18	MICHAELS STORES 4800	Event production	Flowers for spring selfie board	32.33
Jennifer Talt-Lundin	03/28/18	MICHAELS STORES 4800	Event production	Return of Spring flowers	(36.04)
Total Marketing Manager's Expenses					1,406.93

ATTACHMENT 5

Ventura Port District Chase Business Credit Card Charges March 2018

Chase Credit Card holders

Oscar Peña, General Manager
Brian Pendleton, Deputy General Manager
Jessica Rauch, Administrative Assistant/Clerk
Robin Baer, Property Manager
Joe Gonzalez, Facilities Manager
Jennifer Talt-Lundin, Marketing Manager
Frank Locklear, Marina Manager
John Higgins, Harbormaster

<u>Staff</u>	<u>Trans Date</u>	<u>Vendor</u>	<u>Category</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Amount</u>
Frank Locklear	03/06/18	ATT*BILL PAYMENT	Communications	Internet connection - Marina / Marketing office	79.00
Frank Locklear	03/09/18	LOGMEIN*GOTOMEETING	Communications	Port District teleconference charge	49.00
Frank Locklear	03/09/18	REALVNC LIMITED	Computer supply	Remote computer access	110.00
Frank Locklear	03/09/18	FRY'S ELECTRONICS # 44	Computer supply	(4) Cyber Power ComputerAPC's	249.85
Frank Locklear	03/21/18	AMAZON MKTPLACE PMTS	Computer supply	Marina office label maker	81.99
Frank Locklear	03/29/18	FRY'S ELECTRONICS # 44	Computer supply	Replace Maintenance Supervisor's computer	629.26
Frank Locklear	03/29/18	PCDESTINATION LLC	Computer supply	Microsoft Office for Maintenance Supervisor's computer	149.97
Frank Locklear	03/27/18	Amazon Prime Membership	Membership	Annual fee for Amazon Prime	106.67
Frank Locklear	03/02/18	AMAZON MKTPLACE PMTS	Office supplies	Plantronics telephone headset for Property Manager	203.63
Frank Locklear	03/14/18	DTV*DIRECTV SERVICE	Operating supplies	Direct TV service *Harbor Patrol	19.99
Total Marina Manager's Expenses					1,679.36
John Higgins	03/27/18	BILLS TRAILER HITCH AND S	Equipment maintenance	Jet Ski trailer parts	51.72
John Higgins	03/15/18	FYF*FROMYOUFLOWERS	Miscellaneous	Paul Korber Memorial Wreath	224.08
John Higgins	03/15/18	APL* ITUNES.COM/BILL	Operating supplies	Patrol #1 phone storage	0.99
John Higgins	03/15/18	APL* ITUNES.COM/BILL	Operating supplies	Patrol #2 phone storage	0.99
John Higgins	03/20/18	AMAZON MKTPLACE PMTS	Operating supplies	Jet Ski dolly/shop cart	369.98
John Higgins	03/27/18	AIRGAS WEST	Operating supplies	Miscellaneous supplies	3.53
John Higgins	03/29/18	Amazon.com	Operating supplies	ATN Laser Ballistics range finder & cell phone accessories	285.04
John Higgins	03/07/18	GOLD COAST RECYCLING & TR	Salvage	Vessel disposal	173.80
John Higgins	03/06/18	VENTURA COUNTY EMS	Training	EMT renewal (3 employees)	273.00
John Higgins	03/23/18	NATIONAL EMBLEM	Uniform	Uniform patch	814.41
Total Harbormaster's Expenses					2,197.54
Total Chase Credit Card Expenses					11,785.91



BOARD OF PORT COMMISSIONERS

SEPTEMBER 12, 2018

STANDARD AGENDA ITEM 2

APPROVAL OF PROFESSIONAL
SERVICES AGREEMENT WITH WHITE
NELSON DIEHL EVANS

**VENTURA PORT DISTRICT
BOARD COMMUNICATION**

STANDARD AGENDA ITEM 2
Meeting Date: September 12, 2018

TO: Board of Port Commissioners
FROM: Gloria Adkins, Accounting Manager
SUBJECT: Approval of Professional Services Agreement with White Nelson Diehl Evans

RECOMMENDATION:

That the Board of Port Commissioners:

- a) Approve the three year Professional Services Agreement with White Nelson Diehl Evans LLP to perform the District's financial audit of the fiscal years ending June 30, 2018, June 30, 2019 and June 30, 2020; and
- b) Appoint an Audit Liaison to work with staff and White Nelson Diehl Evans LLP throughout the audit process.

SUMMARY:

Attached for the Board's review is the scope of work for White Nelson Diehl Evans (WNDE) to conduct an audit of the District's financial statements for the fiscal year's ending June 30, 2018, June 30, 2019 and June 30, 2020. Staff is also requesting a Commissioner be chosen as an audit liaison to work with staff throughout the current fiscal year audit process.

BACKGROUND:

The District has contracted with White Nelson Diehl Evans to perform the District's annual financial audit for the past seven years. Five of those years was through a joint contract with the City of Ventura. The District's joint contract with the City expired after the completion of the audit for fiscal year 2015. After the joint contract expired, the City extended their service agreement with WNDE for three years, fiscal years 15-16, 16-17 and 17-18. The City is completing the final year of their extension and has entered into a new 3 year extension of their PSA for fiscal years 18-19, 19-20 and 20-21. At this time the City is unable to include the District in their service agreement extensions, so the District desires to contract directly with WNDE for the audit of the District's financial records for the next three fiscal years.

The audit for the first year of the requested PSA will begin in October 2018, with an expected completion date no later than January 31, 2019. The audit of the remaining two years will begin in August, with an expected completion date no later than November 30 of each year.

The District is very appreciative of the past opportunities to be included in the City's Audit Request for Proposal (RFP) process and is hopeful this collaborative arrangement may be continued at a future date when the City is ready to solicit for an audit RFP.

In previous years the Chairman has appointed a Commissioner to communicate with staff and the audit firm throughout the audit process. Commissioner Friedman served as the District's audit liaison for the fiscal year 2017 audit process. Appointing a liaison also provides the opportunity for the Commissioner and the auditor to candidly discuss audit related matters and concerns apart from management.

FISCAL IMPACT:

The total cost for the three year audit services will be approximately \$64,500. This total cost is broken down as follows:

Fiscal Year Ending	<u>2018</u>	<u>2019</u>	<u>2020</u>
District Audit	\$20,500	\$21,500	\$22,500

These costs will be paid annually. WNDE will notify the District of any additional costs should there be unforeseen circumstances that may require additional services in advance of performing the service.

ATTACHMENT:

Attachment 1 – Scope of Work Letter, dated August 24, 2018

WHITE NELSON DIEHL EVANS LLP
Certified Public Accountants & Consultants

August 24, 2018

Mr. Oscar Peña
General Manager
Ventura Port District
1603 Anchors Way Drive
Ventura, CA 93001

Dear Mr. Peña:

We are pleased to confirm our understanding of the services we are to provide Ventura Port District (the District) for the three years ending June 30, 2020. We will audit the financial statements, including related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the basic financial statements of the District as of and for the years ending June 30, 2018, 2019, and 2020. Accounting standards generally accepted in the United States of America provide for certain required supplementary information (RSI), such as management's discussion and analysis, to supplement the District's basic financial statements. Such information, although not a part of the basic financial statements, is required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board who considers it to be an essential part of financial reporting for placing the basic financial statements in an appropriate operational, economic, or historical context. As part of our engagement, we will apply certain limited procedures to the District's RSI in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. These limited procedures will consist of inquiries of management regarding the methods of preparing the information and comparing the information for consistency with management's responses to our inquiries, the basic financial statements, and other knowledge we obtained during our audit of the basic financial statements. We will not express an opinion or provide any assurance on the information because the limited procedures do not provide us with sufficient evidence to express an opinion or provide any assurance. The following RSI is required by U.S. generally accepted accounting principles and will be subjected to certain limited procedures, but will not be audited:

- 1) Management's Discussion and Analysis.
- 2) Schedule of Proportionate Share of Net Pension Liability and Schedule of Contributions for the Defined Benefit Pension Plans.
- 3) Defined Benefit Plan Schedules required by GASB Statement No. 75, *Accounting and Financial Reporting for Postemployment Benefits Other than Pensions - An Amendment of GASB Statement No. 45*.

Mr. Oscar Peña
Ventura Port District
August 24, 2018
Page 2

Audit Objectives

The objective of our audit is the expression of an opinion as to whether your financial statements are fairly presented, in all material respects, in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles. Our audit will be conducted in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards for financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards*, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States, and will include tests of the accounting records of the District and other procedures we consider necessary to enable us to express such an opinion. We will issue a written report upon completion of our audit of the District's financial statements. Our report will be addressed to the Board of Port Commissioners of the District. We cannot provide assurance that an unmodified opinion will be expressed. Circumstances may arise in which it is necessary for us to modify our opinion or add emphasis-of-matter or other-matter paragraphs. If our opinion is other than unmodified, we will discuss the reasons with you in advance. If, for any reason, we are unable to complete the audit or are unable to form or have not formed an opinion, we may decline to express an opinion or issue reports, or may withdraw from this engagement.

We will also provide a report (that does not include an opinion) on internal control related to the financial statements and compliance with the provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements, noncompliance with which could have a material effect on the financial statements as required by *Government Auditing Standards*. The report on internal control and on compliance and other matters will include a paragraph that states (1) that the purpose of the report is solely to describe the scope of testing of internal control and compliance, and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control on compliance, and (2) that the report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering the District's internal control and compliance. The paragraph will also state that the report is not suitable for any other purpose. If during our audit we become aware that the District is subject to an audit requirement that is not encompassed in the terms of this engagement, we will communicate to management and those charged with governance that an audit in accordance with U.S. generally accepted auditing standards and the standards for financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards* may not satisfy the relevant legal, regulatory, or contractual requirements.

Audit Procedures - General

An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements; therefore, our audit will involve judgment about the number of transactions to be examined and the areas to be tested. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements. We will plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether from (1) errors, (2) fraudulent financial reporting, (3) misappropriation of assets, or (4) violations of laws or governmental regulations that are attributable to the District or to acts by management or employees acting on behalf of the District. Because the determination of abuse is subjective, *Government Auditing Standards* do not expect auditors to provide reasonable assurance of detecting abuse.

Mr. Oscar Peña
Ventura Port District
August 24, 2018
Page 3

Audit Procedures - General (Continued)

Because of the inherent limitations of an audit, combined with the inherent limitations of internal control, and because we will not perform a detailed examination of all transactions, there is a risk that material misstatements may exist and not be detected by us, even though the audit is properly planned and performed in accordance with U.S. generally accepted auditing standards and *Government Auditing Standards*. In addition, an audit is not designed to detect immaterial misstatements or violations of laws or governmental regulations that do not have a direct and material effect on the financial statements. However, we will inform the appropriate level of management of any material errors, any fraudulent financial reporting, or misappropriation of assets that come to our attention. We will also inform the appropriate level of management of any violations of laws or governmental regulations that come to our attention, unless clearly inconsequential, and of any material abuse that comes to our attention. Our responsibility as auditors is limited to the period covered by our audit and does not extend to later periods for which we are not engaged as auditors.

Our procedures will include tests of documentary evidence supporting the transactions recorded in the accounts, and may include tests of physical existence of inventories, and direct confirmation of receivables and certain other assets and liabilities by correspondence with selected individuals, funding sources, creditors, and financial institutions. We will request written representations from your attorneys as part of the engagement, and they may bill you for responding to this inquiry. At the conclusion of our audit, we will require certain written representations from you about your responsibilities for the financial statements; compliance with laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements; and other responsibilities required by generally accepted auditing standards.

Audit Procedures - Internal Control

Our audit will include obtaining an understanding of the District and its environment, including internal control, sufficient to assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements and to design the nature, timing, and extent of further audit procedures. Tests of controls may be performed to test the effectiveness of certain controls that we consider relevant to preventing and detecting errors and fraud that are material to the financial statements and to preventing and detecting misstatements resulting from illegal acts and other noncompliance matters that have a direct and material effect on the financial statements. Our tests, if performed, will be less in scope than would be necessary to render an opinion on internal control and, accordingly, no opinion will be expressed in our report on internal control issued pursuant to *Government Auditing Standards*.

An audit is not designed to provide assurance on internal control or to identify significant deficiencies or material weaknesses. However, during the audit, we will communicate to management and those charged with governance internal control related matters that are required to be communicated under AICPA professional standards and *Government Auditing Standards*.

Mr. Oscar Peña
Ventura Port District
August 24, 2018
Page 4

Audit Procedures - Compliance

As part of obtaining reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, we will perform tests of the District's compliance with the provisions of applicable laws, regulations, contracts, agreements, and grants. However, the objective of our audit will not be to provide an opinion on overall compliance and we will not express such an opinion in our report on compliance issued pursuant to *Government Auditing Standards*.

Other Services

We will also assist in preparing the financial statements and related notes of the District in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles based on information provided by you. These nonaudit services do not constitute an audit under *Government Auditing Standards* and such services will not be conducted in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*. We will perform the services in accordance with applicable professional standards. The other services are limited to the financial statements and related notes services previously defined. We, in our sole professional judgment, reserve the right to refuse to perform any procedure or take any action that could be construed as assuming management responsibilities.

Management Responsibilities

Management is responsible for designing, implementing, and maintaining effective internal controls, including evaluating and monitoring ongoing activities, to help ensure that appropriate goals and objectives are met; following laws and regulations; and ensuring that management is reliable and financial information is reliable and properly reported. Management is also responsible for implementing systems designed to achieve compliance with applicable laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements. You are also responsible for the selection and application of accounting principles, for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements and all accompanying information in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles, and for compliance with applicable laws and regulations and the provisions of contracts and grant agreements.

Management is also responsible for making all financial records and related information available to us and for the accuracy and completeness of that information. You are also responsible for providing us with (1) access to all information of which you are aware that is relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements, (2) additional information that we may request for the purpose of the audit, and (3) unrestricted access to persons within the government from whom we determine it necessary to obtain audit evidence. Because of the importance of oral and written management representations to the effective performance of our services, the District releases and indemnifies our firm and its personnel from any and all claims, liabilities, costs and expenses attributable to any misrepresentation by management and its representatives.

Mr. Oscar Peña
Ventura Port District
August 24, 2018
Page 5

Management Responsibilities (Continued)

Your responsibilities include adjusting the financial statements to correct material misstatements and for confirming to us in the written representation letter that the effects of any uncorrected misstatements aggregated by us during the current engagement and pertaining to the latest period presented are immaterial, both individually and in the aggregate, to the financial statements taken as a whole.

You are responsible for the design and implementation of programs and controls to prevent and detect fraud, and for informing us about all known or suspected fraud affecting the District involving (1) management, (2) employees who have significant roles in internal control, and (3) others where the fraud could have a material effect on the financial statements. Your responsibilities include informing us of your knowledge of any allegations of fraud or suspected fraud affecting the District received in communications from employees, former employees, grantors, regulators, or others. In addition, you are responsible for identifying and ensuring that the District complies with applicable laws, regulations, contracts, agreements, and grants and for taking timely and appropriate steps to remedy fraud and noncompliance with provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, or grant agreements, or abuse that we report.

Management is responsible for establishing and maintaining a process for tracking the status of audit findings and recommendations. Management is also responsible for identifying and providing report copies of previous financial audits, attestation engagements, performance audits or other studies related to the objectives discussed in the Audit Objectives section of this letter. This responsibility includes relaying to us corrective actions taken to address significant findings and recommendations resulting from those audits, attestation engagements, performance audits, or other studies. You are also responsible for providing management's views on our current findings, conclusions, and recommendations, as well as your planned corrective actions, for the report, and for the timing and format for providing that information.

You agree to assume all management responsibilities relating to the financial statements and related notes and any other nonaudit services we provide. You will be required to acknowledge in the management representation letter our assistance with preparation of the financial statements and related notes, and with the calculation of the net pension liability, and that you have reviewed and approved the financial statements and related notes prior to their issuance and have accepted responsibility for them. Further, you agree to oversee the nonaudit services by designating an individual, preferably from senior management, with suitable skill, knowledge, or experience; evaluate the adequacy and results of those services; and accept responsibility for them.

With regard to the electronic dissemination of audited financial statements, including financial statements published electronically on your website, you understand that electronic sites are a means to distribute information and, therefore, we are not required to read the information contained in these sites or to consider the consistency of other information in the electronic site with the original document.

Mr. Oscar Peña
 Ventura Port District
 August 24, 2018
 Page 6

Engagement Administration, Fees, and Other

Noted below is a listing of some work required by District staff to assist in the audit:

1. Preparation of trial balances for all funds, after posting of all year-end journal entries.
2. Preparation of supporting schedules for all material balance sheet accounts, and selected revenue and expenditure accounts.
3. Typing of all confirmation requests.
4. Pulling and refileing of all supporting documents required for audit verification.
5. Assistance with the preparation of the financial statements and notes to the financial statements.
6. Preparation of the management's discussion and analysis.

Mr. Robert J. Callanan is the engagement partner and is responsible for supervising the engagement and signing the report or authorizing another individual to sign it. Our fees for these services will be as follows:

Fiscal Year Ending	<u>2018</u>	<u>2019</u>	<u>2020</u>
District Audit	\$ <u>20,500</u>	\$ <u>21,500</u>	\$ <u>22,500</u>

The aforementioned audit fees include assistance with the preparation of the District's financial statements and the net pension liability calculations.

The annual fee stipulated herein contemplates that conditions satisfactory to the normal progress and completion of the examination will be encountered and the District's accounting personnel will furnish the agreed upon assistance in connection with the audit. However, if unusual circumstances are encountered which make it necessary for us to do additional work; we shall report such conditions to the responsible District officials and provide the District with an estimate of the additional accounting fees involved.

We will provide copies of our reports to the District; however, management is responsible for distribution of the reports and the financial statements. Unless restricted by law or regulation, or containing privileged and confidential information, copies of our reports are to be made available for public inspection.

The audit documentation for this engagement is the property of White Nelson Diehl Evans LLP and constitutes confidential information. However, subject to applicable laws and regulations, audit documentation and appropriate individuals will be made available upon request and in a timely manner to grantor agencies or their designees, a federal agency providing direct or indirect funding, or the U.S. Government Accountability Office for purposes of a quality review of the audit, to resolve audit findings, or to carry out oversight responsibilities. We will notify you of any such request. If requested, access to such audit documentation will be provided under the supervision of White Nelson Diehl Evans LLP personnel. Furthermore, upon request, we may provide copies of selected audit documentation to the aforementioned parties. These parties may intend, or decide, to distribute the copies or information contained therein to others, including other governmental agencies.

Mr. Oscar Peña
 Ventura Port District
 August 24, 2018
 Page 7

Engagement Administration, Fees, and Other (Continued)

In accordance with our firm's current record retention policy, all of your original records will be returned to you at the conclusion of this engagement. Our audit documentation files will be kept for a period of seven years after the issuance of the audit report. All other files will be kept for as long as you retain us as your auditors. However, upon termination of our service, all records will be destroyed after a period of seven years. Physical deterioration or catastrophic events may further shorten the life of these records. The audit documentation files of our firm are not a substitute for your original records.

We expect to begin our audits in August and to issue our reports no later than November 30. For the fiscal year ended June 30, 2018, we expect to begin the audit in October 2018 and issue our reports no later than January 31, 2019.

Government Auditing Standards require that we provide you with a copy of our most recent external peer review report and any letter of comment, and any subsequent peer review reports and letters of comment received during the period of the contract. Our most recent peer review report accompanies this letter.

To ensure that White Nelson Diehl Evans LLP's independence is not impaired under the AICPA *Code of Professional Conduct*, you agree to inform the engagement partner before entering into any substantive employment discussions with any of our personnel.

We appreciate the opportunity to be of service to the Ventura Port District and believe this letter accurately summarizes the significant terms of our engagement. If you have any questions, please let us know. If you agree with the terms of our engagement as described in this letter, please sign and date below and return the signed copy to us.

Very truly yours,

White Nelson Diehl Evans LLP

ACCEPTED:

VENTURA PORT DISTRICT

By _____

Name _____

Title _____

Date _____



System Review Report

July 22, 2015

To the Owners of
White Nelson Diehl Evans LLP
and the Peer Review Committee of the CA Society of CPAs

We have reviewed the system of quality control for the accounting and auditing practice of White Nelson Diehl Evans LLP (the firm) in effect for the year ended March 31, 2015. Our peer review was conducted in accordance with the Standards for Performing and Reporting on Peer Reviews established by the Peer Review Board of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. As a part of our peer review, we considered reviews by regulatory entities, if applicable, in determining the nature and extent of our procedures. The firm is responsible for designing a system of quality control and complying with it to provide the firm with reasonable assurance of performing and reporting in conformity with applicable professional standards in all material respects. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the design of the system of quality control and the firm's compliance therewith based on our review. The nature, objectives, scope, limitations of, and the procedures performed in a System Review are described in the standards at www.aicpa.org/prsummary.

As required by the standards, engagements selected for review included engagements performed under the *Government Auditing Standards* and audits of employee benefit plans.

In our opinion, the system of quality control for the accounting and auditing practice of White Nelson Diehl Evans LLP in effect for the year ended March 31, 2015, has been suitably designed and complied with to provide the firm with reasonable assurance of performing and reporting in conformity with applicable professional standards in all material respects. Firms can receive a rating of *pass*, *pass with deficiency(ies)* or *fail*. White Nelson Diehl Evans LLP has received a peer review rating of *pass*.

Heidenreich & Heidenreich CPAs PLLC

Heidenreich & Heidenreich, CPAs, PLLC



BOARD OF PORT COMMISSIONERS
SEPTEMBER 12, 2018

STANDARD AGENDA ITEM 3
APPROVAL OF NEW CONFLICT OF
INTEREST AND DISCLOSURE CODE

**VENTURA PORT DISTRICT
BOARD COMMUNICATION**

STANDAR AGENDA ITEM 3
Meeting Date: September 12, 2018

TO: Board of Port Commissioners
FROM: Jessica Rauch, Clerk of the Board
SUBJECT: Approval of New Conflict of Interest and Disclosure Code

RECOMMENDATION:

That the Board of Port Commissioners adopt Resolution No. 3361 to approve the new Conflict of Interest Code Policy and rescind Resolution No. 3317.

SUMMARY:

It has been necessary from time to time to amend the District's Conflict of Interest Code to conform its disclosure obligations to recent changes in the law, and to identify new positions within the District for which the job duties entail the making of decisions having a potential financial impact on the District, such that employees holding such positions are required to file disclosure statements under the District's Code. The District recently added the new position of Deputy General Manager. Exhibit A to the proposed Resolution identifies all designated positions and the disclosure categories they file under.

Once the Board adopts Resolution No. 3361, approving the new Conflict of Interest and Disclosure Code, it will be transmitted to the County of Ventura, along with a form of Certification signed by the Secretary of the Board.

ATTACHMENTS:

Attachment 1 – Resolution No. 3361



RESOLUTION NO. 3361

RESOLUTION OF THE BOARD OF PORT COMMISSIONERS OF THE VENTURA PORT DISTRICT APPROVING ITS NEW 2018 CONFLICT OF INTEREST CODE

WHEREAS, the Political Reform Act, Government Code section 81000 et seq., requires local government agencies to adopt and promulgate Conflict of Interest Codes; and

WHEREAS, the Fair Political Practices Commission has adopted a regulation (2 Cal. Code Regs., § 18730) which contains the terms of a standard Conflict of Interest Code, which may be amended by the Fair Political Practices Commission to conform to amendments in the Political Reform Act after public notice and hearings; and

WHEREAS, the terms of California Code of Regulations, Title 2, Section 18730, and any amendment to it duly adopted by the Fair Political Practices Commission, are hereby incorporated by reference as the Conflict of Interest Code for the Ventura Port District, and along with the attached Exhibit A, which designates positions requiring disclosure and Exhibit B, which set forth disclosure categories for each designated position, constitute the Conflict of Interest Code of the Ventura Port District; and

WHEREAS, persons holding positions designated in Exhibit A shall file Form 700 Statements of Economic Interests with the Filing Officer specified for that position in Exhibit A; and

WHEREAS, in preparing the form 700, designated filers need only disclose those financial interests falling within the disclosure categories designated for that filer's position as stated in Exhibits A and B; and

WHEREAS, pursuant to said Act, the Ventura Port District ("District") adopted its initial conflict of interest code ("Code") which has since been updated and amended several times, with the latest action being the adoption of Board Resolution No. 3317 on September 28, 2016; and

WHEREAS, the Board has determined that it is in the best interest of the District to amend the Code in certain particulars outlining new positions in the District; and

WHEREAS, as a result of such amendment, the Board finds it is desirable and in the best interests of the District to rescind the existing Code and adopt the new Code in the manner set forth herein as Exhibit A; and

NOW, THEREFORE, BE IT RESOLVED that the Board of Port Commissioners of the Ventura Port District hereby rescinds Resolution No. 3317 and all prior versions of the Code, which were previously passed, approved, and adopted by the Board, and adopts in its place Exhibit A, Exhibit B and Exhibit C of its Conflict of Interest and Disclosure Code of the Ventura Port District, to include additional positions within the District, which are shown on Exhibit A attached hereto.



BE IT FURTHER RESOLVED that those individuals holding newly designated positions, as set forth in Exhibit A, shall file Statements of Economic Interests with the Clerk of the District within 30 days of the adoption of this Resolution.

BE IT FURTHER RESOLVED that a secretariially certified copy of this Resolution, including the attached Exhibit A, B, and C, shall be forwarded to the Ventura Board of Supervisors as an amendment to the Conflict of Interest and Disclosure Code of the Ventura Port District.

PASSED, APPROVED AND ADOPTED at a regular meeting of the Board of Port Commissioners of Ventura Port District held on the 12th day of September 2018 by the following vote:

AYES:

NOES:

ABSTAINED:

ABSENT:

Everard Ashworth, Chairman

ATTEST:

Jim Friedman, Secretary

STATE OF CALIFORNIA)
COUNTY OF VENTURA (ss.
CITY OF SAN BUENAVENTURA)

I, Jim Friedman, Secretary of the Ventura Port District, a public corporation, do hereby certify that the above and foregoing Resolution was duly passed and adopted by the Board of Port Commissioners of said District at a regular meeting thereof held on the 12th day of September 2018 by the following vote:

AYES:

NOES:

ABSTAIN:

ABSENT:

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, I have hereunto set my hand and affixed the official seal of said District this 12th day of September 2018.

Jim Friedman, Secretary

**CERTIFICATION OF THE SECRETARY OF
VENTURA PORT DISTRICT**

I, the undersigned, do hereby certify:

1. I am the duly elected and acting Secretary of the Ventura Port District.
2. The foregoing Resolution approving the new Conflict of Interest and Disclosure Code of the Ventura Port District was adopted at a regular meeting of the Board of Port Commissioners held on September 12, 2018.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, I have executed this Certificate of Secretary of the District this 12th day of September 2018.

Jim Friedman, Secretary
Ventura Port District
Board of Port Commissioners

EXHIBIT A – DESIGNATED POSITIONS AND FILING OFFICERS

# of POSITIONS	POSITION TITLE	DISCLOSURE CATEGORIES (From Exhibit B)	FILING OFFICER (Designate County Clerk of Board [COB] or Local Agency's Clerk [AC])
5	Members of the Board of Port Commissioners	1,2	COB
1	General Manager	1,2	COB
1	Deputy General Manager	1,2	COB
1	Harbormaster	2	AC
1	Business Operations Manager	2	AC
1	Accounting Manager	2	AC
1	Marketing Manager	2	AC
1	Marina Manager	2	AC
1	Property Manager	2	AC
1	Facilities Manager	2	AC
Consultants ¹			

Notes:

- 1) The Filing Official for the Members of the Board and the General Manager is the Clerk of the Ventura County Board of Supervisors.
- 2) The Filing Official for all other positions is the Clerk of the Ventura Port District.

¹ The disclosure, if any, required of a consultant will be determined on a case-by-case basis by the head of the agency or designee. The determination of whether a consultant has disclosure requirements should be made in writing on a Fair Political Practices Commission Form 805. The determination should include a description of the consultant's duties and based upon that description, a statement of the extent, if any, of the disclosure requirements. Each Form 805 is a public record and should be retained for public inspection either in the same manner and location as the Conflict of Interest Code, or with appropriate documentation at the location where the Conflict of Interest Code is maintained, cross-referencing to the Form 805.

EXHIBIT B – DISCLOSURE CATEGORIES

The terms *italicized* below have specific meaning under the Political Reform Act. In addition, the financial interests of a spouse, domestic partner and dependent children of the public official holding the designated position may require reporting. Consult the instructions and reference pamphlet of the Form 700 for explanation.

Category 1 – BROADEST DISCLOSURE

[SEE FORM 700 SCHEDULES A-1, A-2, B, C, D and E]

- (1) All sources of *income, gifts, loans and travel payments*;
- (2) All *interests in real property*; and
- (3) All *investments and business positions in business entities*.

Category 2 – REAL PROPERTY

[SEE FORM 700 SCHEDULE B]

All interests in real property, including interests in real property held by business entities and trusts in which the public official holds a business position or has an investment or other financial interest.

Category 3 – LAND DEVELOPMENT, CONSTRUCTION AND TRANSACTION

[SEE FORM 700 SCHEDULES A-1, A-2, C, D and E]

All investments, business positions and sources of income, gifts, loans and travel payments, from sources which engage in land development, construction, or real property acquisition or sale.

Category 4 – PROCUREMENT

[SEE FORM 700 SCHEDULES A-1, A-2, C, D and E]

All investments, business positions and sources of income, gifts, loans and travel payments, from sources which provide services, supplies, materials, machinery or equipment which the designated position procures or assists in procuring on behalf of their agency or department.

Category 5 – REGULATION AND PERMITTING

[SEE FORM 700 SCHEDULES A-1, A-2, C, D and E]

All investments, business positions and sources of income, gifts, loans and travel payments, from sources which are subject to the regulatory, permitting or licensing authority of, or have an application or license pending before, the designated position's agency or department.

Category 6 – FUNDING

[SEE FORM 700 SCHEDULES A-1, A-2, C, D and E]

All investments, business positions and sources of income, gifts, loans and travel payments, from sources which receive grants or other funding from or through the designated position's agency or department.

APPENDIX - DESIGNATING OFFICIALS WHO MANAGE PUBLIC INVESTMENTS

Pursuant to Government Code section 87200 et seq., certain city and county officials, as well as all "other officials who manage public investments," are required to disclose their economic interests in accordance with the Political Reform Act. This Appendix provides the relevant definitions for determining which public officials qualify as "other officials who manage public investments," designates the agency's positions which qualify as such, and states the Filing Officer for each designated position.

APPLICABLE DEFINITIONS

As set forth in 2 California Code of Regulations section 18701, the following definitions apply for the purposes of Government Code section 87200:

(1) "Other public officials who manage public investments" means:

(A) Members of boards and commissions, including pension and retirement boards or commissions, or of committees thereof, who exercise responsibility for the management of public investments;

(B) High-level officers and employees of public agencies who exercise primary responsibility for the management of public investments, such as chief or principal investment officers or chief financial managers. This category shall not include officers and employees who work under the supervision of the chief or principal investment officers or the chief financial managers; and

(C) Individuals who, pursuant to a contract with a state or local government agency, perform the same or substantially all the same functions that would otherwise be performed by the public officials described in subdivision (1)(B) above.

(2) "Public investments" means the investment of public moneys in real estate, securities, or other economic interests for the production of revenue or other financial return.

(3) "Public moneys" means all moneys belonging to, received by, or held by, the state, or any city, county, town, district, or public agency therein, or by an officer thereof acting in his or her official capacity, and includes the proceeds of all bonds and other evidences of indebtedness, trust funds held by public pension and retirement systems, deferred compensation funds held for investment by public agencies, and public moneys held by a financial institution under a trust indenture to which a public agency is a party.

(4) "Management of public investments" means the following non-ministerial functions: directing the investment of public moneys; formulating or approving investment policies; approving or establishing guidelines for asset allocations; or approving investment transactions.

DESIGNATED POSITIONS AND FILING OFFICERS

Based on the foregoing, the following agency positions and/or consultants qualify as “other officials who manage public investments” and shall file Statements of Economic Interests (Form 700) pursuant to Government Code section 87200 et seq. with the below-designated Filing Officers:

# of POSITIONS	POSITION TITLE/CONSULTANT	FILING OFFICER (Designate County Clerk of Board [COB] or Local Agency's Clerk [AC])
5	Members of the Board of Port Commissioners	COB
1	General Manager	COB
1	Deputy General Manager	COB
1	Harbormaster	AC
1	Business Operations Manager	AC
1	Accounting Manager	AC
1	Marketing Manager	AC
1	Marina Manager	AC
1	Property Manager	AC
1	Facilities Manager	AC
1	Consultant	AC

EXHIBIT C - ADDITIONAL CODE PROVISIONS

The following additions to the FPPC Standard Code are hereby incorporated into the Conflict of Interest and Disclosure Code of the Ventura Port District:

DISQUALIFICATION

1. An investment, interest in real property, income or source of income of a designated employee shall not be a basis for disqualification under this Conflict of Interest Code where such interest will foreseeably be affected only by the decisions to fix an ad valorem property tax rate or uniform assessments for the District applicable to the public generally. (Cal. Code of Regs., Title 2, Section 18703)
2. After disqualification, a designated employee may make an appearance, submit information, or express views on the same basis as any other citizen on matters related solely to his personal interest, provided that it is done publicly and provided that the person clearly indicates he is acting in a private capacity.
3. Rule of Necessity: Item No. 1 (above) does not prevent a designated employee from making or participating in the making of a governmental decision to the extent that his participation is legally required for an action or decision to be made. The fact that a designated employee's vote is needed to break a tie does not make this participation legally required for the purposes of this section. The attorney for the District is empowered to advise any designated employee whether or not the "Rule of Necessity" is applicable in any particular instance.

OPINIONS OF COUNSEL AND OF THE COMMISSION

1. Opinion Requests. Any designated employee who is unsure of any right or obligation arising under this Code may, with the prior approval of the General Manager, request a formal opinion or letter of advice from the FPPC or a written opinion from the attorney for the District.
2. Evidence of Good Faith. If an opinion is rendered by the attorney for the District stating the facts and the law upon which the opinion is based, compliance by the designated employee with the conclusions of such an opinion is evidence of good faith in any civil or criminal proceeding brought pursuant to the Political Reform Act of 1974 on this Code, but may not be conclusive as to whether the designated employee acted in good faith. The designated employee's good faith compliance with the opinion of the District's attorney shall also act as a complete defense to any disciplinary action that the District may bring under Section 91003.5 of said Act of this Code. A designated employee may also seek an opinion or advice letter from the FPPC pursuant to Government Code Section 83114, which shall act as a complete defense in any subsequent enforcement proceeding brought by the FPPC.

STATUTE OF LIMITATIONS

1. No action based on a disqualification provision of this Code shall be brought pursuant to Government Code Section 91003(b) to restrain the execution of or to set aside official action of the District unless the complaint or petition is filed and served upon the District within 90 days following the official action.

DEFINITIONS

1. The definitions contained in the Political Reform Act of 1974 (Government Code Section 81000 et. seq.) and regulations adopted pursuant thereto are incorporated into this Conflict of Interest Code. Conflict of Interest disclosure reports shall be made on Fair Political Practices Commission Form 700, or any successor forms thereto.



BOARD OF PORT COMMISSIONERS

SEPTEMBER 12, 2018

STANDARD AGENDA ITEM 4

VENTURA SHELLFISH ENTERPRISE
SITE SELECTION

VENTURA PORT DISTRICT
BOARD COMMUNICATION

STANDARD AGENDA ITEM 4
Meeting Date: September 12, 2018

TO: Board of Port Commissioners
FROM: Everard Ashworth, Chairman
Oscar Peña, General Manager
Brian Pendleton, Deputy General Manager
SUBJECT: Ventura Shellfish Enterprise Site Selection

RECOMMENDATION:

That the Board of Port Commissioners receive an informational report on the Ventura Shellfish Enterprise (VSE) site selection process with the anticipation of a final site recommendation with related permit applications, studies and reports on September 26, 2018.

SUMMARY:

As a result of the Board's actions regarding VSE project siting on November 15, 2017, the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration's (NOAA) National Ocean Service (NOS) prepared a Coastal Aquaculture Siting and Sustainability (CASS) Technical Report - Ventura Shellfish Enterprise: Aquaculture Siting Analysis Results (Attachment 1).

As stated in the CASS Report, spatial planning for aquaculture operations, wherein spatial data representing key environmental and use conflicts are synthesized to identify areas with the highest likelihood for compatibility with aquaculture operations, is a critical first step to ensure environmentally and economically sustainable aquaculture development. The CASS Report for the VSE project studied an area of 20,000 acres in federal waters proximate to Ventura Harbor, known as an Area of Interest (AOI).

On June 28, 2018, NOAA and the VSE team co-hosted an Inter-Agency Pre-Application Meeting in Long Beach with federal and state regulatory staff. NOAA presented the preliminary draft CASS Report and the VSE team provided information concerning the status of the project and related studies. On July 9, 2017, VSE team members met with the Commercial Fishermen of Santa Barbara (CFSB) to discuss the project and status of permit applications.

As a result of the CASS Technical Report, the VSE team has identified two new alternatives, known as CASS Report Alternative 1 and 2 (Attachment 2-3) and Dudek, the project's environmental consulting firm, has prepared a draft application to the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) (Attachment 4) and is currently preparing a California Coastal Commission (CC) application. These two new alternatives are consistent with the Board's prior site selection both in terms of size (2,000 acres) and location in federal waters. The exact GPS coordinates of these two alternatives are included in the CASS Technical Report. The permit applications with preferred siting will be formally considered for approval by the Board on September 26, 2018.

BACKGROUND:

On November 15, 2017, the Board of Port Commissioners authorized the General Manager to prepare and submit all applications to local, state and federal agencies as required for the VSE project and prepare all necessary surveys, studies, reports and federal environmental review documents as directed by local, state and federal agencies. NOAA's CASS Technical Report has allowed the VSE team to evaluate the proposed siting and refine these permit locations and configurations in consultation with aquaculture experts prior to submission of the permit applications.

Project Goals

Increasing the supply of safe, sustainably produced domestic seafood is a priority of the State Legislature, NOAA and the U.S. Department of Commerce. The VSE project is a multi-party initiative that seeks to permit twenty 100-acre plots for growing the Mediterranean mussel (*Mytilus galloprovincialis*) via submerged long lines within the Santa Barbara Channel near Ventura Harbor. The Ventura Port District received a substantial NOAA Sea Grant sub-award of \$300,000 in 2015 for the proposed project in support of these goals. As part of the 2015 grant, the VSE team developed a Strategic Permitting Plan previously provided to the Board and made available to stakeholders and the public. This Strategic Permitting Plan provides a great deal of information about project goals, objectives and regulatory requirements and can be found online at venturashellfishenterprises.com. The proposed project furthers several of the District's fundamental mission and objectives, as summarized below:

- Maintaining a safe and navigable harbor;
- Diversification of commercial fishing opportunities to benefit the fishing industry and local and regional economies;
- Continued priority (as a commercial fishing harbor) for federal funding appropriations for annual dredging of the federal harbor entrance.

Public Outreach

The VSE team hosted a series of public educational workshops in 2017 regarding the proposed project. In total, there were 10 educational and site selection workshops. Of these, three workshops were held to engage with stakeholders to identify the location of twenty 100 acre parcels within a broader area of interest that was identified through use of a spatial planning tool developed by the Bren School of Environmental Science and Management at UC Santa Barbara (UC Bren School). The focused site selection workshops were held at the Four Points Sheraton Hotel in our Harbor on July 11th and 13th and the final workshop was held on August 9th of 2017. While in-person participation was strongly encouraged, individuals who were not able to attend the meetings were provided the opportunity to comment on site selection through SeaSketch linked to venturashellfishenterprise.com. Notice of the site selection workshops was mailed out to over 500 commercial fishing vessel owners between Goleta and Port Hueneme; additionally, the VSE team coordinated with NOAA representatives and commercial fishermen to encourage their attendance. The team also contacted all of the individuals that have registered through the VSE website. This marine spatial planning opportunity was available through Wednesday, August 9th 2017, the date of the final site selection meeting. The venturashellfishenterprise.com website continues to be used to communicate with interested parties who registered on the website.

During and after the site selection workshops, the Board of Port Commissioners received written and oral reports on the site selection process at four public meetings held in 2017 on July 26th, September 13th and 27th, and October 11th. At a fifth public meeting on November 15, the Board authorized the General Manager to proceed with the preparation of all necessary permit applications, surveys, studies, reports for a site in federal waters known as Alternative 8.

Initial Candidate Area Considerations

The initial candidate area in state waters was selected by the VSE with the assistance of analysis prepared by the UC Bren School. The selection of the initial candidate area was detailed in the Strategic Permitting Plan; however some key considerations are summarized here. They included suitability of the candidate growing area for mussels such as water depth and ocean bottom; location in State waters near Ventura Harbor for product landing; avoidance of potential pollution sources; and avoidance of conflicts with existing subsurface leases for oil and gas pipelines, etc. Stakeholder considerations are discussed below.

Subsequent to identification of the initial candidate area, the District received information from local halibut trawlers that the proposed State waters candidate area was located in one of two areas statewide designated by CDFW as halibut trawl grounds. Further, additional information was provided by aquaculture specialist Scott Lindell, associated with Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution, that the minimum depth to support the mussel growing activities should be adjusted from 60 feet to 80 feet. This minimum depth is consistent with the only permitted mussel farms that can sell Mediterranean Mussels in Southern California, Santa Barbara Mariculture (which is located in 80 feet of water off Hope Ranch), and Catalina Sea Ranch (which is located in depths between 138 and 150 feet, approximately 6.1 miles from the shore off the coast between Long Beach and Huntington Beach). The minimum of 80' reduces exposure to various predator species (i.e. ducks) and potential storm surge, while the upper-end range of approximately 115' provides opportunities to scale operations.

2017 Siting Considerations and Expanded Candidate Area

With high levels of stakeholder engagement, ranging from existing users of the candidate area to prospective grower producers and aquaculture industry experts, the VSE team, with Board concurrence, expanded its site search to include areas in federal waters near Ventura Harbor. Specifically, the expanded candidate area comprises 200,000 acres in both state and federal waters in Blocks 651, 652, 664, 665, 666. To understand this scale, the proposed VSE project represents 2,000 acres or 1% of this 5 block area.

Additionally, the VSE team established criteria on which to evaluate and prioritize each siting alternative. As a result, the VSE team constructed a siting decision matrix to quantify the benefits of each potential siting configuration, and assist the Board in its decision-making process last November. The stakeholder engagement process supported the identification of key factors upon which to assist siting configuration decision making. Each of the criteria was assigned a weight based on perceived relative importance to achieving optimal operational capacity and minimizing potential user conflicts and environmental impacts. Siting alternatives were then scored using a rating system that corresponds to preferences identified by the VSE team. These criteria include:

- Approximate water depth
- Potential adverse water pollution sources
- Potential visual effects from shore
- Potential interaction with commercial and recreational fishing interests
- Subleasing or sub-permitting complexities
- Potential overlap with subsurface leases
- Environmental review complexity
- Contiguous siting
- Distance from Harbor

Quantification of the eight siting configuration alternatives revealed significant advantages for locating the VSE project in federal waters, and specifically for siting as was depicted and described as Alternative 8 in Block 665. Additionally, the VSE analyzed fish catch data for the 5 block area over a 5-year period. In this 200,000 acre area the data showed that the average annual wholesale value from 2012-2016 was approximately \$2.96M.

A siting configuration in Federal waters is similar to any alternative in the original identified candidate area in terms of water column depth and bottom substrate. However, Alternative 8 maintained additional advantages over any alternative in CA state waters because of a reduced

level of interference with commercial fishermen; potential improved water and product quality; relative proximity to Ventura Harbor; resulting minimal visual impacts to the near shore environment; and potential to realize economies of scale. These factors led to the Board's decision on November 15th of last year.

The VSE team projects that use of 2,000 or 1% of that expanded area for the proposed project at full build out and operation could generate \$45M-\$55M in annual wholesale value. Many factors will ultimately determine actual revenue including project size, growing conditions, operational interruptions, time period to full build out, market conditions, project and operational costs, etc. In applying a factor of 50% to these preliminary estimates, the project could still potentially generate \$22.5M - \$27.5M in annual wholesale value.

In identifying the appropriate location in federal waters, the VSE project team also sought to further minimize interaction with existing commercial fisheries. Based upon the workshops and public outreach conducted in 2017, the commercial halibut trawl fishery was identified as the primary commercial fishery potentially affected by the project. To determine the potential impact, the VSE team reviewed actual CDFW trawl data from 2010 through 2016, which provided the location (i.e. latitude and longitude) of where each trawl started and stopped.

- The total trawl length within the Santa Barbara Channel during that time period was 40,480 nautical miles.
- The total trawl length within the Area of Interest was 1,508 nautical miles.
- The total trawl length within CASS Report Alternative 1 was 145 nautical miles.

Therefore, based upon CDFW trawl data, the project will require the existing commercial trawling fishery to relocate approximately 0.4% of their total trawls within the Santa Barbara Channel. It is speculative as to whether this relocation will have a negative or positive impact on the overall catch for the halibut fishery but, given the small amount of existing usage, the impact is considered to be likely negligible.

2018 NOAA CASS Technical Report

As a result of the Board's actions regarding VSE project siting on November 15, 2017, NOAA's NOS prepared a Coastal Aquaculture Siting and Sustainability (CASS) Technical Report - Ventura Shellfish Enterprise: Aquaculture Siting Analysis Results. The report is helpful to District staff in making final recommendations to the Board about project siting, but will also be helpful to inform federal and state regulatory agencies in conducting appropriate environmental review under the National Environmental Policy Act and evaluating permit applications, and other stakeholders and interested parties.

NOS obtained quantitative requirements for the project from the VSE team. These requirements included information regarding preferred project parameters: spatial boundaries of region of interest, preference for state or federal waters, preferred project location coordinates, approximate proposed project size, preferred port, the maximum distance from preferred port, species to be cultivated, acceptable depth range, acceptable seawater temperature range, acceptable current velocity range, maximum allowable wave energy, and additional comments or specifications. These quantitative requirements are contained in the CASS Technical Report and the basis from which a new 20,000 acre Area of Interest (AOI) in federal waters in Blocks 664-665 was developed.

All potential environmental and use factors that could constrain the siting of the VSE project were first plotted and mapped to compare against the identified AOI for the VSE project. These interactions included military, industry, commercial fishing, navigation, and natural resources.

NOS determined that oil and gas, commercial fisheries, navigation, and submarine cables and wrecks and obstructions were all uses that intersected with the AOI. This led to a final suitability assessment, where the northern portion of the AOI was determined to have the highest likelihood of compatibility with the proposed project and avoid/minimize interactions with the other user groups. Based on the results of the suitability analysis, NOS identified two alternative site configurations based on VSE parameters that maximize likelihood of compatibility with existing uses in the region. The primary difference between the two CASS Report Alternative sites is the configuration of the individual 100-acre cultivation areas.

Importantly, the two sites overlap with the federal waters alternative site (SeaSketch Alternative 8) identified in the UCSB Bren School spatial planning analysis and previously approved by the Board (Attachment 5), indicating the area has been shown by two independent studies to have the fewest conflicts with other uses and sensitive environmental resources. The draft permit application to USACE has identified CASS Report Alternative 1 as the preferred project site, given that it has greater operational flexibility, and Alternative 2 as a project alternative.

Seafood Inspection Program (SIP)

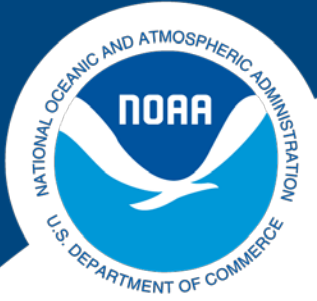
At the inception of the VSE project, there was not a clear pathway for compliance with the National Shellfish Sanitation Program (NSSP) guidelines for shellfish grown in federal waters. However, a pathway for NSSP compliance in federal waters has been adopted through an interim program adopted by the Interstate Shellfish Sanitation Conference and the NSSP to enable harvest and sale of safe and healthy shellfish products in interstate commerce. Through a collaborative and coordinated effort with the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and NOAA's Seafood Inspection Program (SIP) in January 2017, they developed a pathway to implement the interim program for NSSP compliance for molluscan shellfish in federal waters. This pathway for NSSP compliance in federal waters is now being successfully implemented by another offshore mussel aquaculture project in southern California. The compliance pathway covers both pre- and post-harvest elements of the NSSP Model Ordinance and can serve as a template for further adaptation to the VSE project goals and needs. Such adaptations will take into consideration the public-private nature of the VSE enterprise, the participation of multiple grower-producers, its scale and ultimate location, and other factors. VSE team member Coastal Marine Biolabs (CMB) is committed to establishing a centralized, federally approved, Ventura Harbor-based testing facility to meet the testing requirements articulated in the NSSP. This process can be initiated independently of implementing the NSSP compliant interim program for federal waters and concurrently with the permit application process.

FISCAL IMPACT:

Staff has completed the 2015 NOAA Sea Grant and is awaiting formal announcement of two additional grant applications from the Pacific States Marine Fisheries Commission (PSMFC) and 2018 NOAA Sea Grant to help fund the next steps of the entitlement process. Additionally the Board approved \$80,000 in FY18/19 for project related professional services. Staff will return to the Board with any announcements regarding grant applications, related agreements and professional services as necessary.

ATTACHMENTS:

- Attachment 1 – NOAA Coastal Aquaculture Siting and Sustainability (CASS) Technical Report – Ventura Shellfish Enterprise: Aquaculture Siting Analysis Results
- Attachment 2 – CASS Report Alternative 1
- Attachment 3 – CASS Report Alternative 2
- Attachment 4 – Draft USACE Application
- Attachment 5 – SeaSketch Alternative 8



CASS Technical Report

Ventura Shellfish Enterprise: Aquaculture Siting Analysis Results

Seth J. Theuerkauf, Ph.D.¹, Virginia Crothers, M.S.¹, and James A. Morris, Jr., Ph.D.²

¹CSS, Inc. for NOAA NOS/NCCOS, Beaufort, NC

²NOAA NCCOS, Beaufort, NC

INTRODUCTION

Spatial planning for aquaculture operations, wherein spatial data representing key environmental and space use conflicts are synthesized to identify areas with the highest likelihood for compatibility with aquaculture operations, is a critical first step to ensure environmentally and economically sustainable aquaculture industry development. Aquaculture siting analyses involve the use of geospatial analytical tools (e.g., GIS – Geographic Information Systems) to integrate pertinent spatial data and generate map-based products that can be used to inform policy and permitting decisions regarding where aquaculture operations can be located.

The Ventura Shellfish Enterprise (hereafter ‘VSE’) is a multi-party initiative seeking to permit twenty 100-acre plots of ocean space for aquaculture production of the Mediterranean mussel (*Mytilus galloprovincialis*) via submerged long lines in federal waters within the Santa Barbara Channel, proximate to Ventura Harbor, California, USA. The key participants in the VSE, including Coastal Marine Biolabs, The Cultured Abalone Farm, and the Ashworth Leninger Group, have worked with the Ventura Port District to develop a “Strategic Permitting Plan,” with a suite of other resources and project related information and tools that can be found on the VSE website: venturashellfishenterprise.com, or by contacting the VSE Co-Project Managers, Everard Ashworth at EAshworth@alcorp.com or Brian Pendleton at BPendleton@venturaharbor.com.

NOAA’s Coastal Aquaculture Siting and Sustainability (CASS) Program conducted a comprehensive and objective siting analysis for the proposed VSE project, which is the subject of this technical report. This siting analysis utilized the best available, high-resolution spatial data to represent key potential environmental and space use conflicts that constrain the siting of an aquaculture operation within the Santa Barbara Channel region of interest. This siting analysis was guided by quantitative input provided by VSE regarding specific project requirements and was iteratively developed with input provided by the United States Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) Los Angeles District, NOAA (including the National Marine Fisheries Service and the National Ocean Service), the State of California Aquaculture Coordinator, the California Coastal Commission, and the VSE team.

The **Coastal Aquaculture Siting and Sustainability (CASS)** program supports works to provide science-based decision support tools to local, state, and federal coastal managers supporting sustainable aquaculture development. The CASS program is located within the Marine Spatial Ecology Division of the National Centers for Coastal Ocean Science, National Ocean Service, NOAA.

To learn more about CASS and how we are growing sustainable marine aquaculture practices visit <https://coastalscience.noaa.gov/research/marine-spatial-ecology/aquaculture/> or contact Dr. James Morris at James.Morris@noaa.gov.

METHODS

Data Inventory

A comprehensive spatial data inventory was developed for the Santa Barbara Channel region to inform the VSE siting analysis. Specifically, the data inventory included data layers from the following categories: military, industry and recreation, commercial fishing, navigation, natural resources, and oceanographic / biophysical. We conducted an exhaustive search and survey to identify web-based resources and contacts to obtain pertinent data resources. A broad suite of state and federal agencies (e.g., NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service, U.S. Department of Defense, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management, California Department of Fish and Wildlife) and academic institutions (e.g., University of California at Santa Barbara) contributed spatial data. Data was checked for completeness and quality to ensure that the most authoritative source was used. The complete data inventory generated for this siting analysis can be found in Table 1.

Project Requirements

We obtained quantitative requirements for the VSE project directly from the technical coordinator for the VSE team. These requirements included a request for the following items of information regarding preferred project parameters: 1) spatial boundaries of region of interest, 2) preference for state or federal waters, 3) preferred project location coordinates (if available), 4) approximate proposed project size, 5) preferred port, 6) maximum distance from preferred port, 7) species to be cultivated, 8) acceptable depth range, 9) acceptable seawater temperature range, 10) acceptable current velocity range, 11) maximum allowable wave energy, and 12) additional comments or specifications. This information was obtained from the VSE team via a Google Form. All fields were optional.

Spatial Analytical Approach

The spatial analysis for the VSE project was conducted within ArcMap 10.5 (Esri 2016), and is a type of spatial multi-criteria analysis known as suitability analysis. Suitability analyses allow for integration of multiple spatial data layers to identify areas of highest suitability, or areas with the highest likelihood of compatibility. When utilized within an aquaculture spatial planning context, suitability analyses integrate data representing environmental or space-use constraints to identify areas that minimize potential conflicts and have the highest likelihood for compatibility with aquaculture operations. Within a suitability analysis, each individual spatial data layer is re-scaled according to a defined suitability relationship (e.g., locations associated with the highest vessel traffic are assigned a score of '0', locations of lowest vessel traffic are assigned a score of '1'). Each re-scaled spatial data layer can be subsequently assigned a weight (all weights must sum to 100%; higher weights = more important conflict considerations), and all data layers can be integrated within the spatial analysis to identify locations with the highest likelihood for compatibility across all factors considered within the analysis. It is important to note that while weights can be assigned to individual spatial data layers, each layer can also be assigned an equivalent weight such that no individual factor has a greater impact on the final scores and output of the spatial analysis.

Based upon the project requirements criteria defined by VSE, we established a boundary for the 'area of interest' (hereafter 'AOI;' Figure 1). We subsequently established a uniform grid within this boundary with a grid cell size of 10 acres (Figure 2). This grid cell size was selected based on the spatial resolution of the available data and the proposed size of the VSE project. Utilizing the comprehensive data inventory we had previously developed for the Santa Barbara Channel region, we projected each spatial data layer to visualize and assess which layers were contained within the AOI.

Spatial data layers not contained within the AOI were not considered further within the VSE suitability analysis, but were mapped for visualization purposes within this report. Spatial data layers contained within the AOI were subsequently converted onto the previously established grid using a custom Python script. For example, total vessel traffic density was projected onto the established grid wherein each grid cell was assigned a value corresponding to the vessel traffic density for a given cell's location. After projection of each spatial data layer onto the grid, individual grid cell values were re-scaled according to a pre-defined rule (e.g., locations associated with the highest vessel traffic are assigned a score of '0', locations of lowest vessel traffic are assigned a score of '1'). Re-scaling of each spatial data layer was essential to ensure each factor was on a common scale (0 – less compatible, to 1 – more compatible). Within GIS, the overall suitability of each cell (S_j) for siting the VSE aquaculture operation was calculated as:

$$S_j = \sum_{x=1}^n (L_{xj} \cdot W_x)$$

where S_j is the cumulative value of cell j calculated as the product of the suitability score L of cell j and the associated weight W for factor x summed across all factors. It is important to note that within this analysis, all factors were considered to have equivalent weighting. After calculation of overall suitability scores using the function described above, a secondary calculation was conducted to remove (i.e., assign a score of '0') grid cells that received a score of '0' for any individual factor. This second-order calculation was necessary to ensure that grid cells associated with locations of known incompatibility were removed from further consideration. On a scale of 0 to 1, grid cell suitability scores for siting the VSE operation were ranked from highest (most suitable) to lowest (least suitable).

Identification of Alternative Sites

Multiple alternative sites for siting of the proposed VSE project were identified within the overall AOI. The final suitability grid that incorporated all identified constraining factors was used to guide the identification and delineation of two specific alternative locations and configurations for the proposed VSE project. Specifically, the highest scoring grid cells (i.e., most compatible locations across all criteria considered) were used to guide delineation of two alternative locations and configurations of the twenty 100-acre parcels associated with the proposed VSE project. In addition to the proposed project's siting criteria (i.e., within federal waters of a suitable depth for mussel long-line gear, see 'Project Requirements' below) the twenty 100-acre parcels were also configured and delineated so that the long-lines (or the side of the parcel facing shore) run parallel to the shoreline to maximize longshore currents.

Additional Considerations

Certain spatial criteria (e.g., cetacean density and distribution along the California coast), while relevant to understanding the broader regional context and setting of the proposed VSE project, were inappropriate for inclusion within the siting analysis given the coarseness of the resolution of spatial data representing these criteria (e.g., kilometer-scale spatial resolution). Protected cetacean species, for example, are highly mobile and create complex set of spatial and temporal considerations. While we describe these factors and considerations to the greatest extent possible given the best available spatial data to represent them within the 'Discussion' section below, it is important to consult with regional experts regarding these considerations prior to final site selection.

RESULTS

Project Requirements

We received the following project requirements from the VSE team. Note that all fields were optional.

1. <i>Spatial Boundaries of Region of Interest:</i>	Santa Barbara Channel
2. <i>Preference for State or Federal Waters:</i>	Federal Waters
3. <i>Preferred Project Location Coordinates:</i>	empty
4. <i>Approximate Proposed Project Size:</i>	20 x 100-acre plots (2,000 acres total)
5. <i>Preferred Port:</i>	Ventura Harbor
6. <i>Maximum Distance from Preferred Port:</i>	9 nautical miles
7. <i>Species to be Cultivated:</i>	<i>Mytilus galloprovincialis</i>
8. <i>Acceptable Depth Range:</i>	25 – 37 m
9. <i>Acceptable Seawater Temperature Range:</i>	5 – 30 degC, optimal 20 degC
10. <i>Acceptable Current Velocity Range:</i>	0.025 – 0.1 m ^s
11. <i>Maximum Allowable Wave Energy:</i>	(depth range selected due to wave climate)
12. <i>Additional Comments or Specifications:</i>	(communicated through email), longlines are proposed for use for mussel cultivation

Based on the project requirements received from the VSE team, we identified an overall ‘area of interest’ (AOI) for the VSE project of ~20,000 acres within 9 nm of the Port of Ventura within federal waters between 25 and 37 m depth (Figure 1). A grid containing ~2,000 10-acre grid cells was established within the AOI (Figure 2).

Spatial Analysis Development

All potential environmental and space use factors that could constrain the siting of the VSE project for which an authoritative spatial data source was identified for (Table 1) were first plotted and mapped to compare against the identified AOI for the VSE project.

Military Interactions – No interactions were identified between the AOI and existing military space uses, inclusive of the Point Mugu Sea Range and existing danger zones and restricted areas (Figure 3).

Industry Interactions – An interaction was identified between the AOI and active oil and gas leases, drilling platforms, pipelines, and submarine cables (Figure 4). Active oil and gas leases intersect the central and southern portions of the AOI; oil and gas pipelines and submarine cables intersect the central and southernmost portion of the AOI; a single drilling platform is located in the southern portion of the AOI. However, no interaction was identified between the AOI and ocean disposal sites.

Commercial Fishing Interactions – Commercial fishing, including trawl and squid fisheries, interactions were identified with the AOI (Figure 5); these interactions were further examined at the regional scale for trawl fisheries (Figure 6) and the squid fishery (Figure 7). Trawl fishery interactions occur throughout the AOI (Figure 6) and were examined in more detail in the subsequent suitability analysis. Squid fishery interactions are more prevalent in the southern and central portions of the AOI, with some identified interactions in the northernmost portion of the AOI (Figure 7).

Navigation Interactions – Navigation space use interactions were identified within the AOI, including vessel traffic and wrecks and obstructions interactions (Figure 8). Aids to navigation, artificial reefs, maintained channels and designated shipping lanes do not intersect the AOI. Vessel

traffic (based on total vessel count for 2013, determined to be representative of modern vessel traffic for the region) is most significant in the central and southern portions of the AOI. Wrecks and obstructions are present in the southern portion of the AOI.

Natural Resource Interactions – Multiple levels of natural resource interactions for which authoritative spatial data was available were examined. Cetacean distribution and density data was examined, but the coarse spatial resolution of these data precluded their ability to be incorporated (Figure 9). Hardbottom habitat and deep-sea coral distribution does not interact with the AOI, but does occur within its proximity (Figure 10).

Interactions Incorporated within the Spatial Analysis – Based on examination of the broad suite of potential interactions for which authoritative spatial data were available to represent, we were able to identify which factors do not intersect the AOI and thus were not incorporated within the spatial analysis (Figure 11), and those factors that do intersect the AOI and thus were incorporated (Figure 12). Specific interactions that were subsequently incorporated within the spatial analysis included the following: 1) oil and gas, 2) commercial fisheries, 3) navigation, and 4) submarine cables and wrecks and obstructions.

Spatial Analysis Output and Identification of Alternative Sites

Oil and Gas Suitability – The following rules were applied to develop the oil and gas suitability grid: a score of ‘0’ was assigned to grid cells intersecting oil and gas drilling platforms and pipelines (including areas within a 500-m radius of these features), a score of ‘0.5’ was assigned to grid cells intersecting the active lease area due to the increased coordination required to site and manage the proposed project within the active lease area, and a score of ‘1’ was assigned to grid cells outside of leases and not intersecting oil and gas platforms or pipelines. This restricted the most suitable locations based on oil and gas interactions to the northernmost and central-eastern portions of the AOI (Figure 13).

Commercial Fishing Suitability: Trawl Fishery – Compatibility with trawl fisheries was determined by assigning a relative rank from low-to-high (scores ranging from ‘0’ to ‘1’) to grid cells with low-to-high densities of trawl tracks. Trawl track densities for each grid cell were calculated by summing the total number of trawl track lines that passed through a given grid cell. The highest suitability was identified in western and central portions of the AOI, while lower suitability was identified in the northeastern and southern portions of the AOI where higher levels of interaction with the trawl fishery occur (Figure 14).

Commercial Fishing Suitability: Squid Fishery – Compatibility with the squid fishery was determined by assigning a relative rank from low-to-high (‘0’ to ‘1’) to grid cells corresponding with low-to-high total squid landings by California Department of Fish and Wildlife reporting microblock. The highest suitability was identified in the western and central portions of the AOI, while lower suitability scores were identified in the southern and northernmost portions of the AOI (Figure 15).

Vessel Traffic Suitability – A relative rank from low-to-high (‘0’ to ‘1’) was assigned to grid cells based on level (low-to-high) of interaction with vessel traffic (i.e., total vessel density for 2013 based on automatic identification system, ‘AIS,’ vessel density data for cargo, tanker, fishing, passenger and pleasure/sailing vessels). The highest suitability was identified in the northern portions of the AOI, while lower suitability scores were identified in the central portion of the AOI, and the lowest suitability scores were identified in the central and southernmost portions of the AOI (Figure 16).

Submerged Cables and Wrecks and Obstructions Suitability – The following rule was applied to develop the submerged cables and wrecks and obstructions suitability grid: a score of ‘0’ was assigned to grid cells intersecting submarine cables or wrecks and obstructions and the areas within 500 m of these features, a score of ‘1’ was assigned to all other grid cells outside of these areas. Application of this rule yielded identified areas of incompatibility in the central and southern portions of the AOI.

Final Suitability Results – The final suitability grid incorporated all major identified interactions to identify locations (grid cells) with the highest likelihood of compatibility. All identified interactions were considered with equal weighting within the analysis. Specifically, the following weights were assigned to individual suitability grids to calculate the final suitability grid: 1) oil and gas suitability – 33%, 2) commercial fishing suitability – 33% (16.5% for trawl fishery and squid fishery, each), 3) vessel traffic suitability – 33%. As the submerged cables and wrecks and obstructions grid included scores of only ‘0’ and ‘1,’ this grid was not weighted, but was included in the analysis as a binary factor. As described within the ‘Methods’ section above, if a given grid cell was assigned a score of ‘0’ for any individual factor, it was assigned a score of ‘0’ in the overall final suitability grid.

Based on the outcome of the final suitability calculation, the areas of highest identified suitability occur in the northern portion of the AOI (i.e., scores > 0.66; Figure 18). Areas in the southern and central portion of the AOI were generally identified as less suitable. The maximum observed suitability score for any given grid cell within the AOI was 0.90, meaning that all grid cells interacted with one or more factors within the suitability analysis.

Identified Alternative Sites – The proposed alternative site configurations for the twenty 100 acre plots (2000 acres total) were developed based on two farm configurations proposed by VSE, and were located within the areas corresponding with the highest observed suitability. Importantly, these alternative configurations do not change the amount of total area, gear, or the number of mussel long-lines included within each of the proposed farm parcels, but rather dictate how the long-lines would be arranged into rows within the parcels.

The first configuration considered (Alternative #1, Figure 19) was based on the initial configuration proposed by the VSE project team. This configuration includes 20 farm parcels of a 1,900’ by 2,300’ size that are configured and clustered based on optimized suitability scores from this analysis. The 20 parcels are divided across 2 blocks of 10 parcels each with a 600-ft wide navigational corridor between the blocks of parcels. This configuration allows for two long lines across each row and 12 rows (24 long lines total) per parcel, with 150’ spacing between each row. The average suitability score within the 2,000 acres that this configuration covers was 0.813.

The second configuration considered (Alternative #2, Figure 20) was based on the alternative configuration proposed by the VSE project team. This configuration includes 20 farm parcels of a 1,175’ by 3,707’ size that are configured and clustered based on optimized suitability scores from this analysis. The 20 parcels are condensed within a single block with no navigational corridor needed. No navigational corridor is needed because this configuration allows for only two rows of parcels, where every parcel has vessel access along the perimeter of the site. This configuration allows for one longline across each row, with 24 rows per farm parcel (24 long lines total) and 150’ spacing between each row. The average suitability score within the 2,000 acres that this configuration covers was 0.809.

The corner coordinates associated with each alternative are depicted in map and table form in Appendices 1-4.

Caveats – The suitability analysis described here for the proposed VSE project incorporated the best available, authoritative spatial data as of August 2018 to represent major potential interactions based on a thorough review of available resources (Table 1). While all efforts were made to incorporate the best available data, it is important to recognize that for some interactions (e.g., protected species), spatial data is unavailable or exists at an inappropriate scale for consideration within this analysis.

DISCUSSION

The siting analysis described here represents an objective, data-driven approach to identify the locations with the highest likelihood for compatibility with the proposed Ventura Shellfish Enterprise (VSE) project. Through mapping available modern, authoritative spatial data associated with major identified environmental and space use interactions, this siting analysis provides essential information needed to inform the permitting decision-making process for the proposed VSE project. The results of this siting analysis indicate that the northern portion of the area of interest (AOI) has the highest likelihood of compatibility given equal consideration of existing space use conflicts (Figures 18-20). We identify and describe two alternative configurations within the northern portion of the area of interest with the highest likelihood for compatibility given the various interactions considered within this analysis.

Across all identified space use conflicts that were incorporated within the siting analysis, the northern portion of the AOI has the highest likelihood of compatibility with the proposed project (Figures 18-20). Oil and gas, vessel traffic, and submarine cables and wrecks and obstructions interactions are minimized or non-existent within the northern portion of the AOI (Figures 13, 16, and 17). Commercial fishing interactions are present within the northern portion of the AOI, with increased trawl fishing interactions in the northwestern portion of the AOI in the areas nearest to the state-federal waters boundary (Figure 14) and some interactions with the squid fishery in the northernmost portion of the AOI (Figure 15). Importantly, as evident in the final suitability grid, the location (grid cells) with the highest likelihood for compatibility that minimize these interactions are located in the northwestern portion of the AOI (Figure 18). Despite minimization of potential interactions, the highest possible score in the final suitability grid was 0.90, indicating that even the grid cell locations with the highest likelihood for compatibility had some level of interaction with at least one factor.

Locations within the central portion of the AOI have more substantial interactions with oil and gas (Figure 13), vessel traffic (Figure 16) and submerged cables and wrecks and obstructions (Figure 17). Within the southern portion of the AOI, interactions exist with oil and gas, vessel traffic, submerged cables and wrecks and obstructions, and both the trawl and squid fisheries (Figures 14 and 15). Importantly also, the southern portion of the AOI also borders closely to the designated shipping lane and known areas of hardbottom habitat and deep-sea corals (Figure 11).

As shown in Figure 6, the northern portion of the AOI does interact with areas of known trawl fishery activity. Importantly, the known area of highest trawl fishery intensity occurs in the portion of the Santa Barbara Channel to the northwest of the AOI. For the squid fishery, the southern portion of the AOI, and areas further south of the AOI, represent the most substantial intensity and volume of landings. It is important to note that while these data represent the best available, authoritative data to represent these fisheries, there remains a need for discussion with commercial fishery stakeholders regarding spatial compatibility.

Based on the results of the suitability analysis, we identified two alternative configurations for the proposed VSE project that maximize likelihood of compatibility with existing space uses in the region. The first alternative (Figure 19) and second alternative (Figure 20) do not differ substantively in

average suitability score (0.813 and 0.809, respectively). Within the first alternative, the configuration of the farm parcels requires a navigational corridor (600 feet) to allow access to the center farm parcels. The configuration of the farm parcels within the second alternative is such that a navigational corridor is not required to access the individual parcels. In developing the alternative sites, contiguous sites and those with a more uniform shape were preferred over other dispersed alternatives. During the process of obtaining criteria from the VSE project team, it was expressed that in previous stakeholder engagements, a preference was indicated by local fishermen and other ocean users for a design that was clustered to minimize navigational challenges.

Additional Considerations

This siting analysis serves as an authoritative resource to inform the permitting decision-making process regarding where the proposed VSE project is most likely to be compatible from an environmental and space-use perspective. However, additional factors should be the subject of consideration during the permitting decision-making process that are beyond the scope of this siting analysis, including consideration of potential protected species entanglement risks, carrying capacity limitations, and farm design specifications. Below, we provide additional detail regarding engagements with state and federal government agencies to obtain the best available data for protected species for this siting analysis.

Regarding carrying capacity limitations, the environmental conditions corresponding with the proposed VSE project's AOI generally appear favorable for the species and gear combination proposed. The annual average surface current velocity in relation to the AOI is generally within the optimal range for blue mussels of 0.025 and 0.10 m/s (Appendix 1)¹. Sufficient current velocity is essential to ensure adequate food (i.e., naturally occurring phytoplankton) delivery to the cultivated species (i.e., Mediterranean mussels), and also to ensure adequate dispersal of waste products. With regards to chlorophyll *a*, which is a proxy for the availability of naturally occurring phytoplankton, the optimal range for chlorophyll *a* for blue mussels of 0.5 – 40 µg/l corresponds with the annual average chlorophyll *a* concentration for the AOI (Appendix 2)². The mean water temperature in the area immediately adjacent to the proposed project AOI is within the acceptable water temperature range of 3 – 29 degrees Celsius, and remains near the optimal water temperature of 20 degrees Celsius for nearly half of the year (Appendix 3)^{3,4,5}. Carrying capacity considerations are likely to be most dependent upon the final farm design selected rather than environmental limitations. Furthermore, farm design considerations are critical to minimize entanglement risks to cetaceans and sea turtles. A recent review of documented cases of marine animal entanglements in mussel aquaculture gear identified mussel spat collection ropes as yielding the greatest risk of entanglement.⁶ Careful attention must be paid to ensure the farm design, gear, and associated activities minimize the risk of protected species entanglement.

¹ Longdill, P.C., Healy, T.R., and Black, K.P. 2008. An integrated GIS approach for sustainable aquaculture management area site selection. *Ocean and Coastal Management* 51, 612-624.

² Sara, G., Manganaro, A., Cortese, G., Pusceddu, A., and Mazzola, A. 1998. The relationship between food availability and growth in *Mytilus galloprovincialis* in the open sea (southern Mediterranean). *Aquaculture* 167, 1-15.

³ Widdows, J. 2009. Combined effects of body size, food concentration and season on the physiology of *Mytilus edulis*. *Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom* 58, 109-124.

⁴ Newell, R.I.E. 1989. Species profiles: life histories and environmental requirements of coastal fishes and invertebrates (North-Mid Atlantic): Blue Mussel. *U.S. Army Corps of Engineers report TR EI-82-4*.

⁵ Almada-Villela, P.C., Davenport, J., and Gruffydd, L.D. 1982. The effects of temperature on the shell growth of young *Mytilus edulis*. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 59, 275-288.

⁶ Young, M.O. 2015. Marine animal entanglements in mussel aquaculture gear: Documented cases from mussel farming regions of the world including first-hand accounts from Iceland. *M.S. Thesis, University of Akureyri*.

The best available data to represent potential protected species interactions with the proposed VSE project were obtained from state and federal government agencies. Regarding pinniped species, spatial data from the NOAA Southwest Fisheries Science Center (Mark Lowry) were unavailable to represent California sea lions and Pacific harbor seals as ongoing observation efforts are land-based.

Loggerhead sea turtle aerial survey and satellite telemetry data were cross-referenced with the proposed project's AOI, and no sightings or tracks as recorded by NOAA's National Marine Fisheries Service (Jeffrey Seminoff and Tomo Eguchi) intersected the area. In both cases, with regards to pinnipeds and sea turtles (including monitored loggerhead, as well as green turtles and leatherbacks that are not monitored), it was acknowledged that the lack of data representing interactions does not preclude the potential for the proposed project's AOI to interact with these protected species.

Habitat-based predicted density and distribution models for multiple cetacean species for the California coast, including: beaked whales (multiple species), blue whales, dolphins (multiple species), Dall's porpoise, fin whales, humpback whales, and sperm whales was obtained from NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service (Pers. Comm., Karin Forney and Elizabeth Becker). Cetacean species with the highest likelihood for potential interaction with the proposed VSE project based on this data include: blue whales and bottlenose dolphins (Appendix 8), long-beaked common dolphins (Appendix 9), and Risso's and short-beaked common dolphins (Appendix 10). There is a lower likelihood for potential interaction with Baird's beaked whales and beaked whales (Appendix 8), Dall's porpoises and humpback whales (Appendix 9), northern right whale dolphins and Pacific white sided dolphins (Appendix 10), and sperm whales and striped dolphins (Appendix 11). It is important to note that these data represent predicted distribution of these species and do not preclude the potential for interaction with any species.

TABLES

Table 1. Data layers integrated within the comprehensive data inventory developed for the Santa Barbara Channel region to inform the siting analysis for the proposed Ventura Shellfish Enterprise (VSE) project.

Data Layer:	Description:	Source:
<i>Military</i>		
Danger Zones and Restricted Areas	These data represent the location of Danger Zones and Restricted Areas within coastal and marine waters, as outlined by the Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) and the Raster Navigational Charts (RNC). The CFR defines a Danger Zone as: "A defined water area (or areas) used for target practice, bombing, rocket firing or other especially hazardous operations, normally for the armed forces. The danger zones may be closed to the public on a full-time or intermittent basis, as stated in the regulations."	Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) and the Raster Navigational Charts (RNC)
Unexploded Ordnances	Unexploded ordnances are explosive weapons (bombs, bullets, shells, grenades, mines, etc.) that did not explode when they were employed and still pose a risk of detonation, potentially many decades after they were used or discarded. Sea disposal of munitions was an accepted international practice until 1970, when the Department of Defense prohibited the practice, and Congress followed up by passing the Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act in 1972, generally banning sea disposal.	NOAA Office of Coast Survey (OCS)
Point Mugu Sea Range	Point Mugu Sea Range is the world's largest instrumented over-water range encompassing up to 220,000 square miles of ocean space. It provides extensive test and training capabilities for the U.S. Navy and allied forces and is located adjacent to the Santa Barbara Channel.	U.S. Navy
San Pedro Channel Operating Area	Offshore military operating area within the San Pedro Channel for the U.S. Navy and allied forces.	U.S. Navy
<i>Industry and Recreation</i>		
Oil and Gas Drilling Platforms, Pipelines and Active Leases	Infrastructure for oil and gas offshore activities including drilling platforms for extracting minerals, particularly oil and gas, pipelines for transporting to onshore facilities, and the active leases, which include a portion of the Outer Continental Shelf (OCS) Lease Blocks that are currently leased to private entities for oil and/or gas mining rights. Importantly, active leases include those that are exploratory, non-producing, and producing.	Bureau of Ocean Energy Management (BOEM)
NOAA Charted Submarine Cables	These data depict the occurrence of submarine cables in and around U.S. navigable waters.	NOAA Office of Coast Survey (OCS)

Data Layer:	Description:	Source:
Ocean Disposal Sites	Ocean disposal sites, including both active and discontinued or historical sites. Nearly all material ocean dumped today is dredged material (sediments) removed from the bottom of waterbodies in order to maintain navigation channels and berthing areas.	NOAA Office of Coast Survey (OCS)
Wind and Marine Hydrokinetic Planning Areas	Planning areas for renewable energy, such as wind and marine hydrokinetic (MHK) development, as defined by the U.S. Bureau of Ocean Energy Management (BOEM).	Bureau of Ocean Energy Management (BOEM)
Marine Minerals and Sand Resource Blocks	This layer contains Outer Continental Shelf (OCS) block outlines and delineated polygons containing sediment resources and areas of disposal.	Bureau of Ocean Energy Management (BOEM)
Administrative Kelp Beds	Kelp beds open to state-managed commercial harvest within the state waters of California.	California Department of Fish and Wildlife
Existing Aquaculture Areas	The presence and location of aquaculture sites were derived from multiple state websites and include only those in coastal and marine saltwater areas. The following states are included in this layer: Alaska, California, Connecticut, Florida, Louisiana, Maine, New York, North Carolina, Rhode Island, and Virginia.	NOAA Office for Coastal Management (OCM) & other state and federal agencies
<i>Commercial Fishing</i>		
Trawl Fishery Track Lines	Logbook-derived state-managed trawl fishery track lines; inclusive of all state-managed trawl fisheries between 2010 and 2016 (connected line between start and stop location for trawls).	California Department of Fish and Wildlife
Squid Landings by Micro-Block	Total squid landings (in short tonnes) by microblock (~700 acres) for the period of 2012-2017.	California Department of Fish and Wildlife
Fishery Landings Receipt Data by Block	Total landings by fishery landings block, inclusive of multiple (20+) commercial fisheries species (e.g., halibut, spiny lobster, squid, etc.).	California Department of Fish and Wildlife
<i>Navigation</i>		
Principal Ports	Principal Ports are defined by port limits or US Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) projects, these exclude non-USACE projects not authorized for publication. The determination for the published Principal Ports is based upon the total tonnage for the port for the particular year; therefore the top 150 list can vary from year to year.	U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE)
Shallow Draft Ports	National database of shallow draft ports, or ports accessible by small commercial and/or recreational vessels.	U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE)
Aids to Navigation	Structures intended to assist a navigator to determine position or safe course, or to warn of dangers or obstructions to navigation. This dataset includes lights, signals, buoys, day beacons, and other aids to navigation.	U.S. Coast Guard
Environmental Sensors and Buoys	Buoys or structures, often near the surface of the water column, intended to collect water quality or other environmental data.	NOAA National Data Buoy Center

Data Layer:	Description:	Source:
Artificial Reefs	An artificial reef is a human-made underwater structure, typically built to promote marine life in areas with a generally featureless bottom.	NOAA Office for Coastal Management (OCM) & other state and federal agencies
Wrecks and Obstructions	In 1981, NOAA's National Ocean Service (NOS) implemented the Automated Wreck and Obstruction Information System (AWOIS) to assist in planning hydrographic survey operations and to catalog and store a substantial volume of reported wrecks and obstructions that are considered navigational hazards within U.S. coastal waters. AWOIS is not a comprehensive record of wrecks in any particular area.	NOAA Office of Coast Survey (OCS)
Maintained Channels	This layer shows coastal channels and waterways that are maintained and surveyed by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE).	U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE)
Shipping Lanes	Shipping zones delineate activities and regulations for marine vessel traffic. Traffic lanes define specific traffic flow, while traffic separation zones assist opposing streams of marine traffic.	NOAA Office of Coast Survey (OCS)
AIS Vessel Count (including total count and by vessel type)	Automatic Identification Systems (AIS) are a navigation safety device that transmits and monitors the location and characteristics of many vessels in U.S. and international waters in real-time. This dataset represents vessel counts by vessel type for 2013. Vessel count raster data layers were created by CASS Spatial team and are derived from vessel density raster data layers generated from raw AIS data.	Bureau of Ocean Energy Management (BOEM)
Anchorage Areas	An anchorage area is a place where boats and ships can safely drop anchor.	NOAA Office of Coast Survey (OCS)
<i>Natural Resources</i>		
Deep-Sea Corals	The National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) Deep Sea Coral Research and Technology Program (DSCRTP) have developed a National Database for Deep-Sea Corals and Sponges (database).	NOAA National Centers for Coastal Ocean Science (NCCOS)
Hardbottom Habitat	Distribution of known hardbottom habitat within the Santa Barbara Channel region. Hardbottom habitat generally occurs in the ocean where rocks or other hard surfaces are exposed from bottom sand or mud; this structure can serve as habitat for fish and invertebrate species.	California Geological Survey and Moss Landing Marine Lab / UC Santa Barbara
Cetacean Predicted Density and Distribution	Habitat-based predicted density and distribution models for multiple cetacean species, including: beaked whales (multiple species), blue whales, dolphins (multiple species), Dall's porpoise, fin whales, humpback whales, and sperm whales.	NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service

Data Layer:	Description:	Source:
Seagrass	Aquatic vascular vegetation beds dominated by submerged, rooted, vascular species or submerged or rooted floating freshwater tidal vascular vegetation. This is not a complete collection of seagrasses on the seafloor, nor are the locations to be considered exact.	NOAA Office for Coastal Management (OCM) & other state and federal agencies
Essential Fish Habitat / Habitat Areas of Particular Concern	Essential Fish Habitat (EFH) represent important habitat areas for every life stage of federally managed species. Habitat Areas of Particular Concern (HAPC) are discrete subsets of Essential Fish Habitat (EFH) that provide extremely important ecological functions or are especially vulnerable to degradation.	NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS)
Marine Protected Areas	The MPA Inventory is a comprehensive catalog that provides detailed information for existing marine protected areas in the United States.	NOAA National MPA Center
<i>Oceanographic and Biophysical</i>		
Bathymetry (water depth)	High-resolution bathymetry data was obtained from NOAA's National Geophysical Data Center (NGDC). This bathymetric data is a composite of various sources, including NGDC, U.S. National Ocean Service (NOS), U.S. Geological Survey (USGS), the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA), and other federal, state, and local government agencies, academic institutions, and private companies. DEMs are referenced to the vertical tidal datum of Mean High Water (MHW) and horizontal datum of World Geodetic System 1984 (WGS84).	NOAA National Geophysical Data Center (NGDC)
Water Temperature	MODIS Global Level 3 Mapped SST (via MGET) mean/min/max climatologies for 20 year period 1997 – 2016.	NASA MODIS Aqua
Current Velocity and Direction	Surface current velocity and direction data from HYCOM + NCODA Global 1/12 Degree Reanalysis, experiments 19.1 (1995-2012). Directional data are represented by U and V vector data.	HYCOM
Salinity	Salinity data from HYCOM + NCODA Global 1/12 Degree Reanalysis, experiments 19.1 (1995-2012).	HYCOM
Significant Wave Height	Significant wave height (SWH or H_s) is defined traditionally as the mean wave height (trough to crest) of the highest third of waves ($H_{1/3}$).	AVISO
Chlorophyll <i>a</i>	NASA GSFC OceanColor L3 SMI (via MGET) mean/std dev climatologies for 10 yr period 2007 – 2016.	NASA OceanColor
<i>Administrative Boundaries</i>		
Federal / State Waters Boundary	The Submerged Lands Act (SLA) boundary line (also known as State Seaward Boundary or Fed State Boundary) defines the seaward limit of a state's submerged lands and the landward boundary of federally managed OCS lands.	Bureau of Ocean Energy Management (BOEM)

Data Layer:	Description:	Source:
Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary Boundary	Boundary for the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary.	NOAA Office of National Marine Sanctuaries (NMS)

FIGURES

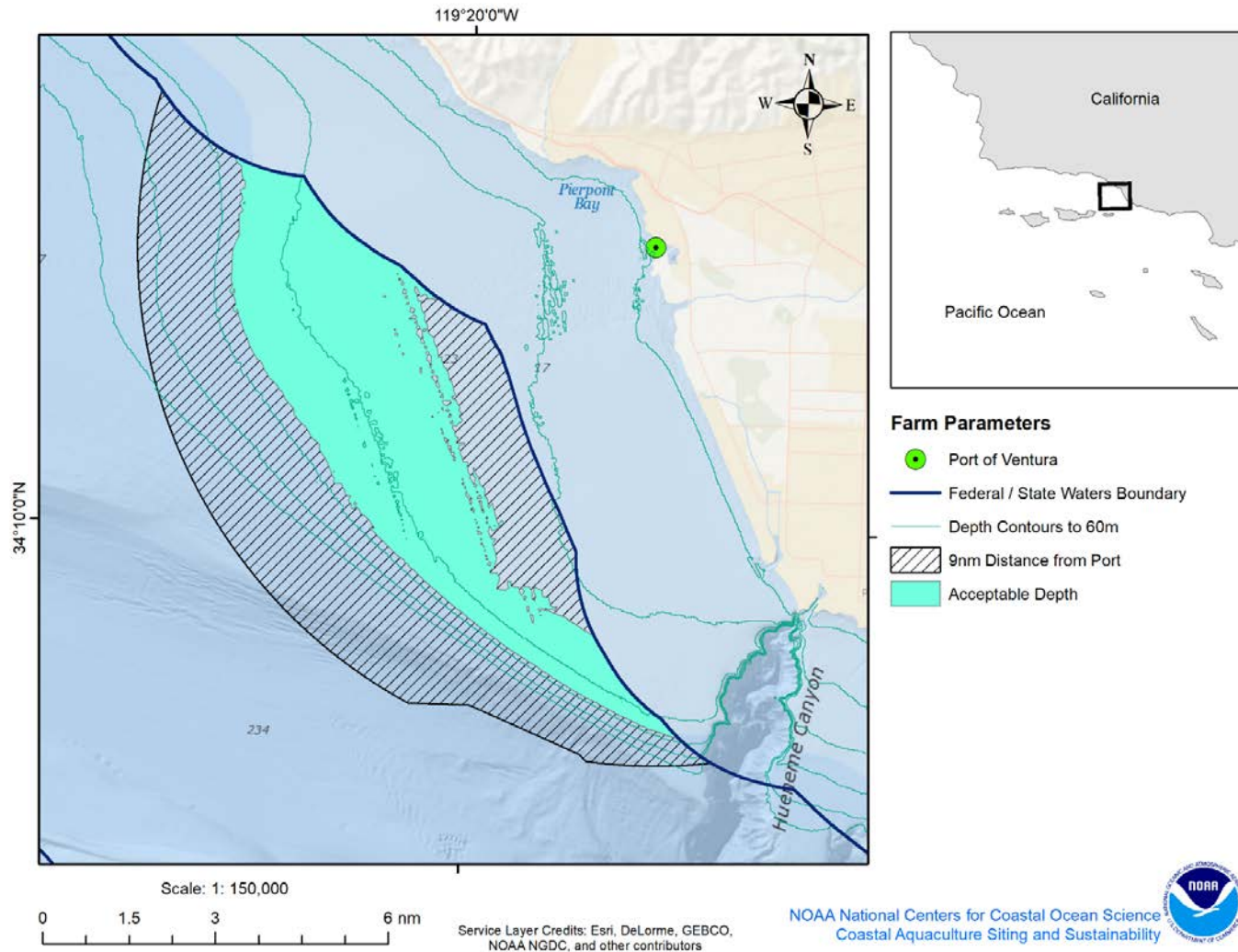


Figure 1. Map of the ‘area of interest’ for the proposed Ventura Shellfish Enterprise (VSE) project based on project requirements provided by VSE. The primary constraining criteria defined by VSE included: 1) federal waters only, 2) maximum 9 nautical mile distance from the Port of Ventura, and 3) a required depth range of 25 – 37 meters for the proposed Mediterranean mussel (*Mytilus galloprovincialis*) cultivation gear. The defined ‘area of interest’ is represented by the light green polygon denoted as ‘Acceptable Depth’ in the map legend. Note that the VSE project is seeking 2,000 acres within the ~20,000 acres within the overall ‘area of interest’.

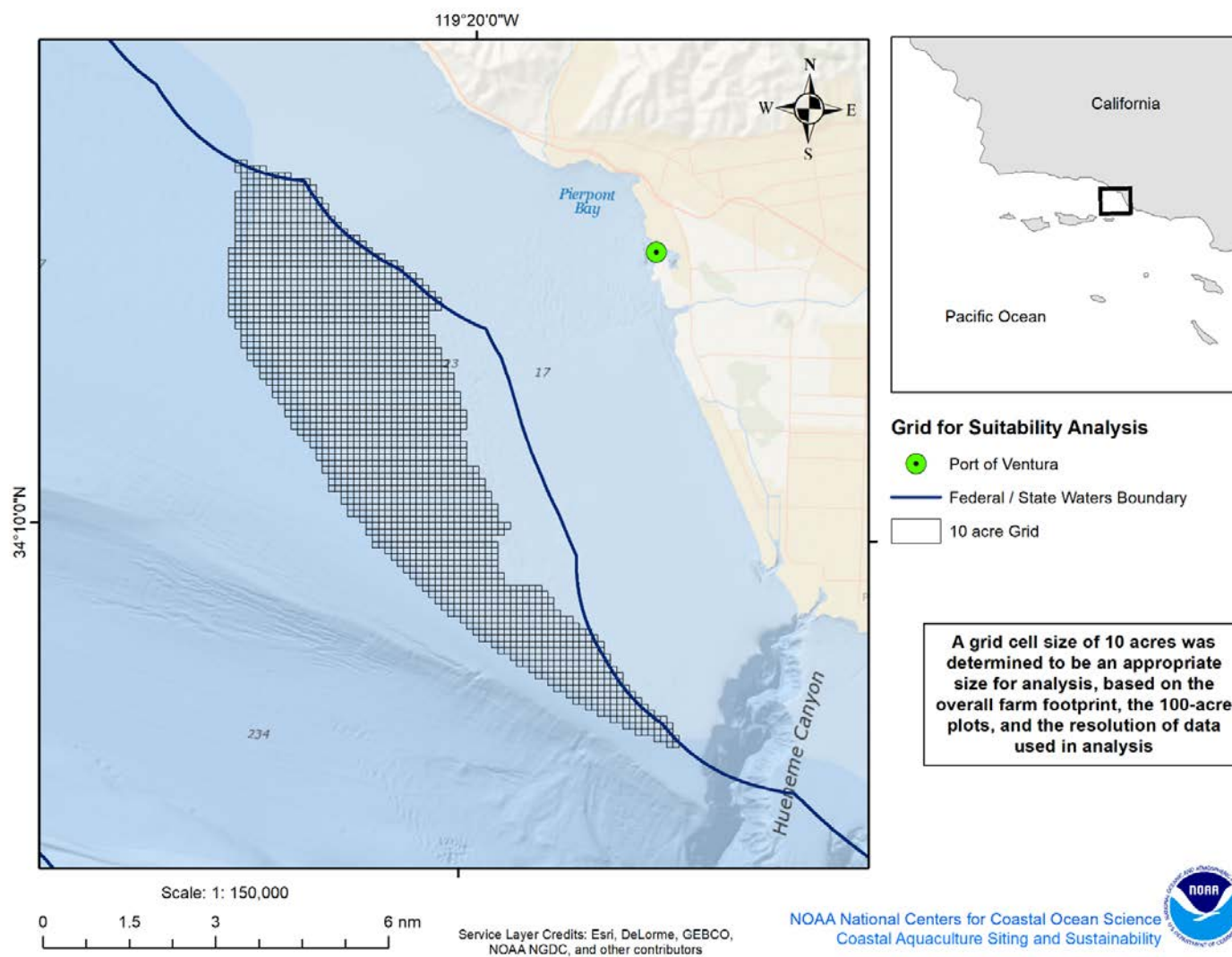


Figure 2. Grid established within the proposed Ventura Shellfish Enterprise (VSE) ‘area of interest’ for use in the siting analysis. A grid cell size of 10 acres was determined to be appropriate for use in the spatial analysis. The grid contains 1,953 grid cells, equivalent to 19,530 acres total. Note that the VSE project is seeking 2,000 acres within the ~20,000 acres within the overall ‘area of interest’ described by the grid.

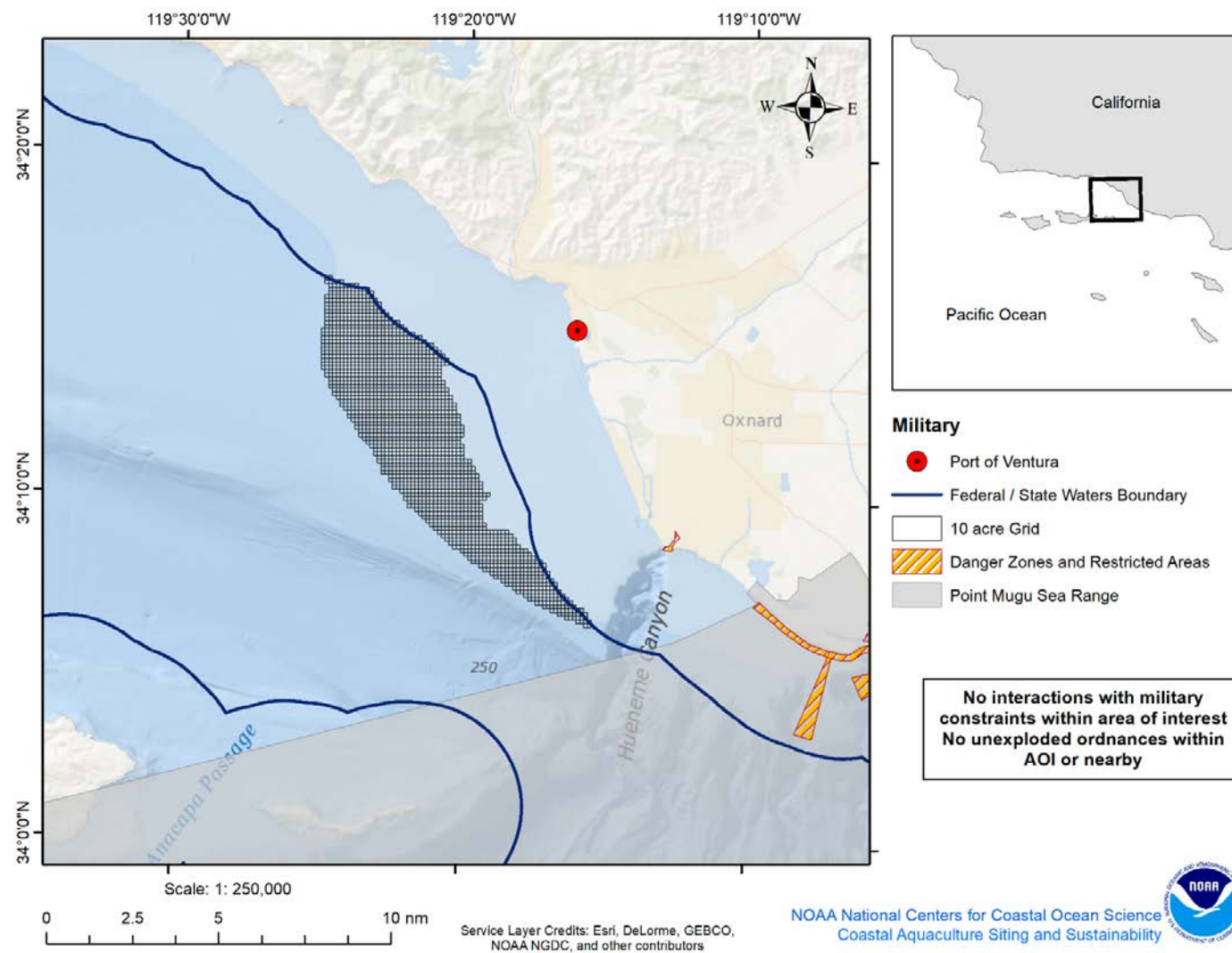


Figure 3. Military space use within the Santa Barbara Channel region in relation to the Ventura Shellfish Enterprise (VSE) ‘area of interest’. No military interactions occur within the ‘area of interest’.

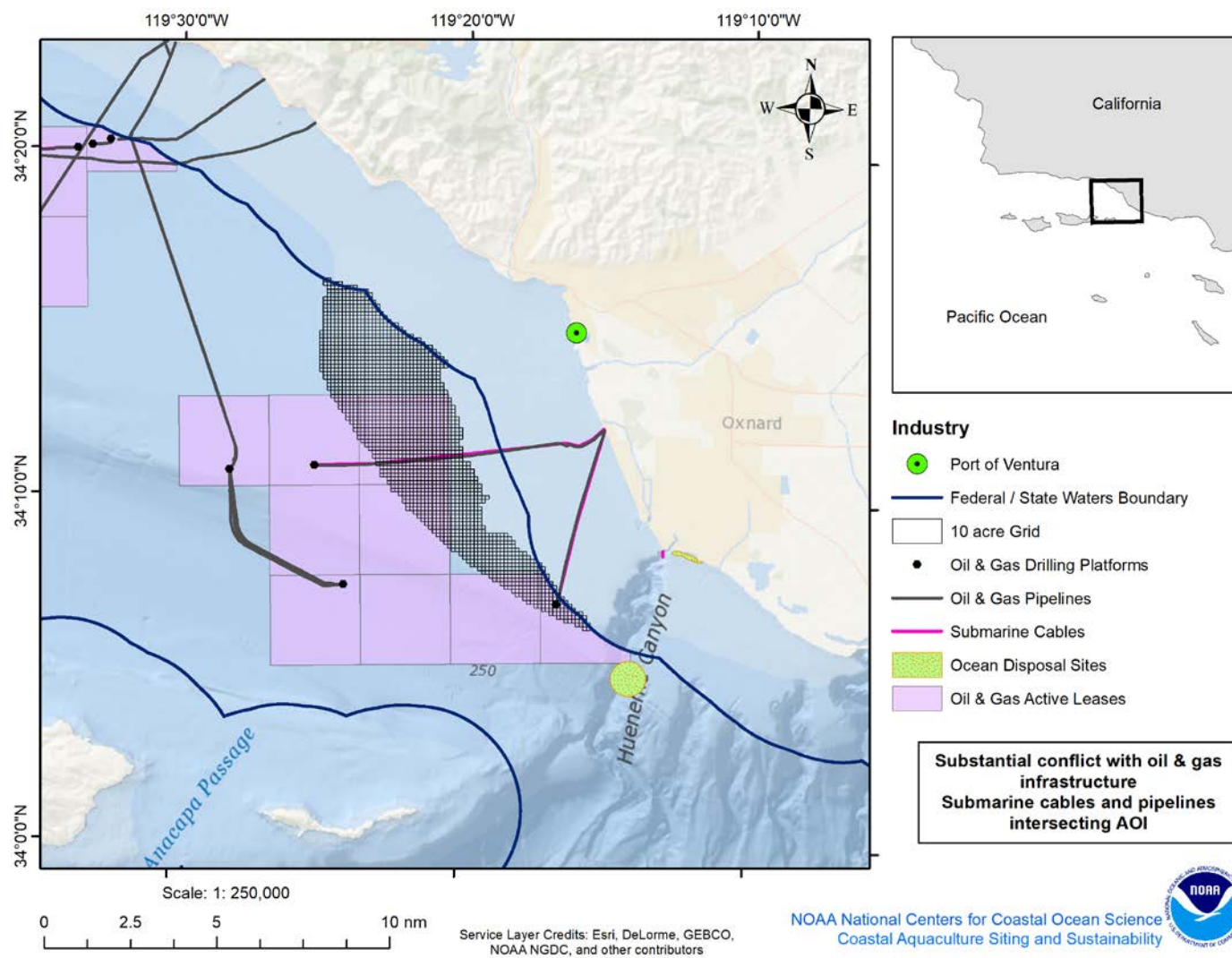


Figure 4. Industry space use within the Santa Barbara Channel region in relation to the Ventura Shellfish Enterprise (VSE) ‘area of interest’. Oil and gas infrastructure (active leases, drilling platforms, and pipelines) and submarine cables interactions occur within the ‘area of interest’.

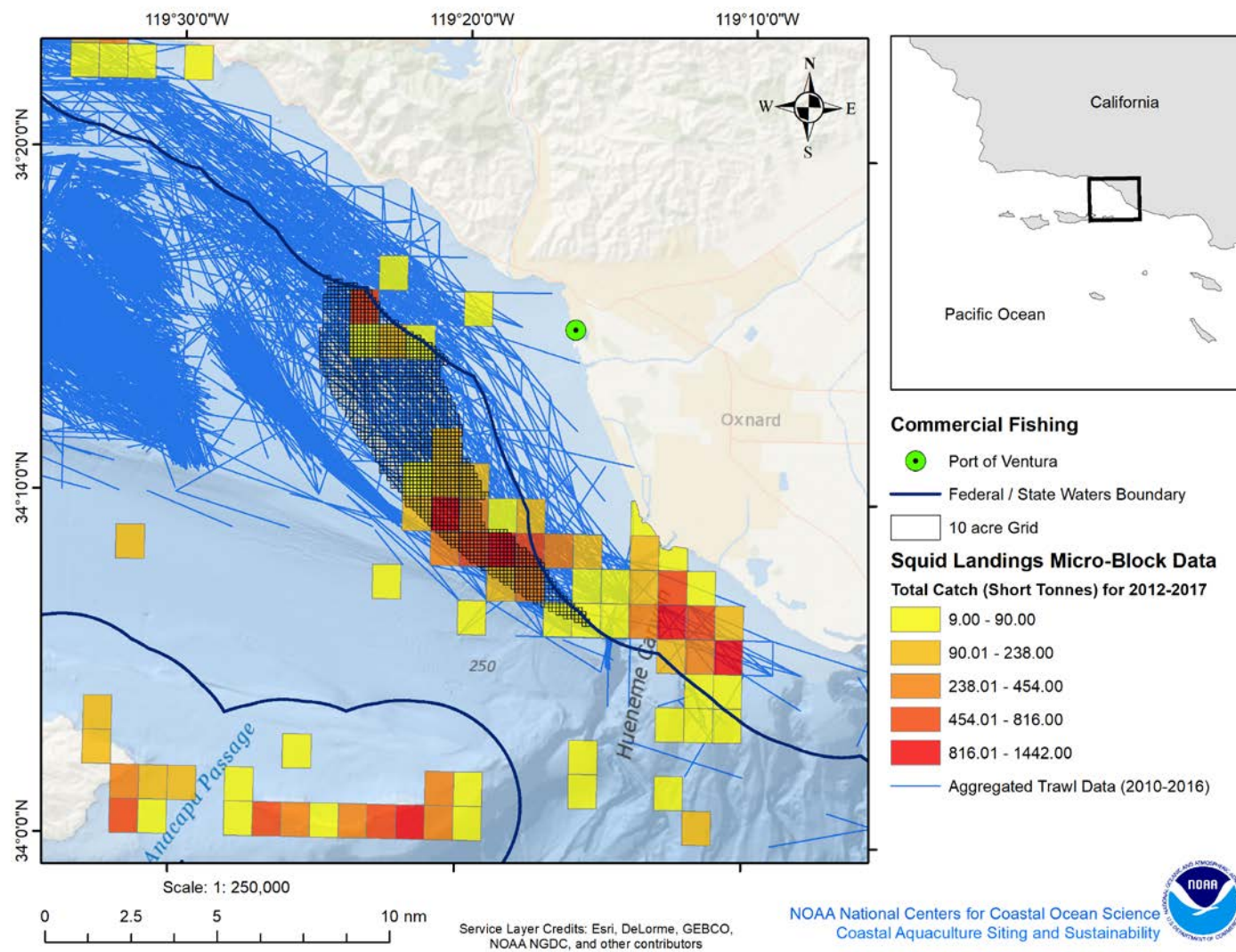


Figure 5. Commercial fishery space use within the Santa Barbara Channel region in relation to the Ventura Shellfish Enterprise (VSE) ‘area of interest’. Commercial trawl and squid fishery interactions occur within the ‘area of interest’.

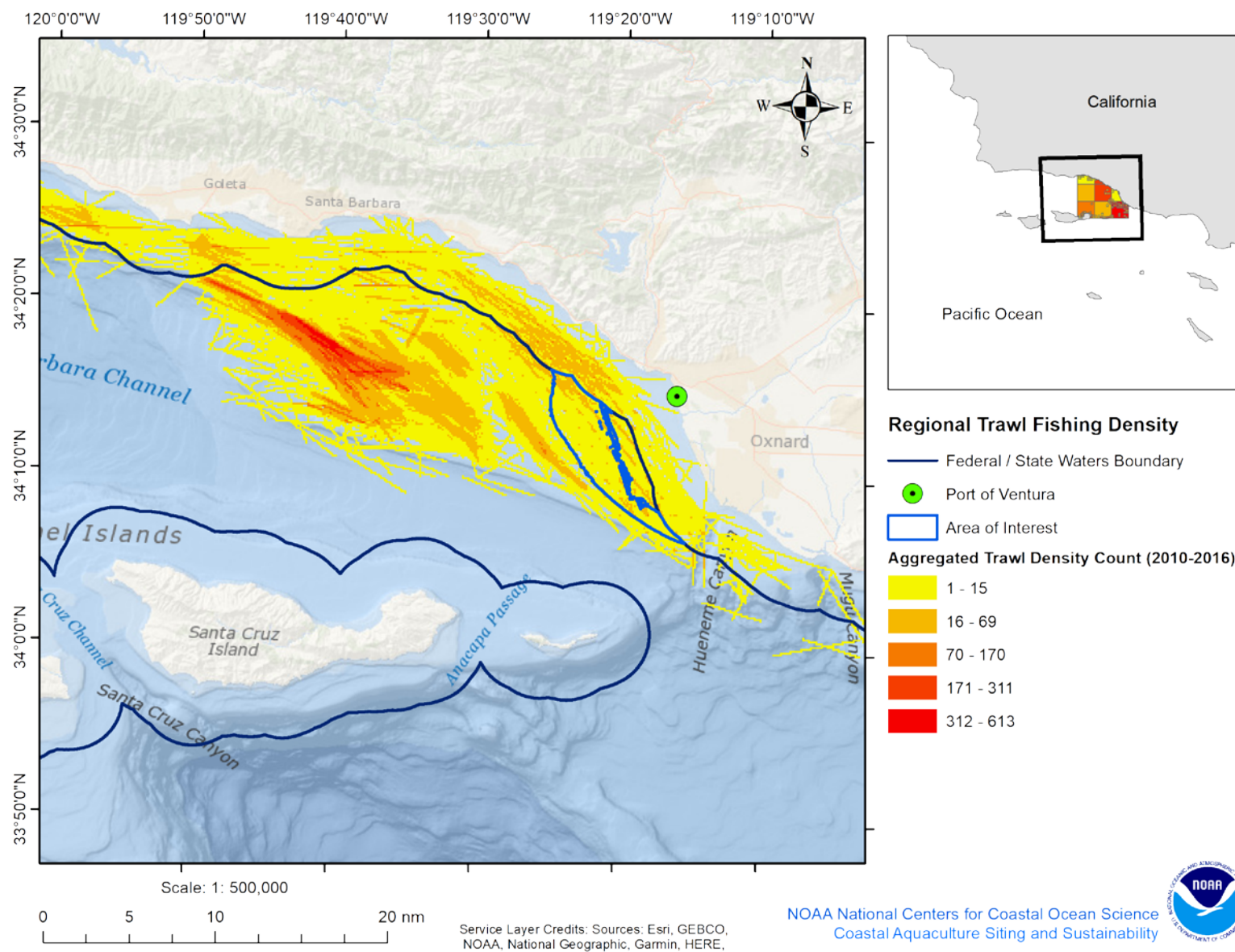


Figure 6. Regional perspective of commercial trawl fisheries within the Santa Barbara Channel region. Note that trawl fishery interactions occur within the ‘area of interest,’ however, the highest density of trawl fishery activity occurs northwest of the ‘area of interest’.

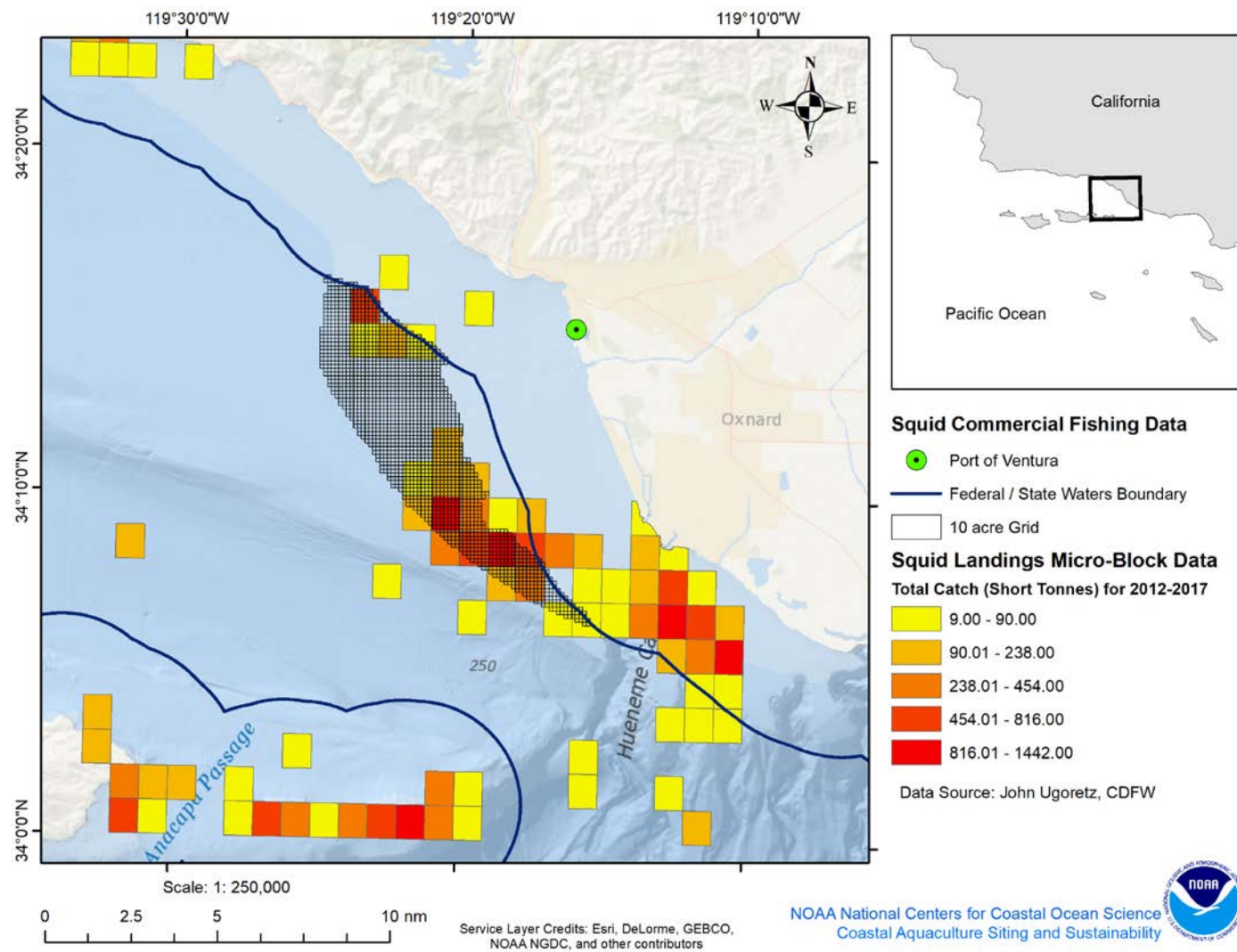


Figure 7. Regional perspective of the commercial squid fishery within the Santa Barbara Channel region. Note that trawl fishery interactions occur within the ‘area of interest,’ however, the highest density of trawl fishery activity occurs northwest of the ‘area of interest’.

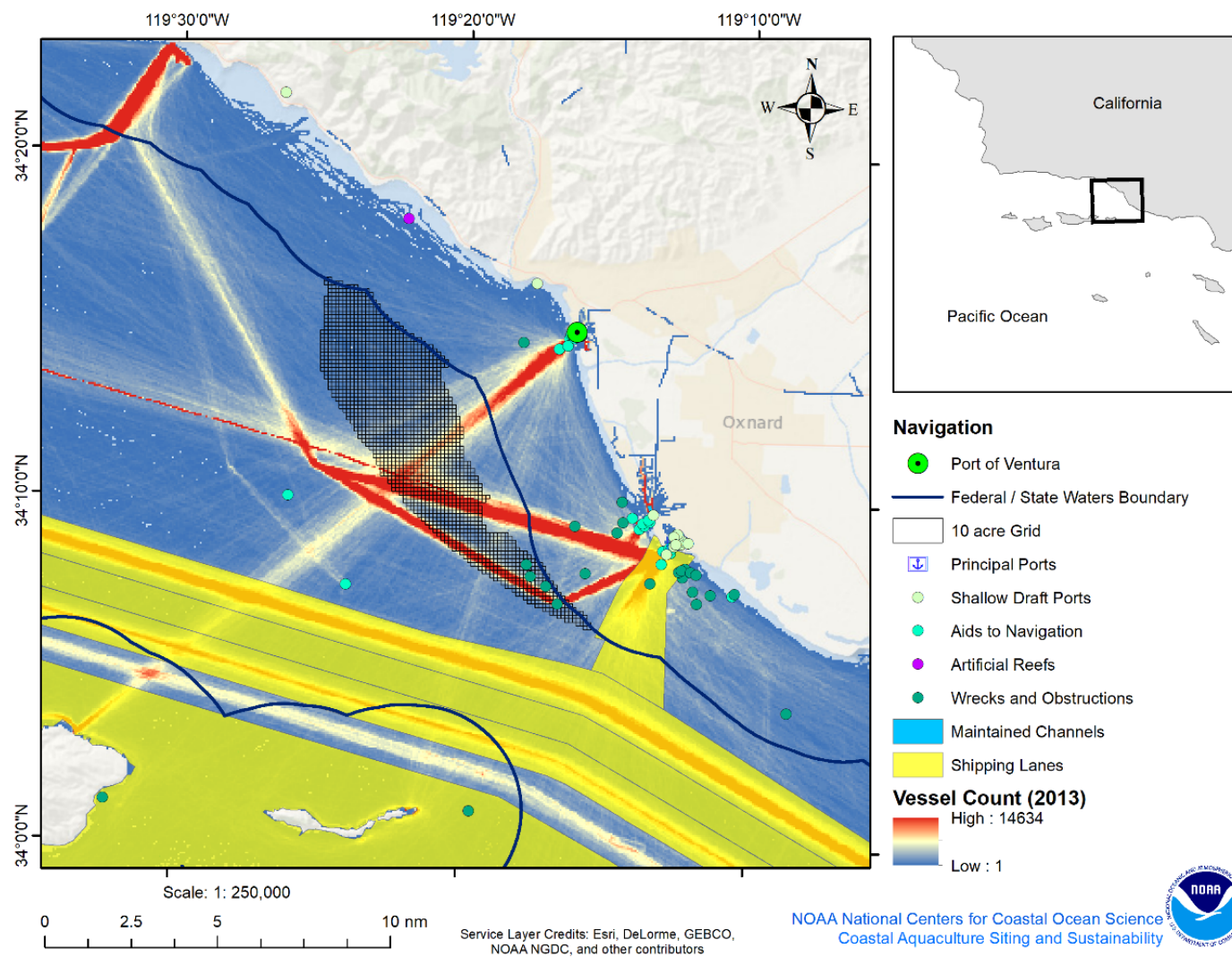


Figure 8. Navigation space use within the Santa Barbara Channel region in relation to the Ventura Shellfish Enterprise (VSE) ‘area of interest’. Vessel traffic and wrecks and obstructions interactions occur within the ‘area of interest’.

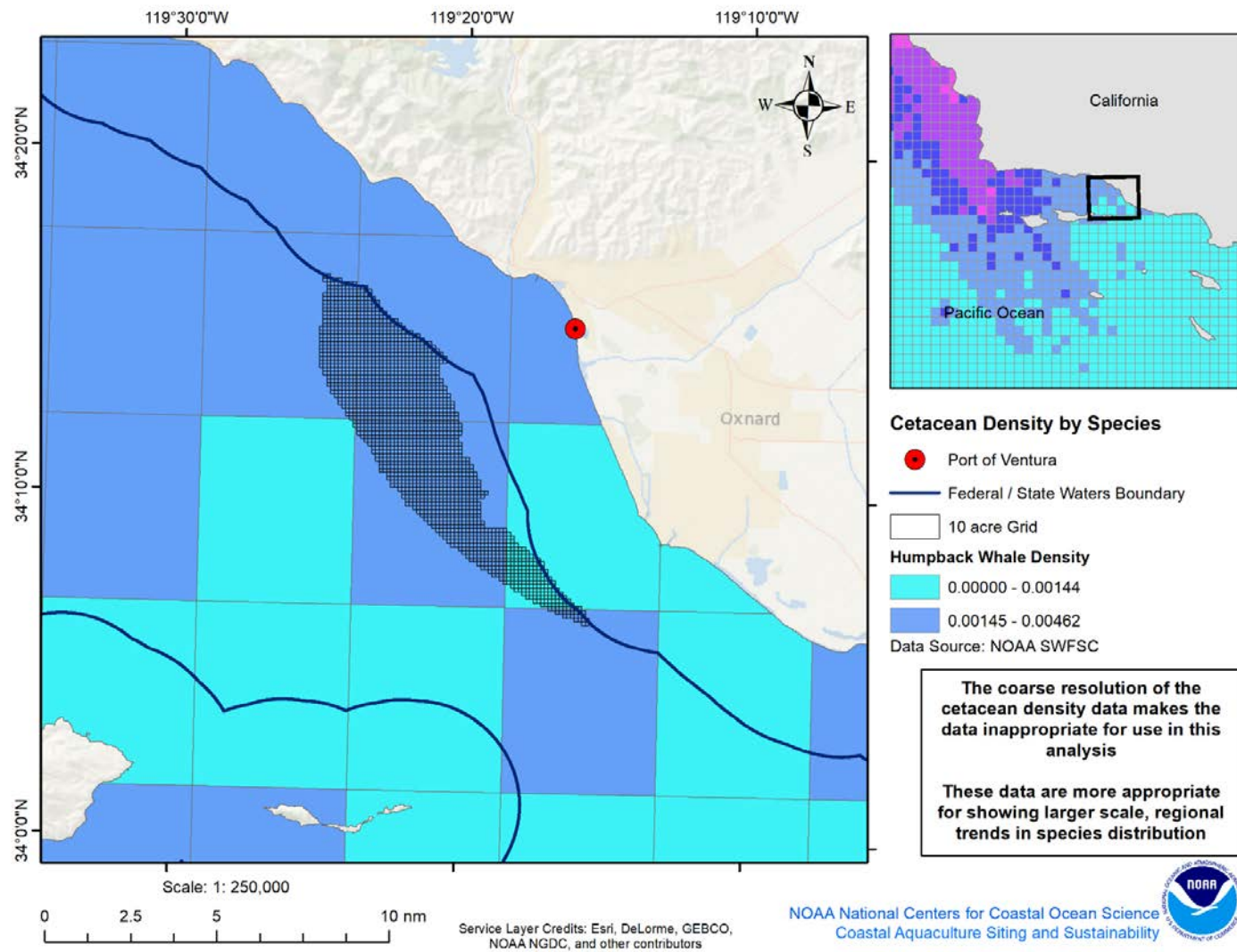


Figure 9. Cetacean (i.e., humpback whale) predicted density in relation to the VSE 'area of interest. Note that due to the coarse spatial resolution of this data, it was inappropriate for use within the VSE suitability analysis. The inset map (upper right) shows the large-scale, regional trends of cetacean (i.e., humpback whale) distribution.

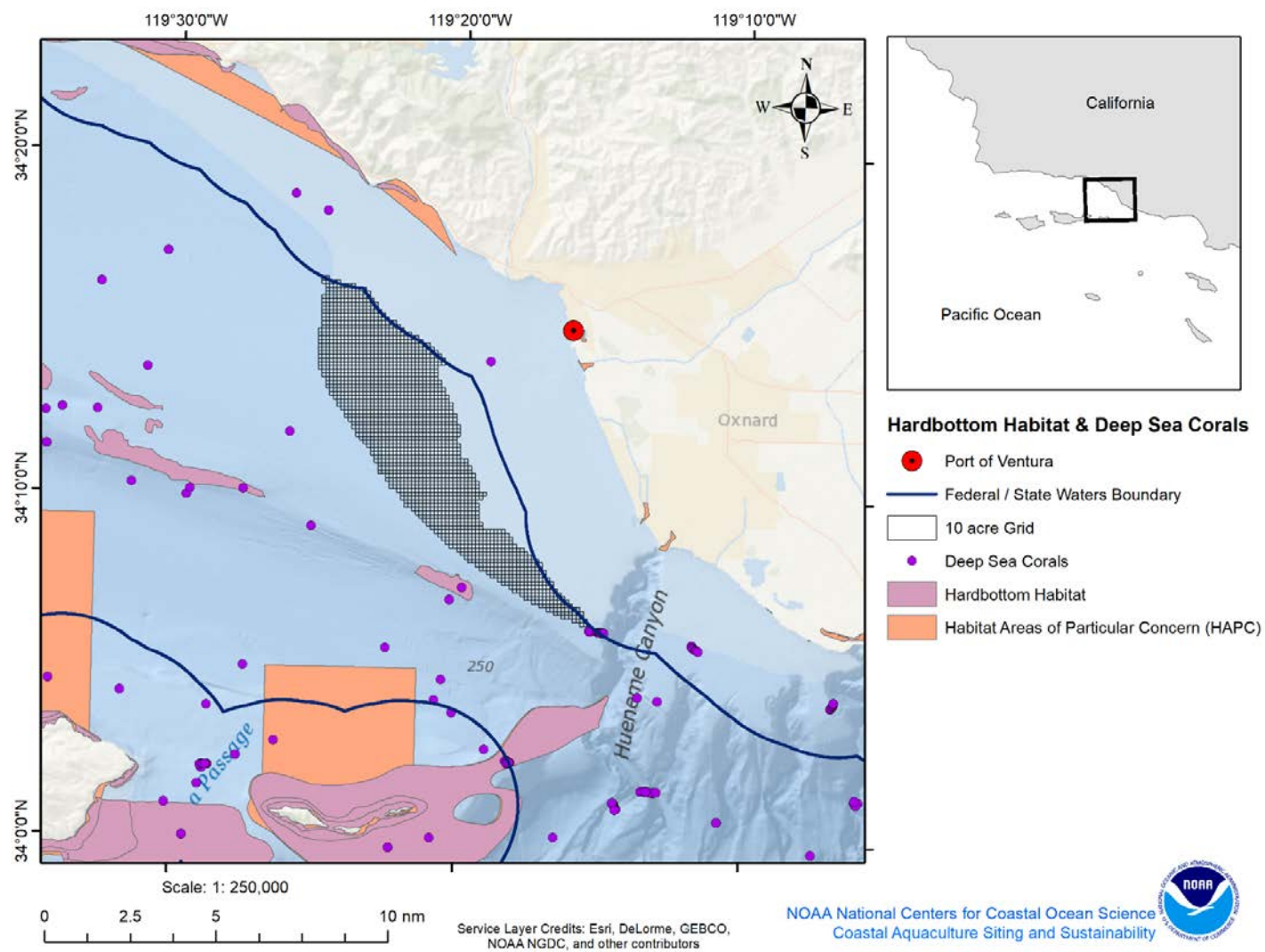


Figure 10. Distribution of hardbottom habitat and deep-sea corals in relation to the VSE 'area of interest'. Note that records of deep-sea corals and hardbottom habitat occur within proximity of the VSE 'area of interest,' but not within it.

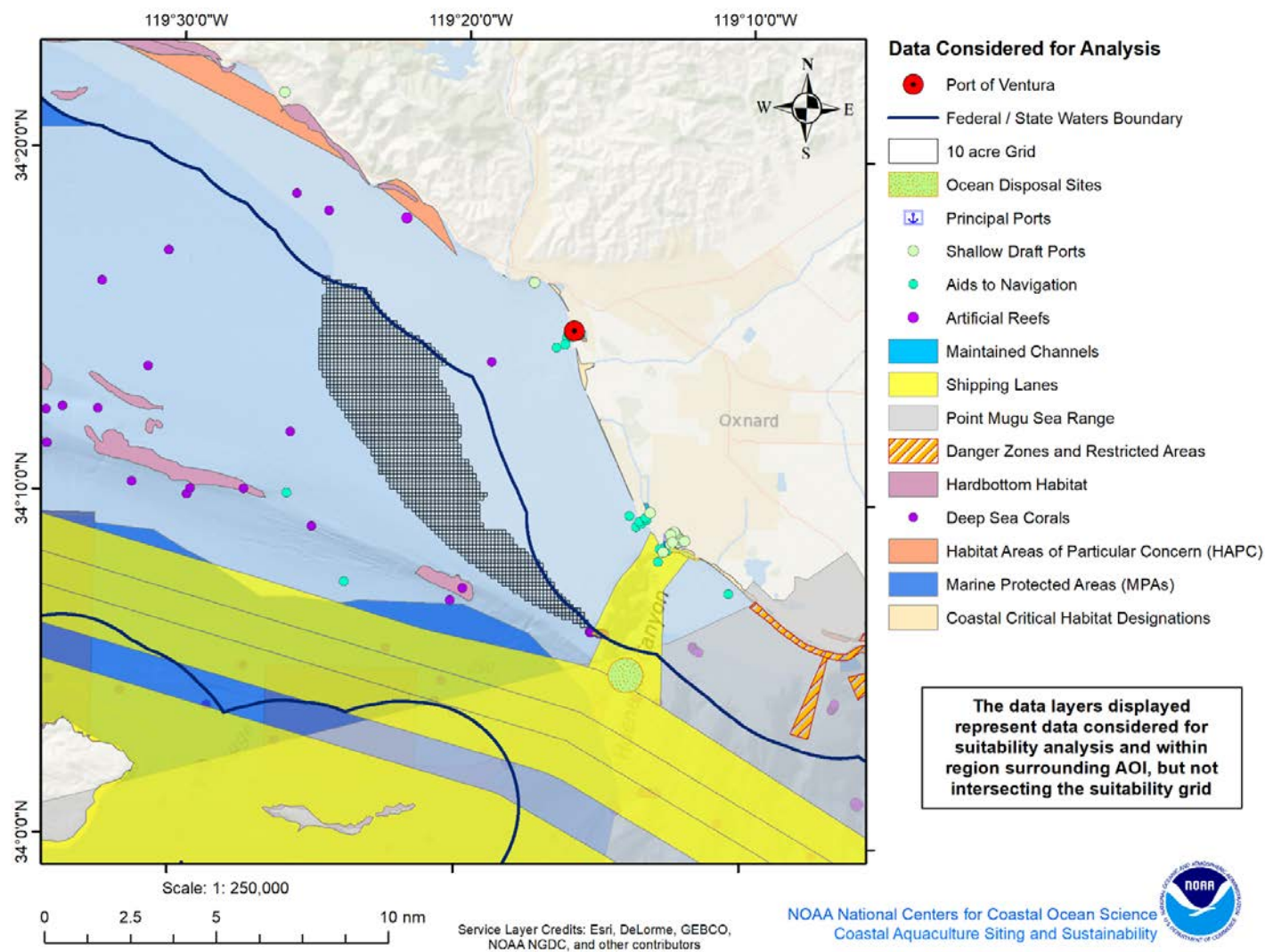


Figure 11. Distribution of all major spatial data layers representing potential space-use conflicts (e.g., military, navigation, natural resources) that were considered, but do not intersect the VSE ‘area of interest’ and were thus not incorporated within the suitability analysis.

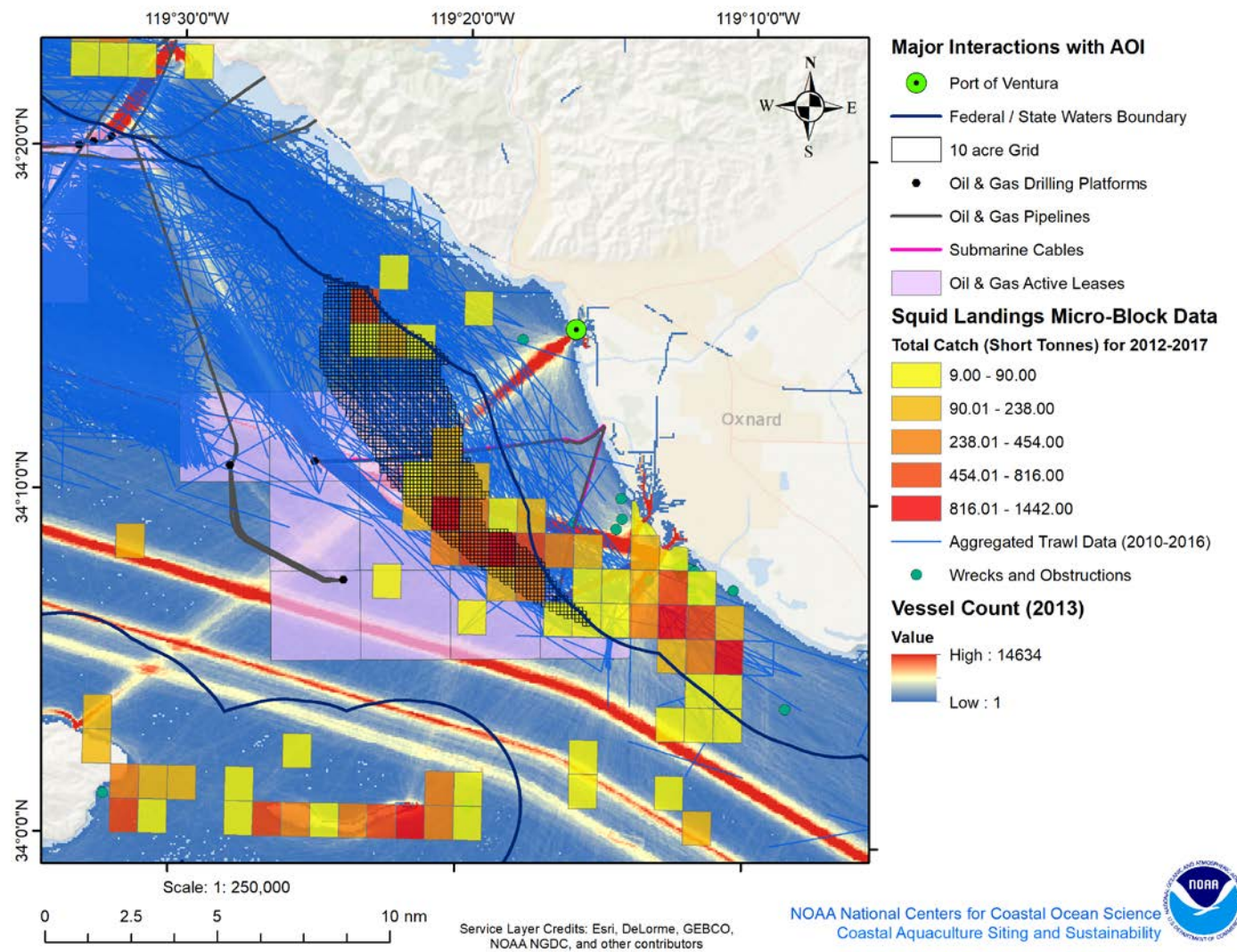


Figure 12. Distribution of all major spatial data layers representing potential space-use conflicts that intersect the VSE ‘area of interest’ and were incorporated within the suitability analysis. These include: (1) oil and gas leases, drilling platforms, and pipelines, (2) submarine cables, (3) commercial trawl and squid fisheries, (4) wrecks and obstructions, and (5) vessel traffic.

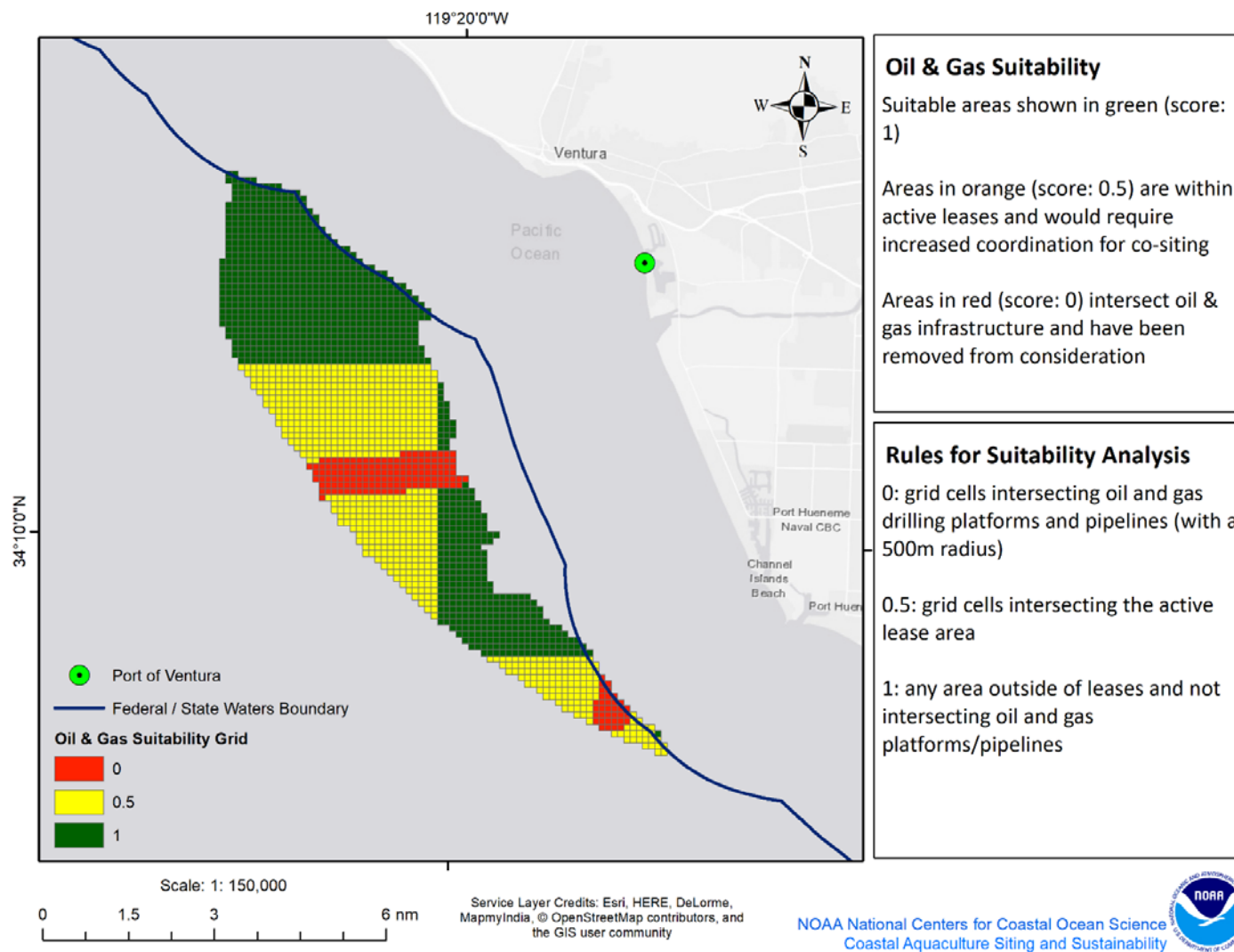


Figure 13. Oil and gas suitability layer incorporated within the overall VSE suitability analysis. Areas within a 500 meter radius of active oil and gas pipelines and drilling platforms were assigned a score of ‘0’ (least compatible), areas within an active oil and gas lease were assigned a score of ‘0.5’ (moderately compatible), and those outside of active oil and gas interests were assigned a score of ‘1’ (most compatible).

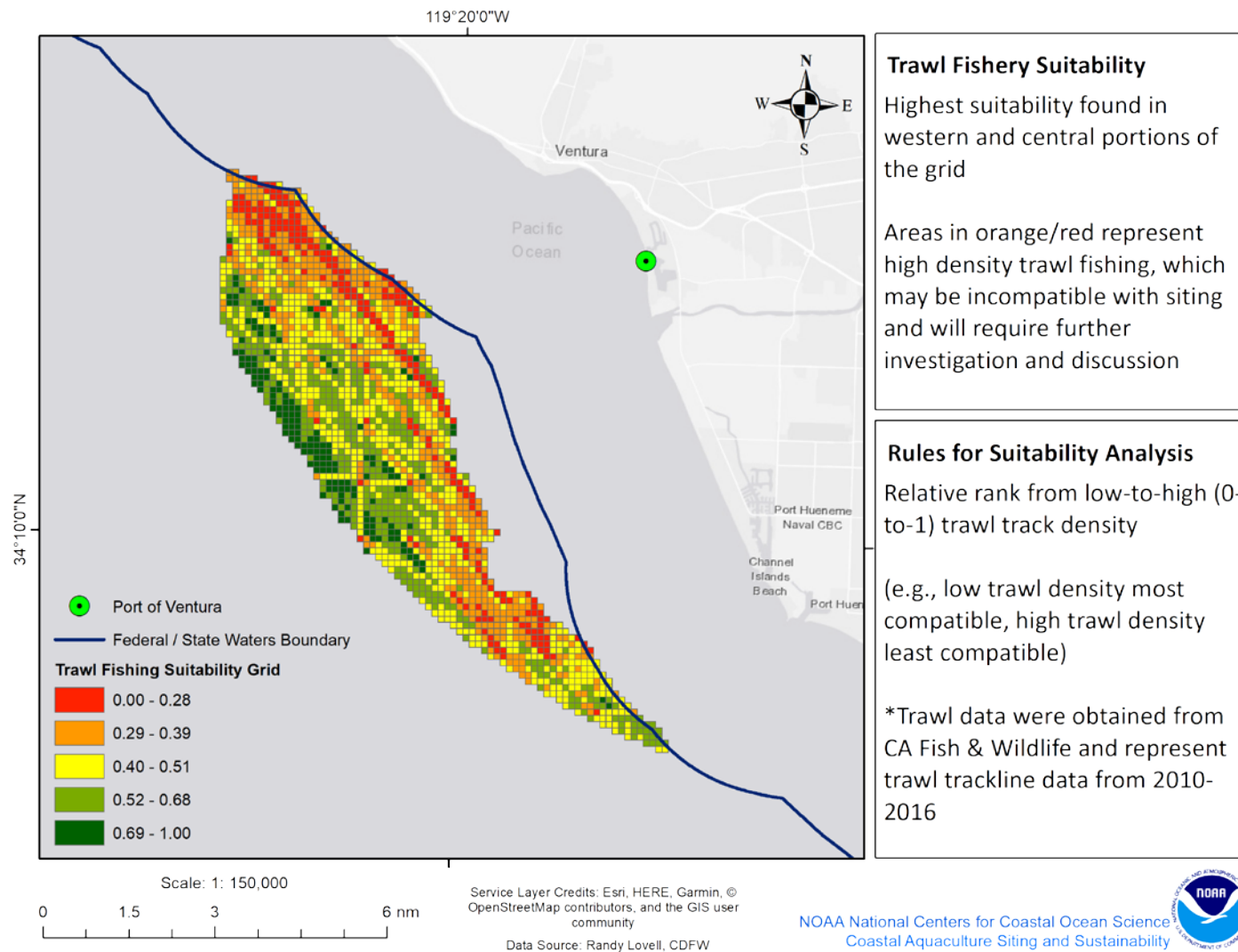


Figure 14. Commercial trawl fishery suitability layer incorporated within the overall VSE suitability analysis. Areas corresponding to the highest density of trawl track line intersections were assigned a score of ‘0’ (least compatible) and areas of lowest density of trawl track line intersections were assigned a score of ‘1’ (most compatible). Continuous scores between ‘0’ and ‘1’ were assigned for all other grid cells across the low-to-high density gradient.

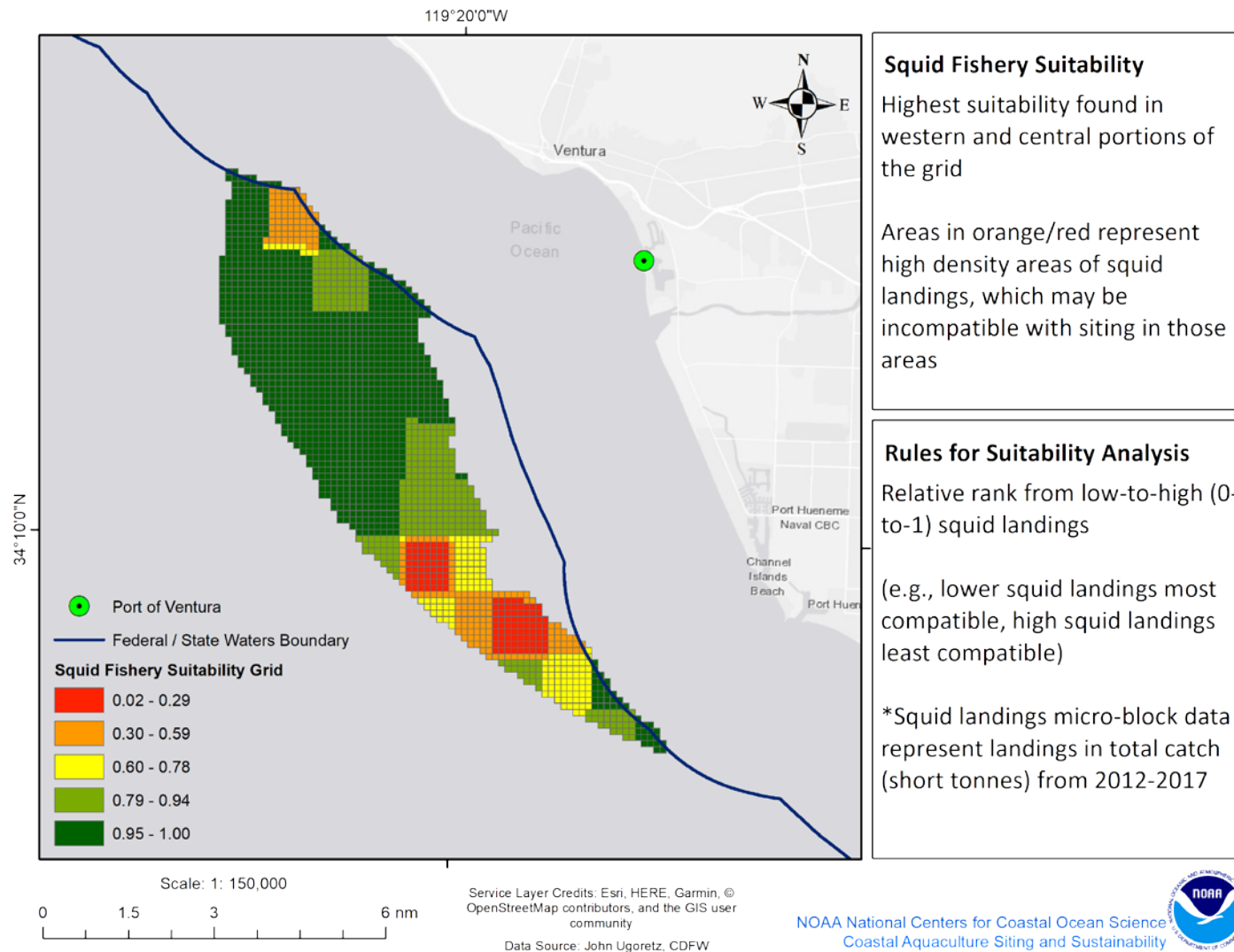


Figure 15. Commercial squid fishery suitability layer incorporated within the overall VSE suitability analysis. Areas corresponding to the highest total squid landings by microblock were assigned a score of ‘0’ (least compatible) and areas of lowest total squid landings by microblock were assigned a score of ‘1’ (most compatible). Continuous scores between ‘0’ and ‘1’ were assigned for all other grid cells across the low-to-high total squid landings by microblock gradient.

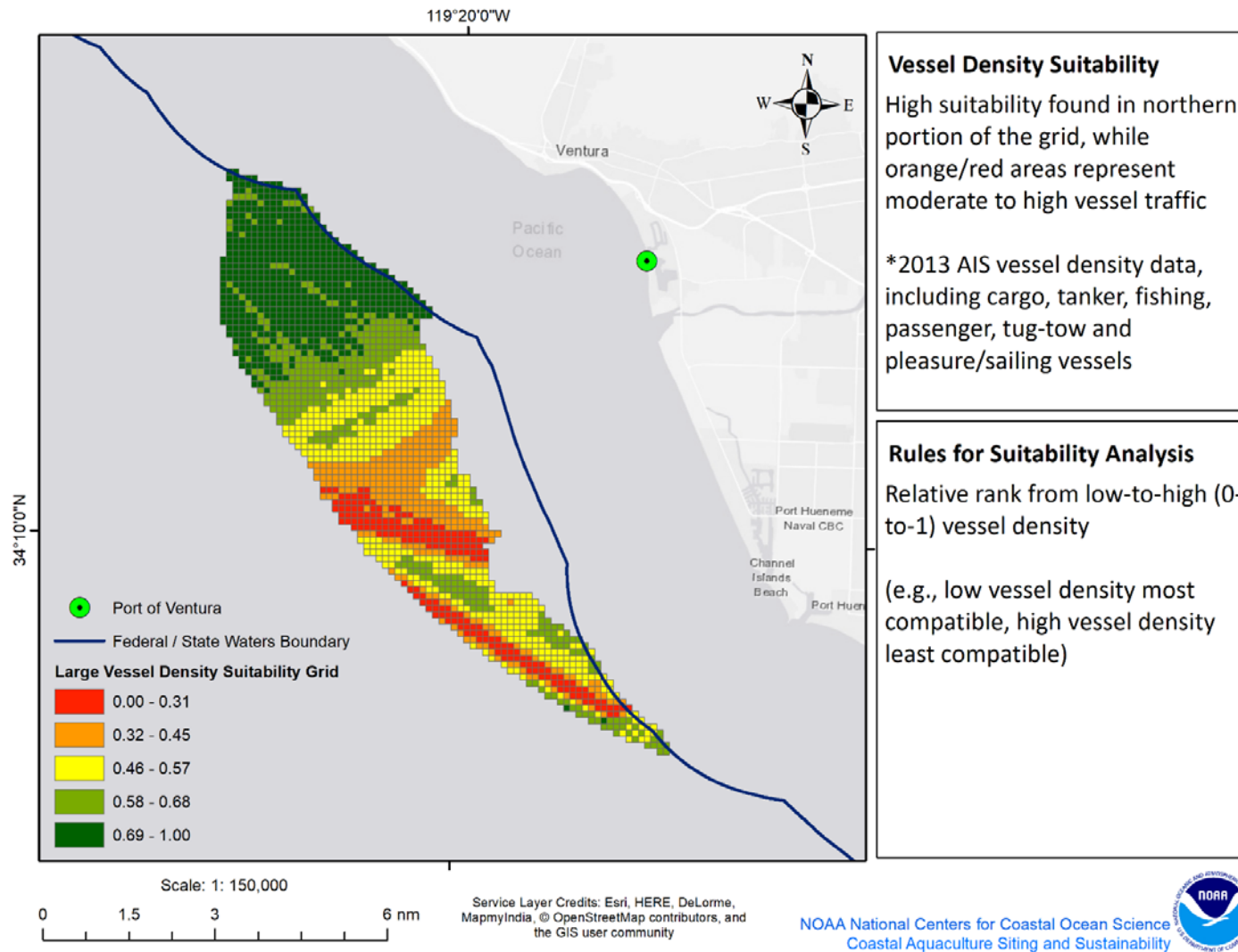


Figure 16. Vessel density suitability layer incorporated within the overall VSE suitability analysis. Areas corresponding to the highest total vessel density were assigned a score of ‘0’ (least compatible) and areas of lowest total vessel density were assigned a score of ‘1’ (most compatible). Continuous scores between ‘0’ and ‘1’ were assigned for all other grid cells across the low-to-high density gradient.

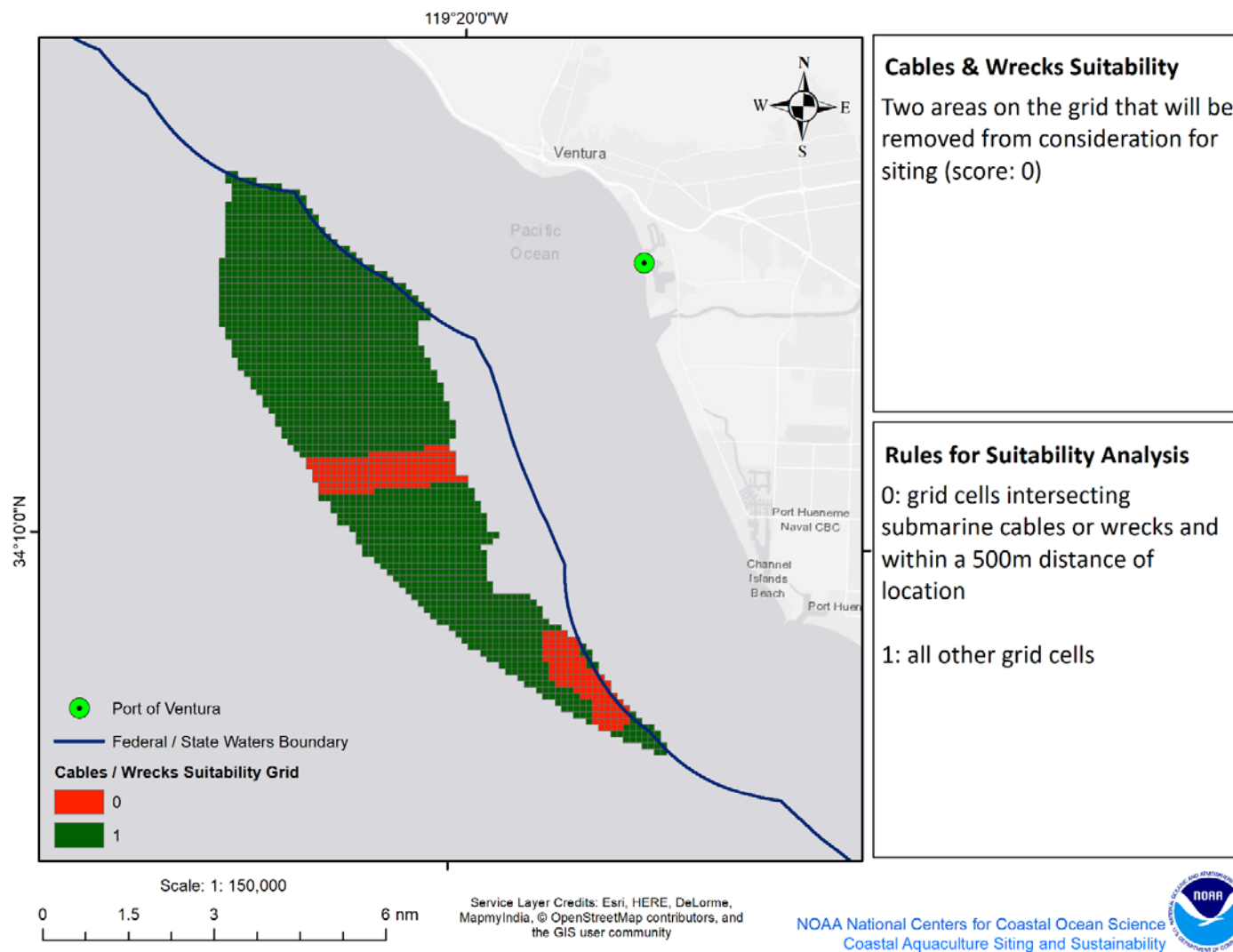


Figure 17. Submerged cables and wrecks and obstructions suitability layer incorporated within the overall VSE suitability analysis. Areas within a 500-meter radius of submerged cables and wrecks and obstructions were assigned a score of ‘0’ (least compatible) while areas outside of a 500-meter radius of submerged cables and wrecks and obstructions were assigned a score of ‘1’ (most compatible).

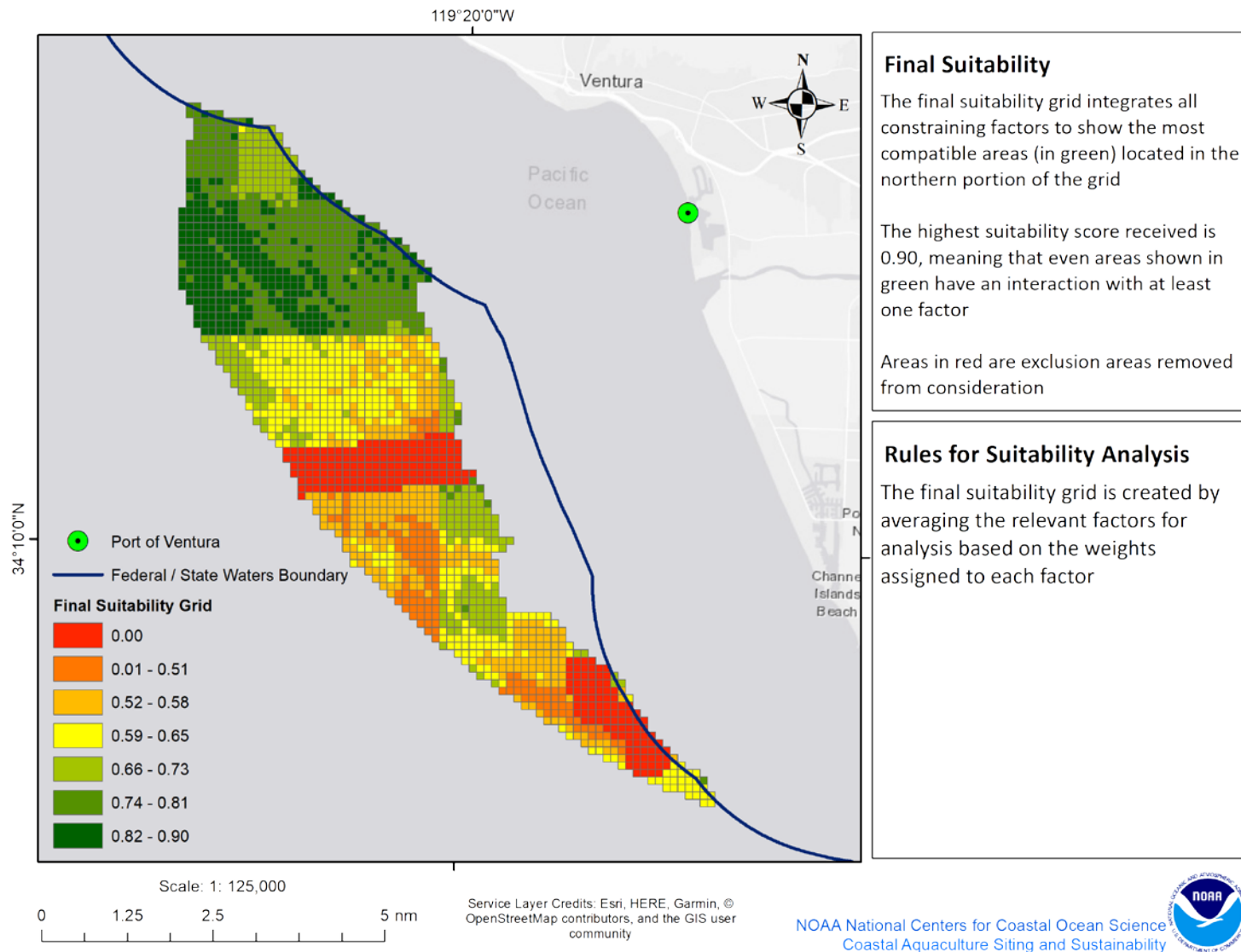


Figure 18. Final suitability grid generated through integration of all individual suitability layers (i.e., oil and gas, commercial trawl fishery, commercial squid fishery, vessel traffic, and submerged cables and wrecks and obstructions). Note that all layers were assigned equal weights within the analysis.

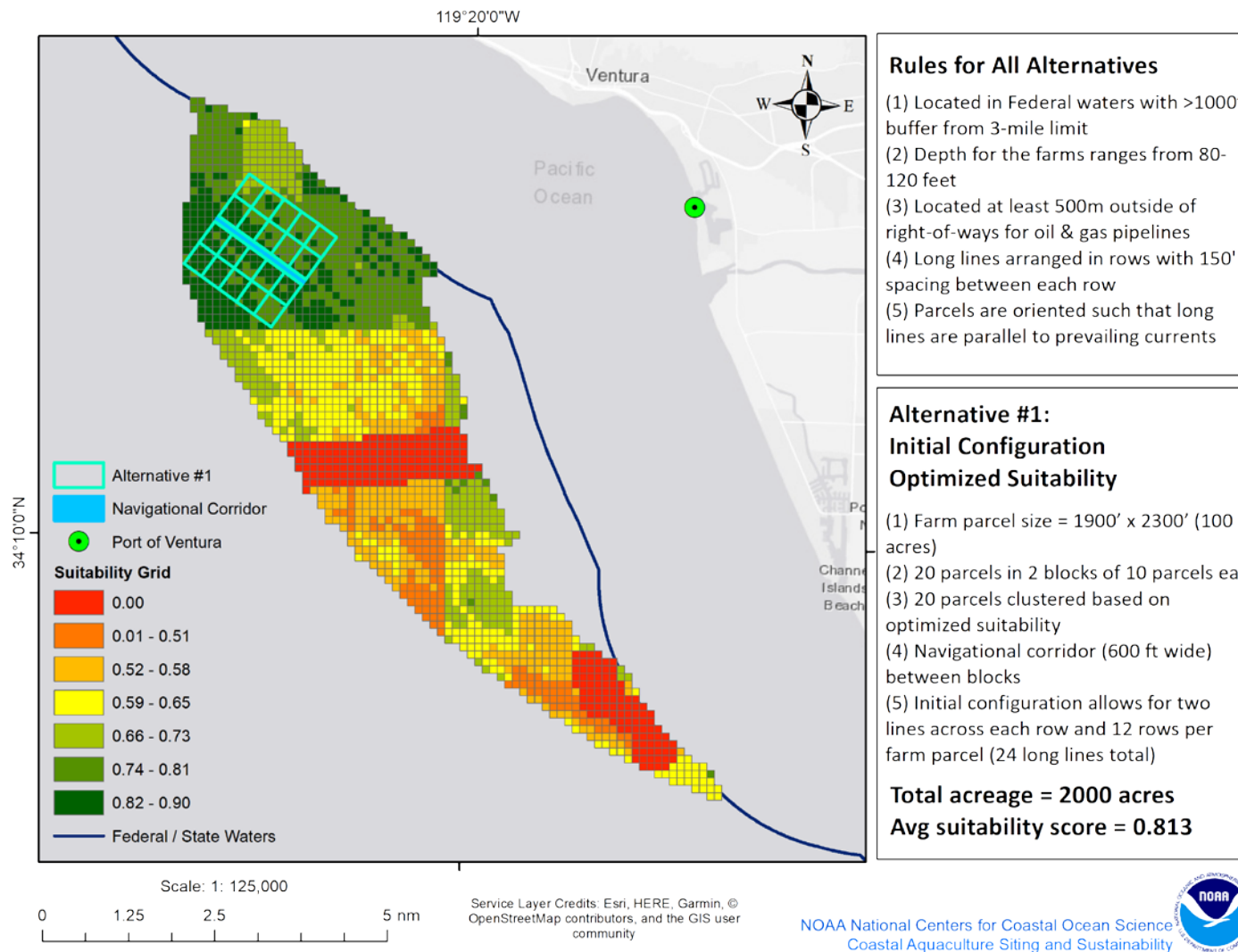


Figure 19. Alternative 1. The first alternative site for VSE was created using their initial configuration, in which the farm parcel design is a 1,900' by 2,300' plot. The alternative site contains 20 parcels, clustered into two blocks, with a 600' navigational corridor between the two blocks. The alternative site was positioned within the 'area of interest' based on optimizing suitability.

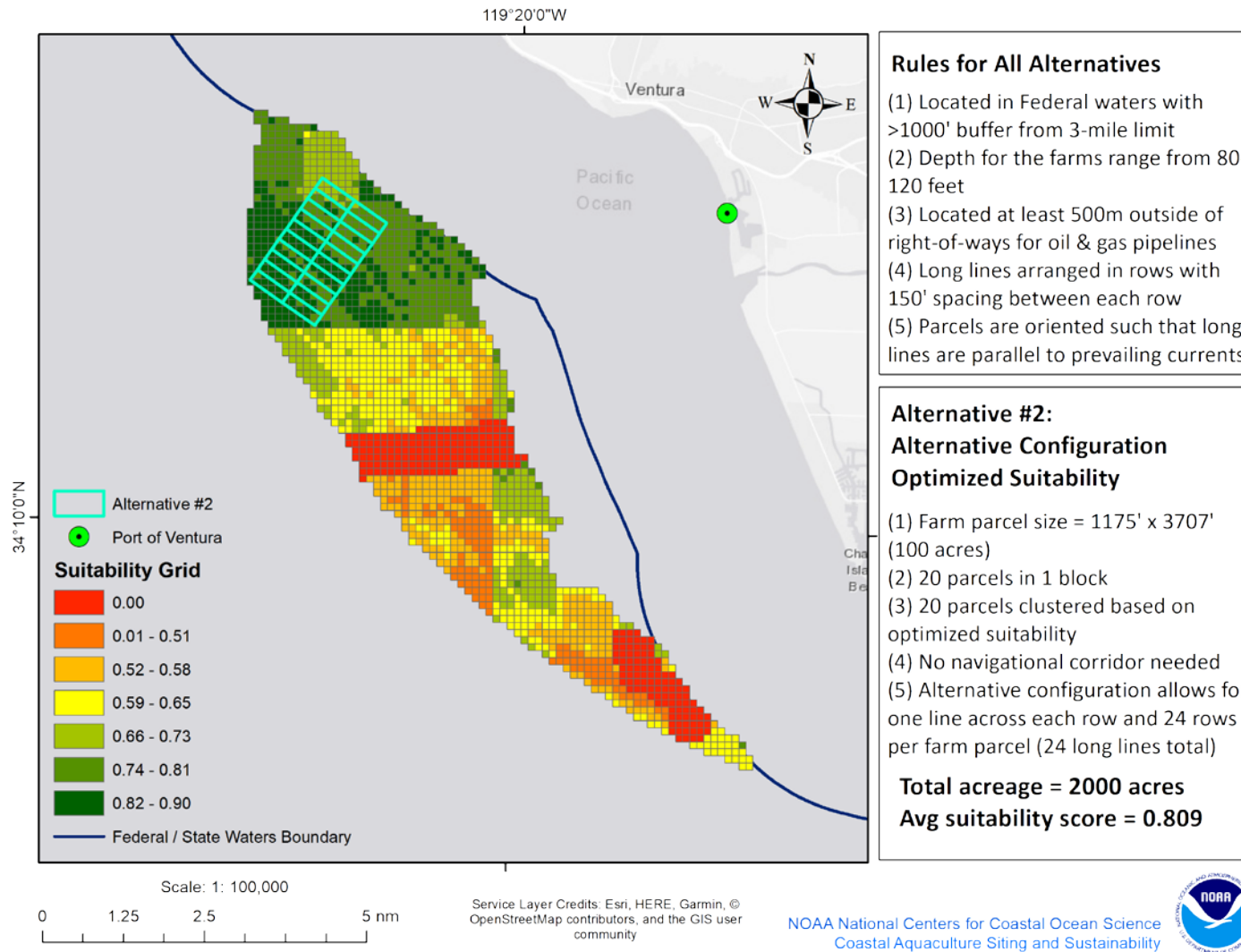
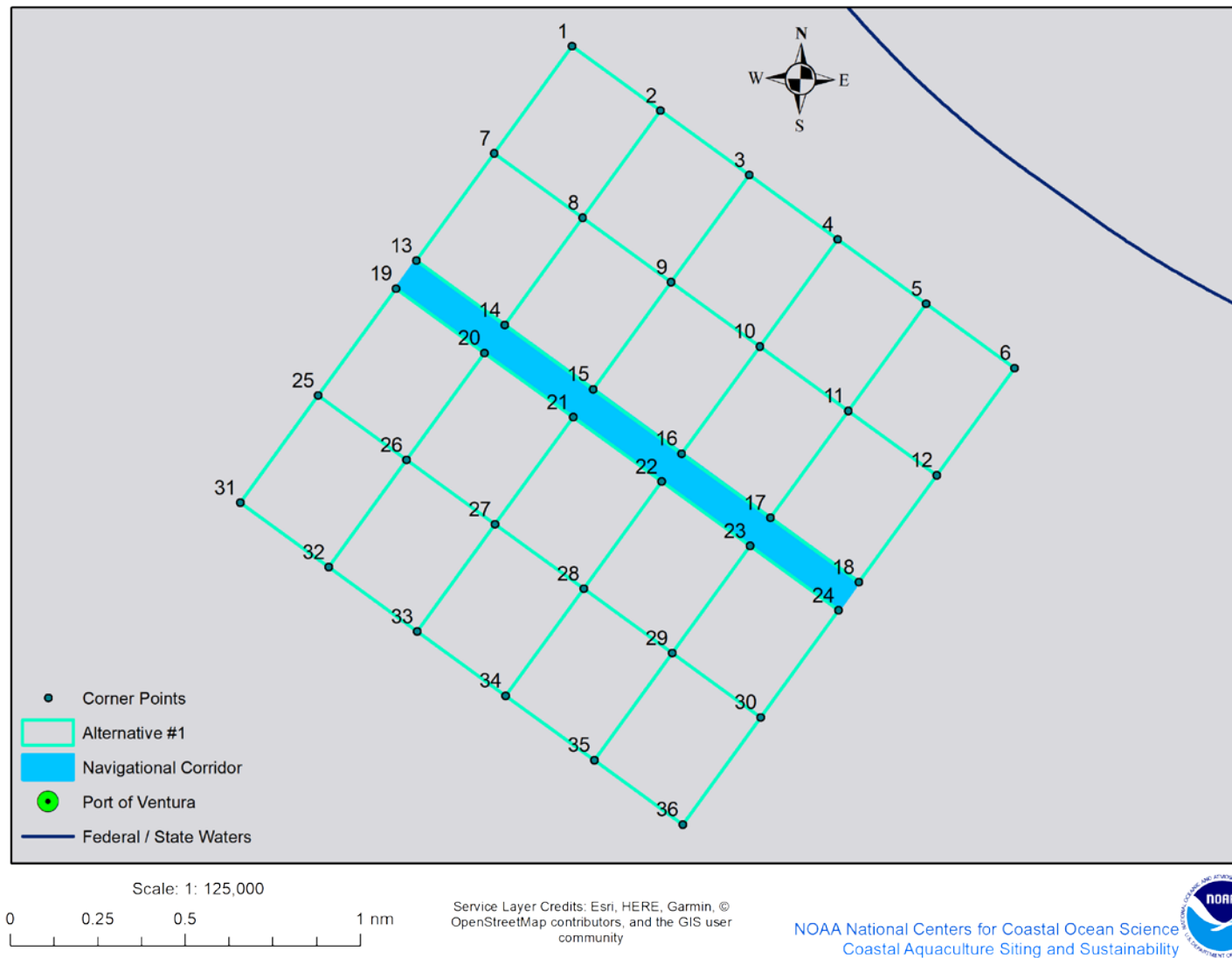


Figure 20. Alternative 2. The second alternative site for VSE was created using their alternative configuration, in which the farm parcel design is a 1,175' by 3,707' plot. The alternative site contains 20 parcels, clustered in one contiguous block. A navigational corridor was not needed since all parcels can be reached on the perimeter of the site. The alternative site was positioned within the 'area of interest' based on optimizing suitability.

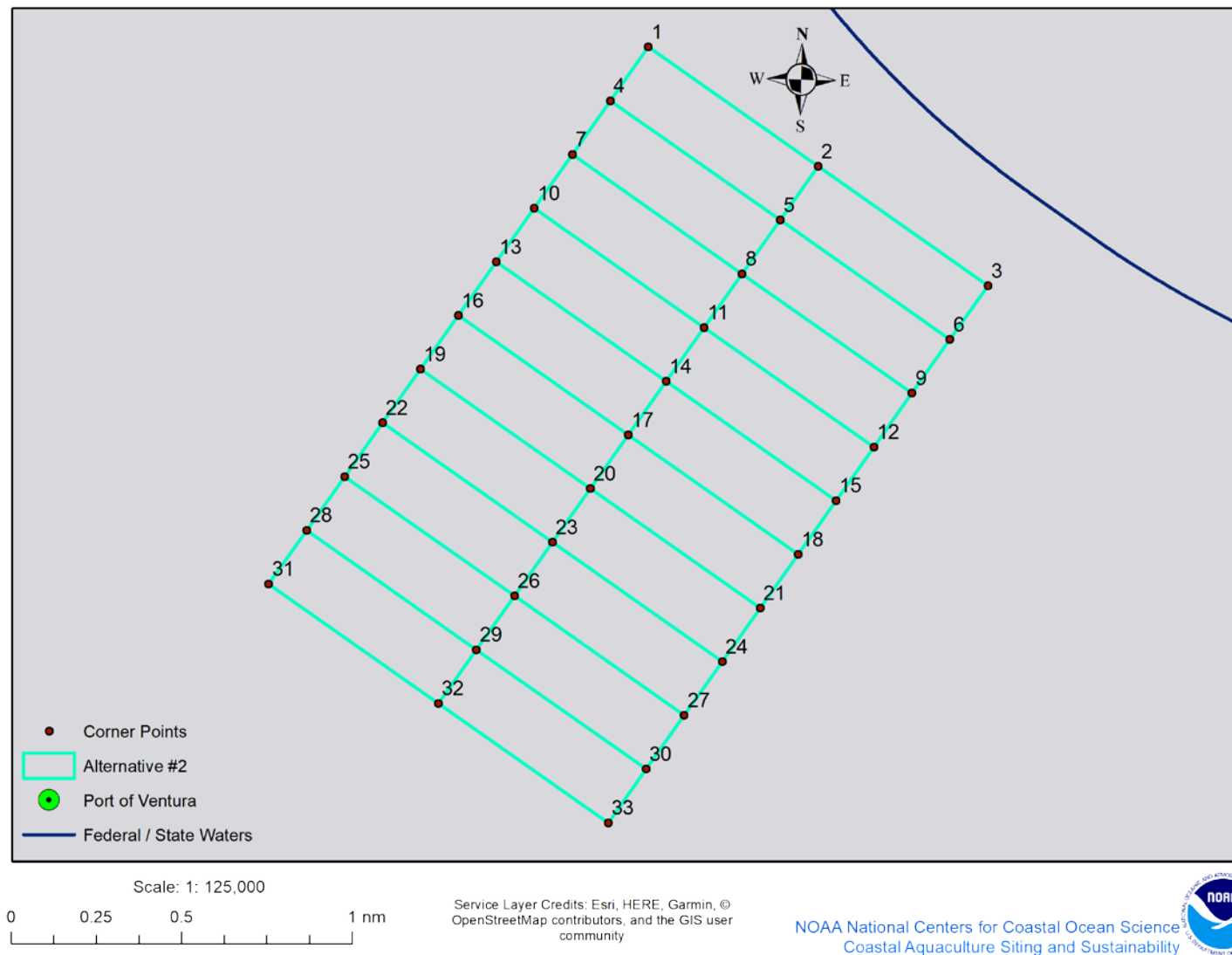
APPENDIX



Appendix 1. Corner points associated with Alternative #1 for the proposed VSE project. Note that the labelled points correspond with the latitude and longitude coordinates described in Appendix 2.

Appendix 2. Corner points and associated latitudes and longitudes for Alternative #1 for the proposed VSE project.

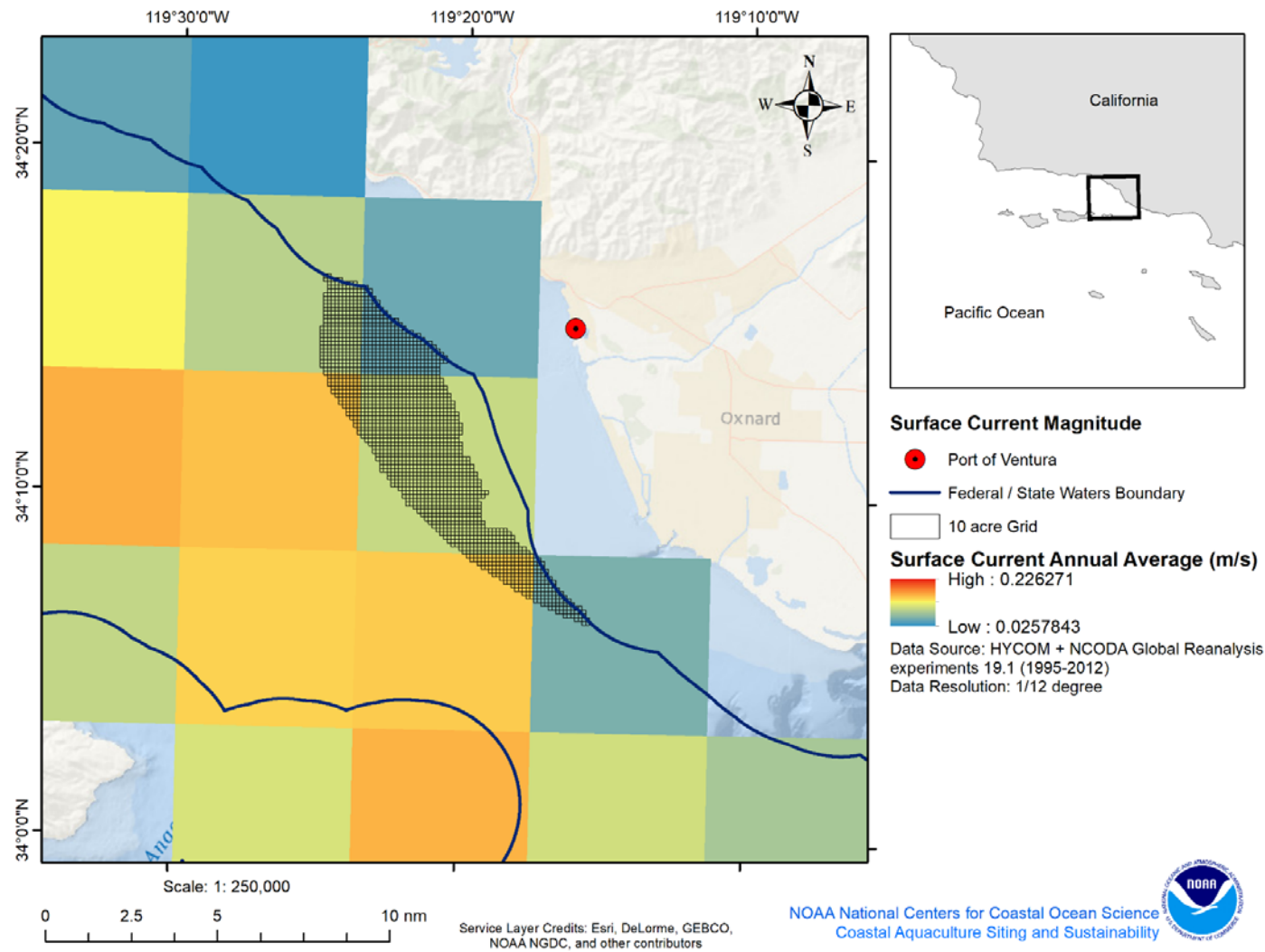
<u>Corner ID</u>	<u>Latitude</u>	<u>Longitude</u>
1	34° 15' 17.528" N	119° 23' 56.582" W
2	34° 15' 6.837" N	119° 23' 37.972" W
3	34° 14' 56.145" N	119° 23' 19.363" W
4	34° 14' 45.452" N	119° 23' 0.755" W
5	34° 14' 34.759" N	119° 22' 42.149" W
6	34° 14' 24.064" N	119° 22' 23.544" W
7	34° 14' 58.821" N	119° 24' 12.166" W
8	34° 14' 48.130" N	119° 23' 53.557" W
9	34° 14' 37.439" N	119° 23' 34.949" W
10	34° 14' 26.747" N	119° 23' 16.342" W
11	34° 14' 16.054" N	119° 22' 57.736" W
12	34° 14' 5.361" N	119° 22' 39.132" W
13	34° 14' 40.113" N	119° 24' 27.749" W
14	34° 14' 29.423" N	119° 24' 9.140" W
15	34° 14' 18.733" N	119° 23' 50.532" W
16	34° 14' 8.041" N	119° 23' 31.926" W
17	34° 13' 57.349" N	119° 23' 13.321" W
18	34° 13' 46.656" N	119° 22' 54.718" W
19	34° 14' 35.223" N	119° 24' 31.808" W
20	34° 14' 24.533" N	119° 24' 13.199" W
21	34° 14' 13.843" N	119° 23' 54.592" W
22	34° 14' 3.151" N	119° 23' 35.986" W
23	34° 13' 52.459" N	119° 23' 17.381" W
24	34° 13' 41.766" N	119° 22' 58.777" W
25	34° 14' 16.514" N	119° 24' 47.388" W
26	34° 14' 5.826" N	119° 24' 28.780" W
27	34° 13' 55.136" N	119° 24' 10.173" W
28	34° 13' 44.445" N	119° 23' 51.568" W
29	34° 13' 33.754" N	119° 23' 32.964" W
30	34° 13' 23.061" N	119° 23' 14.361" W
31	34° 13' 57.806" N	119° 25' 2.966" W
32	34° 13' 47.118" N	119° 24' 44.359" W
33	34° 13' 36.428" N	119° 24' 25.753" W
34	34° 13' 25.738" N	119° 24' 7.148" W
35	34° 13' 15.048" N	119° 23' 48.544" W
36	34° 13' 4.356" N	119° 23' 29.942" W



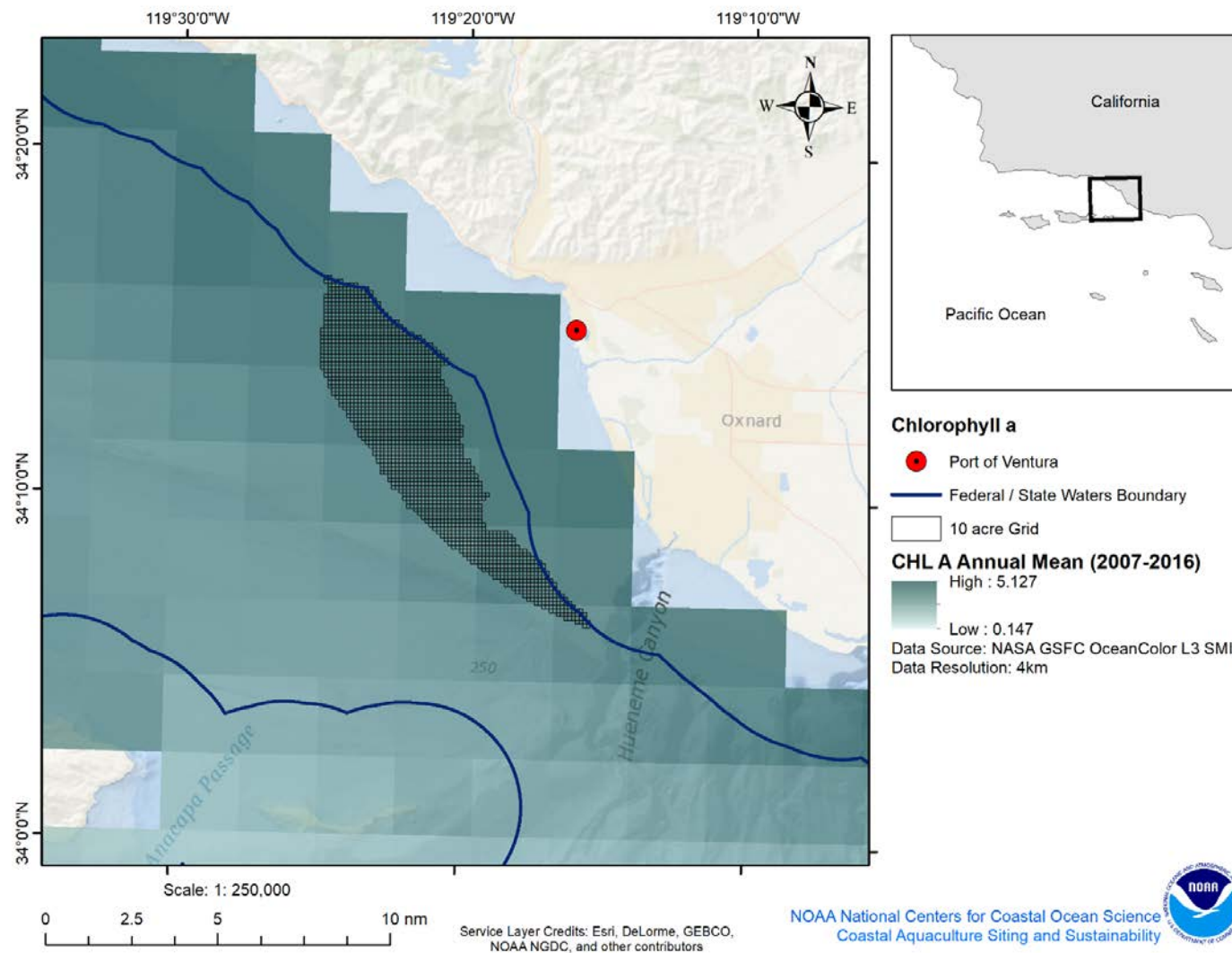
Appendix 3. Corner points associated with Alternative #2 for the proposed VSE project. Note that the labelled points correspond with the latitude and longitude coordinates described in Appendix 4.

Appendix 4. Corner points and associated latitudes and longitudes for Alternative #2 for the proposed VSE project.

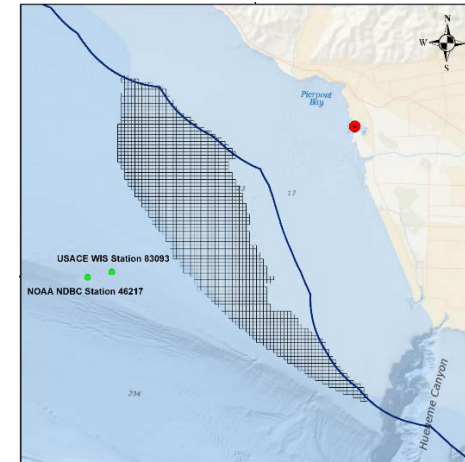
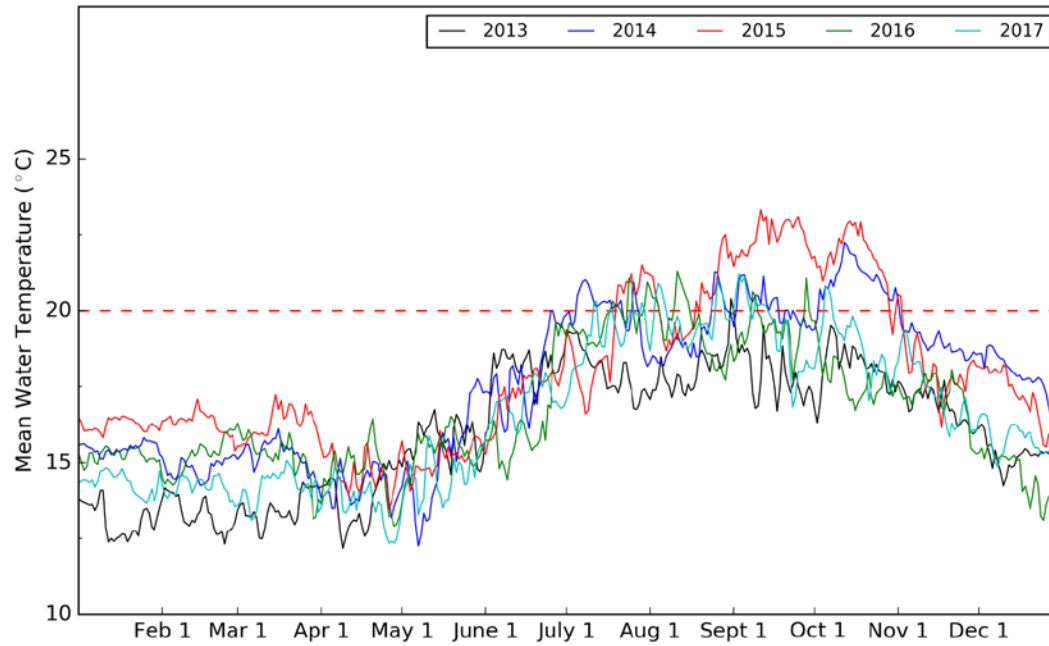
<u>Corner ID</u>	<u>Latitude</u>	<u>Longitude</u>
1	34° 15' 21.520" N	119° 23' 42.518" W
2	34° 15' 1.105" N	119° 23' 5.841" W
3	34° 14' 40.687" N	119° 22' 29.169" W
4	34° 15' 11.867" N	119° 23' 50.309" W
5	34° 14' 51.453" N	119° 23' 13.633" W
6	34° 14' 31.035" N	119° 22' 36.962" W
7	34° 15' 2.214" N	119° 23' 58.101" W
8	34° 14' 41.801" N	119° 23' 21.425" W
9	34° 14' 21.384" N	119° 22' 44.755" W
10	34° 14' 52.561" N	119° 24' 5.891" W
11	34° 14' 32.148" N	119° 23' 29.217" W
12	34° 14' 11.731" N	119° 22' 52.547" W
13	34° 14' 42.908" N	119° 24' 13.682" W
14	34° 14' 22.495" N	119° 23' 37.008" W
15	34° 14' 2.079" N	119° 23' 0.339" W
16	34° 14' 33.254" N	119° 24' 21.471" W
17	34° 14' 12.842" N	119° 23' 44.798" W
18	34° 13' 52.427" N	119° 23' 8.130" W
19	34° 14' 23.601" N	119° 24' 29.261" W
20	34° 14' 3.189" N	119° 23' 52.588" W
21	34° 13' 42.775" N	119° 23' 15.921" W
22	34° 14' 13.947" N	119° 24' 37.050" W
23	34° 13' 53.536" N	119° 24' 0.378" W
24	34° 13' 33.122" N	119° 23' 23.711" W
25	34° 14' 4.293" N	119° 24' 44.838" W
26	34° 13' 43.883" N	119° 24' 8.167" W
27	34° 13' 23.470" N	119° 23' 31.501" W
28	34° 13' 54.639" N	119° 24' 52.626" W
29	34° 13' 34.230" N	119° 24' 15.956" W
30	34° 13' 13.817" N	119° 23' 39.290" W
31	34° 13' 44.985" N	119° 25' 0.413" W
32	34° 13' 24.576" N	119° 24' 23.744" W
33	34° 13' 4.164" N	119° 23' 47.079" W



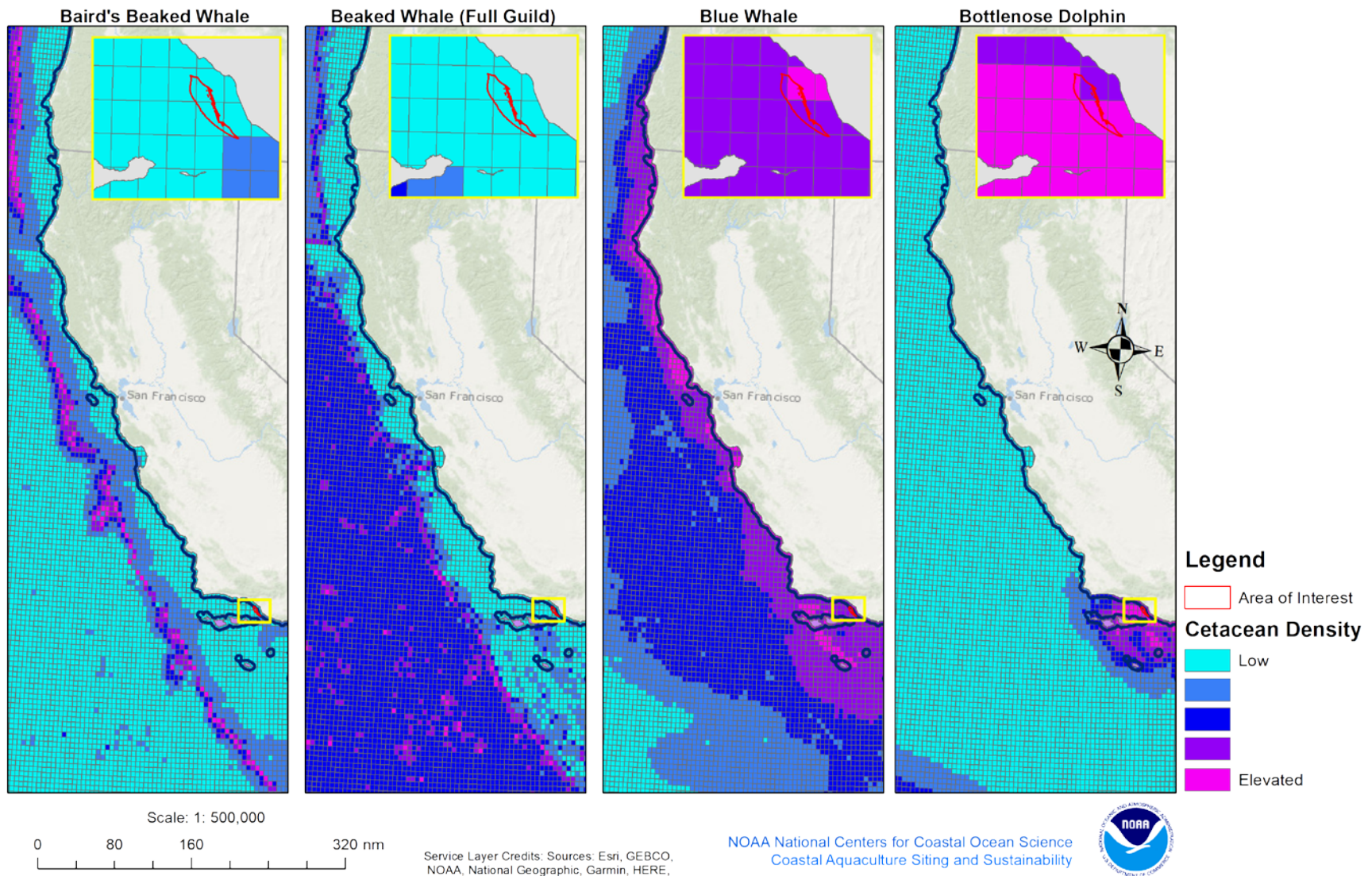
Appendix 5. Annual average surface current velocity (m/s) in relation to the area of interest for the proposed VSE project. The optimal current velocity range for blue mussel (*Mytilus galloprovincialis*) longlines is between 0.025 and 0.10 m/s (Longdill et al., 2008), which generally corresponds with annual average current velocity for the area of interest.



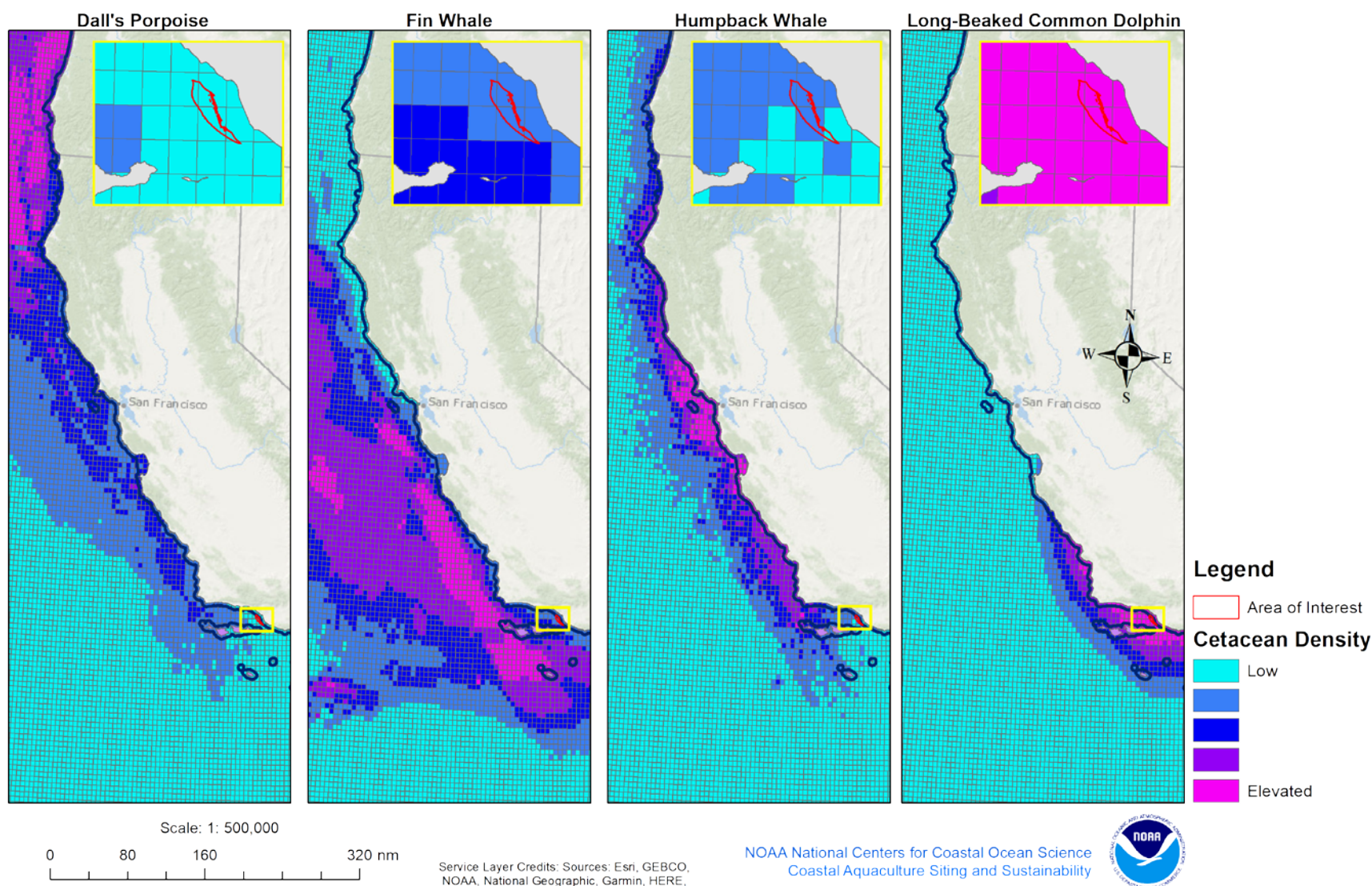
Appendix 6. Annual average chlorophyll *a* concentration (in micrograms per liter) in relation to the proposed VSE project. The optimal chlorophyll *a* range for blue mussels (*Mytilus galloprovincialis*) is between 0.5 and 55 µg/l (Sara et al., 1998), which corresponds with the annual average chlorophyll *a* concentration for the area of interest.



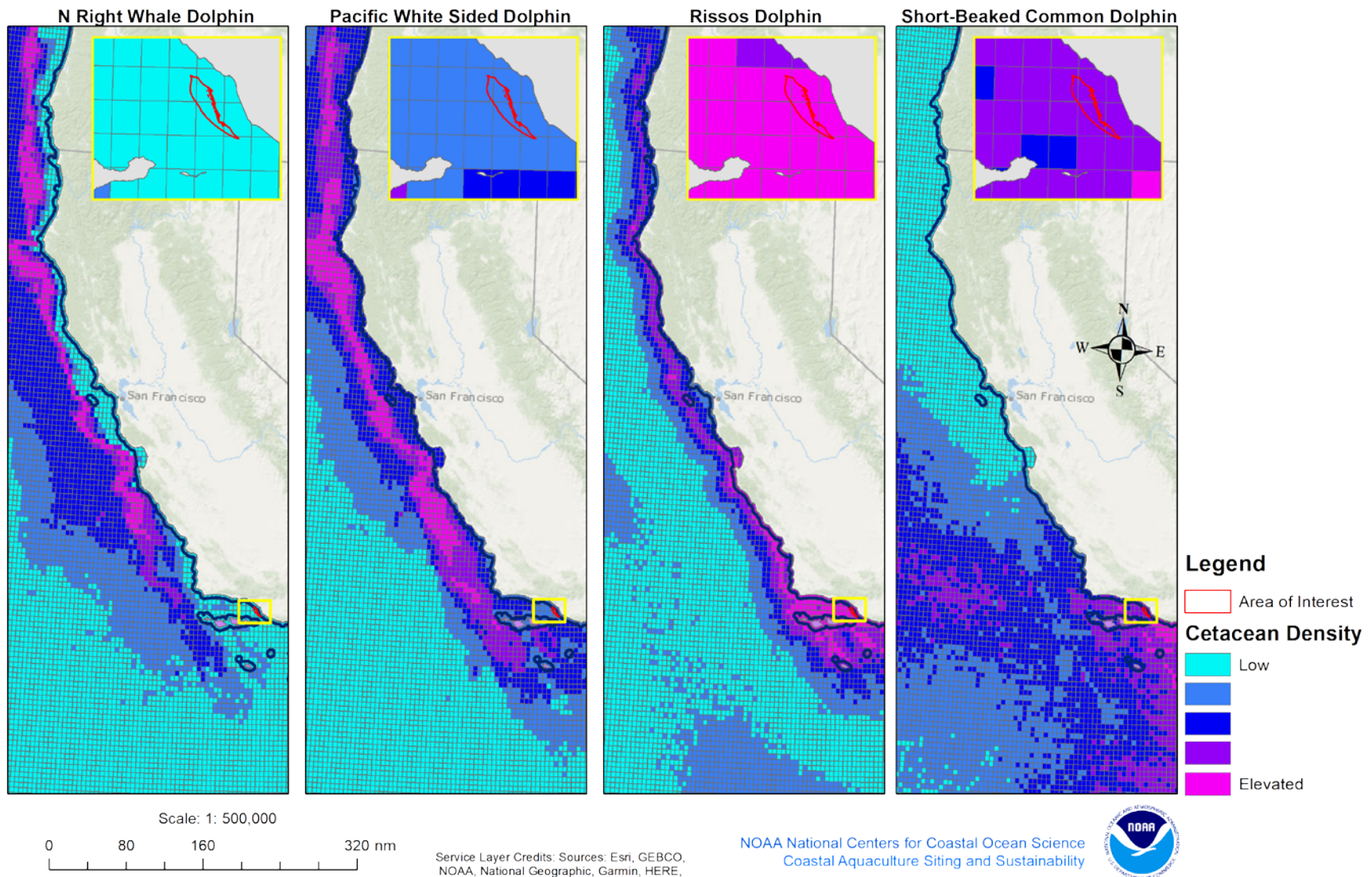
Appendix 7. Mean water temperature over a 5-year period as measured by the NOAA data buoy adjacent to the proposed VSE project area of interest. The acceptable water temperature range for blue mussels (*Mytilus galloprovincialis*) is between 3 and 29 degrees Celsius, with an optimal temperature of 20 degrees Celsius (denoted by the dashed red line in the figure above; Widdows 1978, Newell 1989, and Almada-Villela et al. 1982).



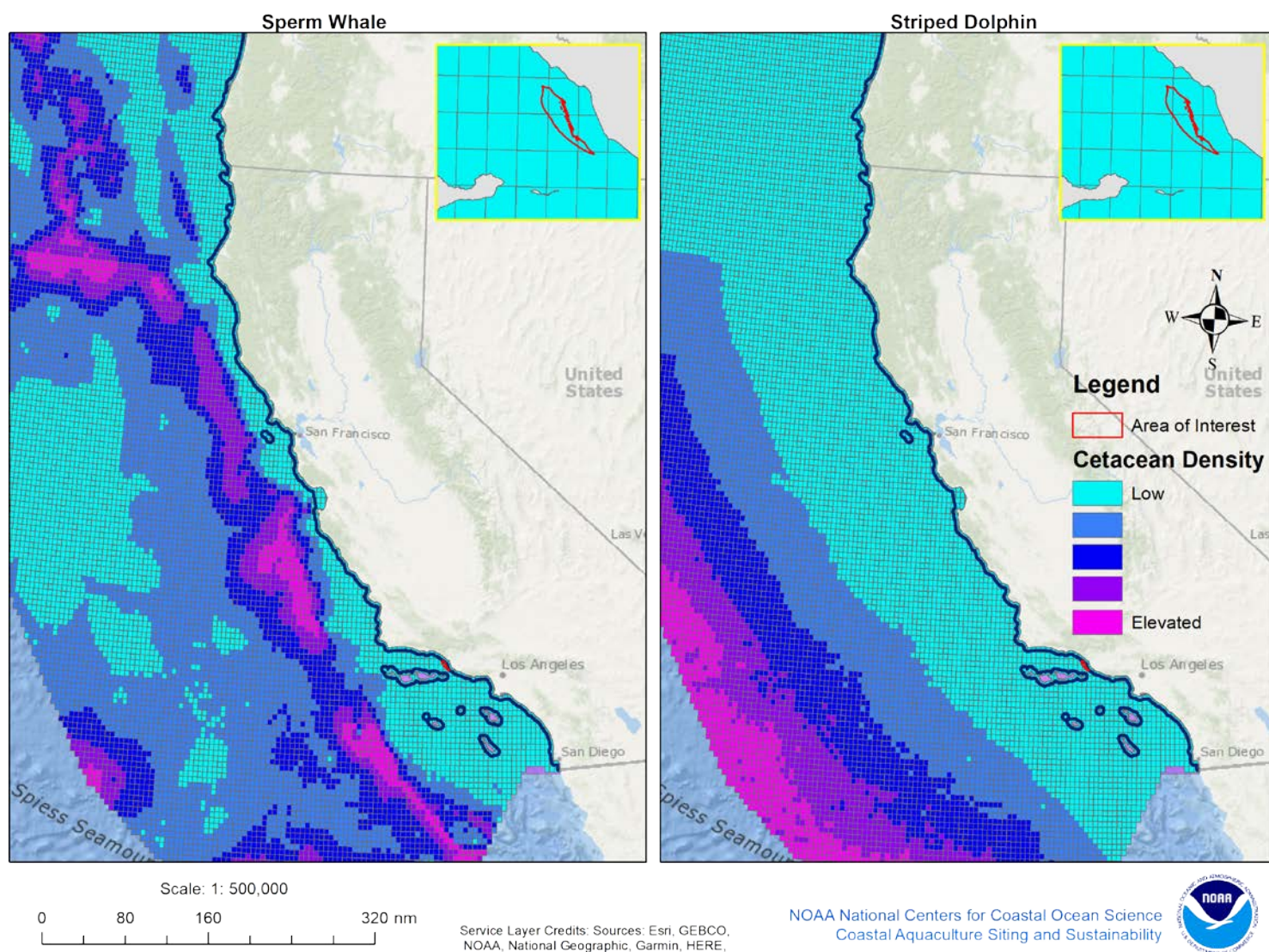
Appendix 8. Predicted habitat-based density and distribution models for multiple cetacean species, derived from NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service's CetSound database. Light blue colors indicate low predicted densities whereas purple colors indicate elevated predicted densities. Note that these maps represent predicted density, but do not necessarily correspond with actual distribution or definitive probability of encountering these species.



Appendix 9. Predicted habitat-based density and distribution models for multiple cetacean species, derived from NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service's CetSound database. Light blue colors indicate low predicted densities whereas purple colors indicate elevated predicted densities. Note that these maps represent predicted density, but do not necessarily correspond with actual distribution or definitive probability of encountering these species.



Appendix 10. Predicted habitat-based density and distribution models for multiple cetacean species, derived from NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service's CetSound database. Light blue colors indicate low predicted densities whereas purple colors indicate elevated predicted densities. Note that these maps represent predicted density, but do not necessarily correspond with actual distribution or definitive probability of encountering these species.



Appendix 11. Predicted habitat-based density and distribution models for multiple cetacean species, derived from NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service’s CetSound database. Light blue colors indicate low predicted densities whereas purple colors indicate elevated predicted densities. Note that these maps represent predicted density, but do not necessarily correspond with actual distribution or definitive probability of encountering these species.

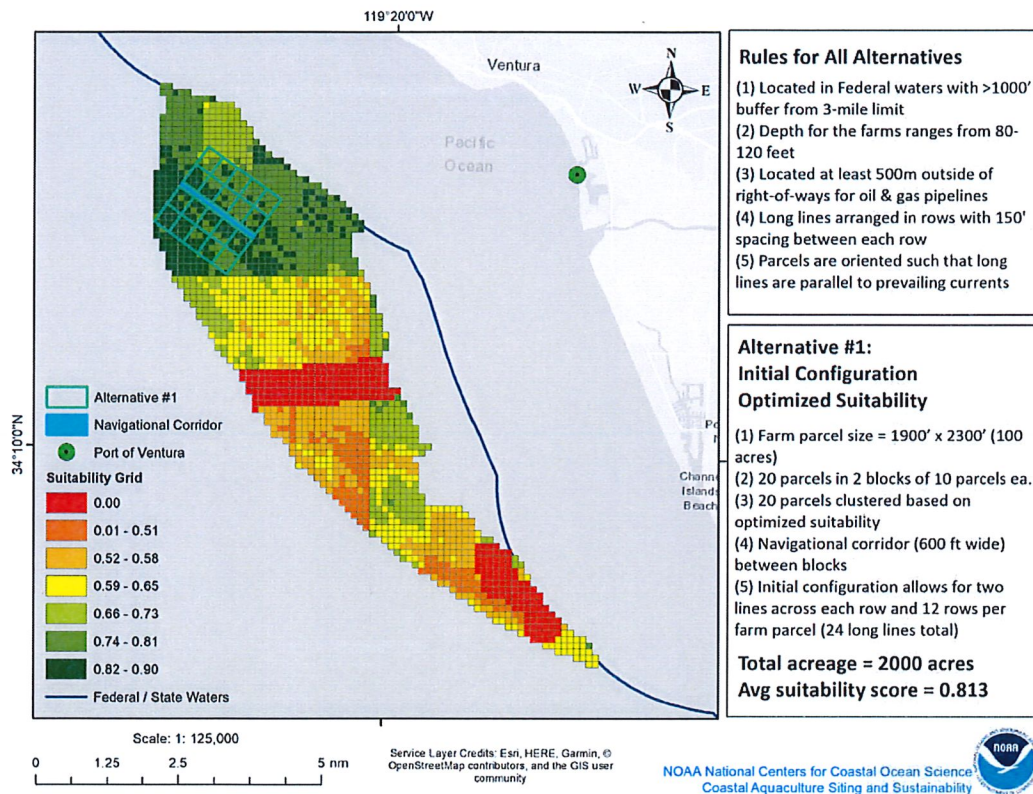


Figure 19. Alternative 1. The first alternative site for VSE was created using their initial configuration, in which the farm parcel design is a 1,900' by 2,300' plot. The alternative site contains 20 parcels, clustered into two blocks, with a 600' navigational corridor between the two blocks. The alternative site was positioned within the 'area of interest' based on optimizing suitability.

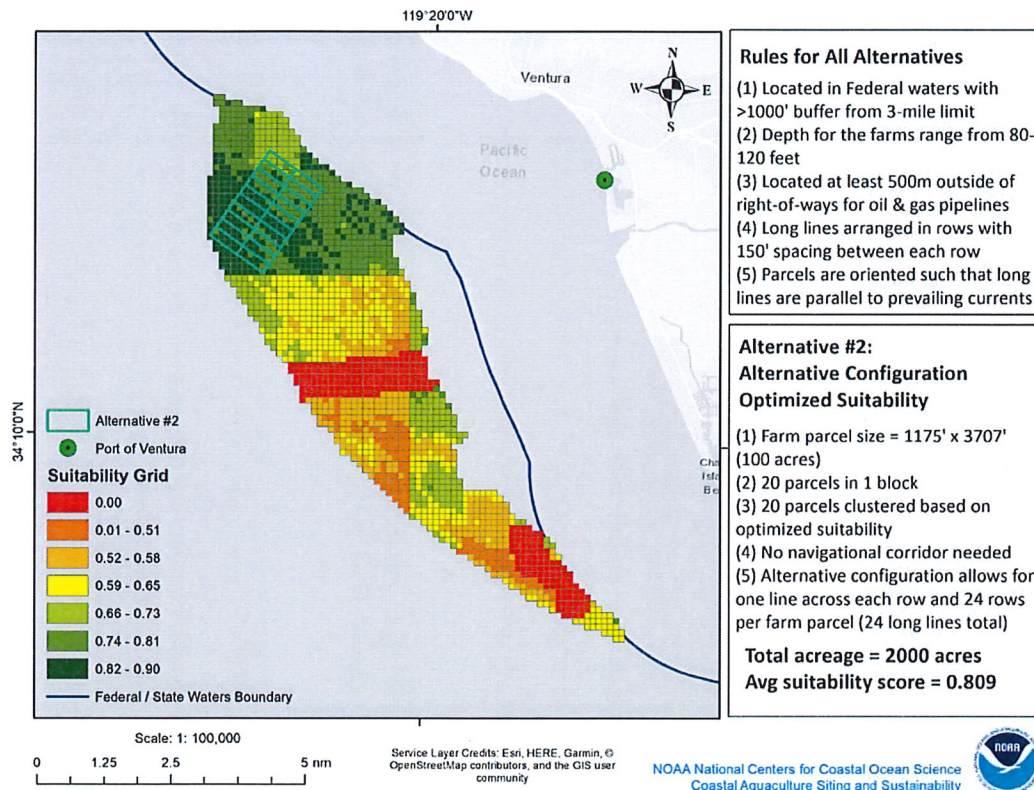


Figure 20. Alternative 2. The second alternative site for VSE was created using their alternative configuration, in which the farm parcel design is a 1,175' by 3,707' plot. The alternative site contains 20 parcels, clustered in one contiguous block. A navigational corridor was not needed since all parcels can be reached on the perimeter of the site. The alternative site was positioned within the 'area of interest' based on optimizing suitability.

17. DIRECTIONS TO THE SITE

The project will consist of twenty 100-acre plots (total of 2,000 acres) located in open federal waters of the Santa Barbara Channel (Channel) in the Southern California Bight (SCB), northwest of Ventura Harbor, with approximate depths ranging from between 80 to 114 feet below sea level. The plots are approximately 3.53 miles from the shore. The closest distance to the 3-mile nautical line is a minimum of 2,900 feet from the plots, with an average closest distance of over 3,000 feet. The closest distance to the City of Ventura limit is 4.5 miles. Ventura Harbor is 4.1 miles from the closest plot (8 miles in distance to the most distant plot). The lease sites are located on sandy bottom habitat outside of any rocky reef habitat, as evaluated in Gentry et al. 2017 and illustrated by NOAA United States West Coast nautical charts (NOAA 2017a).

18. Nature of Activity (Description of project, include all features)

The proposed project will establish a commercial offshore bivalve aquaculture operation based from the Ventura Harbor in Ventura, California, focused on the cultivation of Mediterranean mussels (*Mytilus galloprovincialis*).

See Supplemental Information Attachment Pages 1-8

19. Project Purpose (Describe the reason or purpose of the project, see instructions)

The proposed project is intended to create economic opportunities for community and marine stakeholders, produce a high value and sustainable seafood product, and provide additional economic revenue sources and commercial activity to maintain the Port of Ventura.

See supplemental Information Attachment Pages 9-17

USE BLOCKS 20-23 IF DREDGED AND/OR FILL MATERIAL IS TO BE DISCHARGED

20. Reason(s) for Discharge

Not Applicable

21. Type(s) of Material Being Discharged and the Amount of Each Type in Cubic Yards:

Type Amount in Cubic Yards	Type Amount in Cubic Yards	Type Amount in Cubic Yards
-------------------------------	-------------------------------	-------------------------------

22. Surface Area in Acres of Wetlands or Other Waters Filled (see instructions)

Acres
or
Linear Feet

23. Description of Avoidance, Minimization, and Compensation (see instructions)

In addition to the design features associated with minimizing impacts, the proposed project will incorporate a number of other resource protection measures that avoid and minimize impacts on the aquatic environment. These resource protection measures will include BMPs listed below. The proposed projects actions have the potential to degrade the biological quality (i.e. water quality, invasive species), as well as potentially cause navigational concerns. Absent mitigation and best management practices, project activities may have an adverse effect on the surrounding area. However, with the incorporation of the following BMPs, the effects would be mitigated to insignificant levels.
See supplemental Information Attachment Pages 18-32

24. Is Any Portion of the Work Already Complete? ☐ Yes ☒ No IF YES, DESCRIBE THE COMPLETED WORK

25. Addresses of Adjoining Property Owners, Lessees, Etc., Whose Property Adjoins the Waterbody (if more than can be entered here, please attach a supplemental list).

a. Address- N/A

City - State - Zip -

b. Address-

City - State - Zip -

c. Address-

City - State - Zip -

d. Address-

City - State - Zip -

e. Address-

City - State - Zip -

26. List of Other Certificates or Approvals/Denials received from other Federal, State, or Local Agencies for Work Described in This Application.

AGENCY	TYPE APPROVAL*	IDENTIFICATION NUMBER	DATE APPLIED	DATE APPROVED	DATE DENIED
CCC	Consistency Certificat	In Progress			

* Would include but is not restricted to zoning, building, and flood plain permits

27. Application is hereby made for permit or permits to authorize the work described in this application. I certify that this information in this application is complete and accurate. I further certify that I possess the authority to undertake the work described herein or am acting as the duly authorized agent of the applicant.

SIGNATURE OF APPLICANT

DATE

SIGNATURE OF AGENT

DATE

The Application must be signed by the person who desires to undertake the proposed activity (applicant) or it may be signed by a duly authorized agent if the statement in block 11 has been filled out and signed.

18 U.S.C. Section 1001 provides that: Whoever, in any manner within the jurisdiction of any department or agency of the United States knowingly and willfully falsifies, conceals, or covers up any trick, scheme, or disguises a material fact or makes any false, fictitious or fraudulent statements or representations or makes or uses any false writing or document knowing same to contain any false, fictitious or fraudulent statements or entry, shall be fined not more than \$10,000 or imprisoned not more than five years or both.

18. Nature of Activity

Through this application, the Ventura Port District (VPD) seeks to permit twenty 100-acre plots of ocean space for aquaculture production of the Mediterranean mussel (*Mytilus galloprovincialis*) via submerged longlines in federal waters within the Santa Barbara Channel, proximate to Ventura Harbor.¹

Project Description

The project consists of twenty 100-acre plots (total of 2,000 acres) located in open federal waters of the Santa Barbara Channel (Channel) in the Southern California Bight (SCB), northwest of Ventura Harbor, with approximate depths at the project site ranging from 80 to 114 feet below sea level, with an average depth of 98 feet. The plot locations are shown in Figure 1, with latitude and longitude coordinates for the outer corners indicated. Each of the 20 plots are 2,299.5 feet by 1,899.5 feet, for an average plot size of 100.27 acres. Each plot will contain up to 24 lines (12 end-to-end pairs), with each line consisting of 575 feet of backbone length and 250 feet of horizontal scope on each end. There will be a 50 foot setback on each end of the pairs (for a total of 100 feet of spacing between lines of adjacent parcels) and 50 foot spacing between the two center pins. Parallel lines will be spaced 150 feet apart, with a 125 foot setback at each of the long sides (for a total of 250 feet of spacing between lines of adjacent parcels).

The sites will be used for growing the Mediterranean mussel (*Mytilus galloprovincialis*) via submerged long lines (*see* Figure 2). The mussels will be grown and harvested by grower/producers who would sub-permit the plots from Ventura Port District, and the mussel product will be landed at Ventura Harbor.

Site Location

The project's twenty 100-acre plots are approximately 3.53 miles from the shore. The closest distance from the plots to the 3-mile nautical line is a minimum of 2,900 feet, with an average closest distance of over 3,000 feet. The closest distance from the growing area to the City of Ventura city limit is 4.5 miles. Ventura Harbor is 4.1 miles from the closest plot (8 miles from the most distant plot). The sub-permit sites are located on sandy bottom habitat outside of any

¹ The VPD also acknowledges the critical assistance of its other key participants who have contributed time, resources, and information to assist with this application, including the Cultured Abalone Farm, Coastal Marine Biolabs, and Ashworth Leininger Group, as well as other participants including Scripps Institution of Oceanography, University of California San Diego, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) Fisheries West Coast Region, Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution, the California Department of Fish and Wildlife (CDFW), and Marine Science Institute, Bren School of Environmental Science & Management, University of California Santa Barbara.

rocky reef habitat, as evaluated in Gentry et al. 2017 and illustrated by NOAA United States West Coast nautical charts (NOAA 2017a).

Site Selection

The project was initially proposed to be located in waters of the State of California, i.e., within the 3-mile limit. The VPD, in collaboration with its key participants (collectively the “VSE”) undertook extensive site selection public outreach that culminated in the decision to instead locate the project in federal waters so as to minimize conflicts with commercial halibut trawlers based in Ventura and Santa Barbara Harbors.

Site Selection Process Summary

The VSE team hosted a series of seven public educational workshops regarding the proposed project. (See <http://venturashellfishenterprise.com/index.html> - About VSE, scroll down to “Get Involved” and click on “Workshop Archive.”)

After these introductory workshops, VSE hosted three site selection workshops to engage with stakeholders to identify the location of the twenty 100-acre parcels within a broader area of interest identified through use of a spatial planning tool developed by researchers at University of California, Santa Barbara, Bren School of Environmental Science and Management (UCSB Bren School). While in-person workshop participation was strongly encouraged, individuals who were not able to attend the meetings were provided the opportunity to comment on site selection through a UCSB Bren School SeaSketch digital mapping and communication portal linked to the VSE website. Notice of the site selection workshops was mailed out to a list of over 500 commercial fishing vessel owners between Goleta and Port Hueneme identified by the California Department of Fish and Wildlife (CDFW); additionally, VSE coordinated with NOAA representatives and commercial fishermen to encourage their attendance. VSE also contacted all of the individuals who registered interest in the proposed project through the VSE website. During and after the site selection workshops the VPD Board of Port Commissioners received written and oral reports on the site selection process at four public meetings held in summer and fall of 2017.

The initial candidate area in state waters was selected by VSE based on marine spatial planning analysis prepared by the UCSB Bren School (Gentry et al., 2017). The site selection analysis included numerous factors related to the suitability of the candidate growing area for mussels; location in State waters near Ventura Harbor for product landing; avoidance of potential pollution sources; and avoidance of conflicts with existing subsurface leases for oil and gas pipelines, etc.

Through the stakeholder engagement process and consultation with its aquaculture specialist, Scott Lindell of Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution, it became clear that location of the project in State waters posed certain issues. Most importantly, VPD received information from local halibut trawlers that the proposed State waters candidate area was located in one of two areas statewide

designated by CDFW as halibut trawl grounds. Further, Mr. Lindell advised that a minimum 80' bottom depth (versus the initial criterion of 60' bottom depth) would reduce exposure to various mussel predator species (*e.g.*, diving ducks) and potential storm surge. Following a November 2017 public hearing, the VPD Board of Commissioners selected a federal waters alternative location, which was identified based on further refinement of the spatial planning analysis by the UCSB Bren School.

Subsequently, NOAA Fisheries Southwest District Aquaculture Coordinator, Diane Windham, connected VSE with NOAA's National Ocean Service staff, which undertook a second siting study focused on federal waters proximate to Ventura Harbor. (*See* "Coastal Aquaculture Siting and Sustainability Technical Report, Ventura Shellfish Enterprise: Aquaculture Siting Analysis Results" prepared by Coastal Aquaculture Siting and Sustainability Program, within the Marine Spatial Ecology Division of the National Centers for Coastal and Ocean Science, National Ocean Service, NOAA, dated September 6, 2018, copy attached.) The siting analysis represents an objective, data-driven approach to identify the locations within federal waters with the highest compatibility with the proposed project. The results of this siting analysis identify two alternative sites (CASS Report Alternatives 1 and 2) proximate to Ventura Harbor given equal consideration of existing use conflicts, including:

- Existing vessel traffic corridors,
- Oil and gas production,
- Commercial fishing (specifically trawl and squid fisheries), and
- Obstructions, including submerged cables and wrecks.

The two CASS Report Alternatives are both situated in the northern portion of the siting analysis study area, which was determined to have the smallest potential overlap with conflicting uses. The primary difference between the two CASS Report Alternative sites is the configuration of sub-permit areas (Figures 3 and 4). Importantly, the two sites overlap with the federal waters alternative site identified in the UCSB Bren School spatial planning analysis, indicating the area has been shown by two independent studies to have the fewest conflicts with other uses and sensitive environmental resources (Figure 5). Following a public hearing in September 2018, it is anticipated the VPD Board of Commissioners approved CASS Report Alternative 1)(also shown in Figure 1) as the preferred project site. CASS Report Alternative 2 (shown in Figure 4) is shown as an alternate site location.

Project Construction

Installation of anchors, longlines, and buoys will be performed by grower/producers in compliance with all permit requirements and VPD sub-permit conditions which will incorporate approved best management practices (BMPs). Submerged longlines consist of a horizontal structural header line, or "backbone," that is attached to the seafloor by helical screw anchors drilled into the sandy

bottom at each end and is marked and supported by a series of buoys along the central horizontal section, as shown in Figure 2. Helical screw anchors have been shown to exhibit superior holding power as compared to other anchoring systems and can be removed or cut below the surface at project decommissioning. Helical screw anchors for mussel farms in open ocean habitats have been installed all over the world, including offshore of Catalina Island, California. Helical screw anchors will be installed by a hydraulic drill with a drill head that operates from a rig lowered to the ocean floor. The helical screw anchors will be screwed approximately 10 to 20 feet deep into the sandy bottom ocean floor. Each 100-acre plot will contain up to 48 anchors for a total of 960 anchors at full project build out.

It is anticipated that the potential noise impacts from the installation of the sand screw anchors using a hydraulic drill will be minimal. The screw anchors are drilled into the seabed using a hydraulic auger controlled at the surface. The drill is submersible and is lowered with the anchor. Noise levels are very low in the water, with a relatively small (50 hp) hydraulic power pack on the installation vessel (Fielder Marine Services, New Zealand, pers.comm.). Rotation speeds are very low, which minimizes entanglement of marine species. The anchor installation disturbs less than 1 square meter of seabed on installation and once installed no rope or chain touches the sea floor, which also minimizes seabed disturbance (Fielder Marine Services, New Zealand, pers.comm.). Marine wildlife, especially cetaceans, is known to be sensitive to noise effects (e.g., NMFS 2007a). However, construction noise levels will be well within acceptable thresholds for both marine mammals and fish (ICF Jones & Stokes and Illingworth and Rodkin, Inc. 2009; NMFS 2007a). Due to the minimal noise level and area of disturbance on the sea floor, an action area of 100 feet is sufficient.

Buoys marking the corners of each parcel will identify the cultivation area for navigational safety and will comply with all regulations for height, illumination, and visibility, including radar reflection. As shown in Figure 2, permanent surface buoys for each longline will consist of two 16-inch surface corner buoys (one corner buoy supporting and marking either end of the backbone), as well as one 16-inch buoy supporting and marking the center pickup line, for a total of three surface buoys per longline. Simulated views of parcel arrays at the surface and underwater are provided in Figures 6 through 9. All surface buoys will be marked with the grower/producer name and phone number. Buoys attached to the central horizontal portion of the backbone line support the line, provide a means of lifting the backbone line to access the cultivation ropes, and determine the depth of the submerged backbone, which will vary seasonally from 15 to 45 feet below the surface. Additionally, a combination of surface and submerged buoys attached to the backbone line will be used during the mussel production cycle to maintain tension on the structural backbone line as the weight of the mussel crop increases. These will consist of 24-inch (or equivalent, with greater than 200 L buoyancy) buoys attached at required intervals along the

surface and connecting to the backbone line, in combination with smaller submerged buoys affixed directly to the backbone line. The combination of surface and submerged buoyancy is designed to create a tensioned but flexible structure that is capable of responding dynamically to surface waves and storms.

The longlines that will be utilized are thick (1-inch diameter), tensioned (to approximately 800 pounds) rope that is not conducive to wrapping around or entangling protected species. The longline configuration produces a fairly rigid tensioned structure from which the cultivation ropes, or “fuzzy ropes” are attached. Fuzzy ropes are characterized by extra filaments that provide settlement substrate for mussels to attach. Fuzzy ropes may be attached to and suspended from the backbone rope either as individual lengths or as a continuous looping single length that drapes up and down over the backbone. The length of each section or loop of fuzzy rope will be approximately 20 feet but the actual length depends on the lifting capacity of the servicing vessel. The length of the central horizontal section of backbone line will be approximately 575 feet, which will support approximately 8,000 feet of fuzzy cultivation line.

The shape of each 100-acre cultivation parcel will be a function of the geometry of the submerged backbone lines and anchoring system. Each horizontal section of the longline will be approximately 575 feet and will require an anchor scope of approximately 2.5 times depth. Therefore, in 100 feet of water depth, scope from the horizontal section of backbone to the helical screw anchor will require 250 feet on each end of the line, making a total length of 1,075 feet from anchor screw to anchor screw. A 100-acre parcel with rectangular dimensions of 1,899.5 feet by 2,299.5 feet will therefore accommodate up to 24 individual longlines (Figures 10 and 11). The submerged longline growing gear configuration will be specifically engineered for open ocean conditions with respect to size and strength of all lines, anchoring, hardware, and buoyancy.

Construction in each individual growing plot will take place only after VPD approval of a sub-permits (or other form of agreement) with the individual grower/producer. While project development is dependent on market demand, VPD estimates that full build out would occur within three to five years after project approval.

Project Operation/Cultivation Methods

The mussels will be grown and harvested by grower/producers under individual sub-permits (or other form of agreement) with VPD that incorporate all project permit conditions and BMPs. All grower/producers will be required to land their mussels at Ventura Harbor. Spat will be purchased from onshore hatcheries certified by CDFW. At the hatcheries, spat are settled on the fuzzy ropes, which is rope woven with additional loops of fiber to create additional settlement substrate and is standard industry practice. When the spat are firmly settled to the ropes, the ropes are covered with

cotton socking material to protect them from shaking off the ropes during transport to the offshore growing site and deployment. The socks hold the spat next to the rope while the mussels naturally attach with their byssal threads, by which time the cotton material naturally degrades. These ropes are then attached to the longlines and buoys, either as single sections of line or as a continuous looping strand attached in intervals.

The mussel grow-out ropes will grow to be stiff with attached mussels encasing the rope core, thus making them very unlikely sources of entanglement. As an additional precaution against entanglement, grow ropes will be attached to the head rope with a low-breaking-strength line, which will facilitate rapid detachment in the unlikely event of any interaction with the longline. To further minimize entanglement potential, a breakaway link will be installed between the surface buoys and vertical lines, similar to strategies used to mitigate potential entanglement in trap fisheries in the northeastern United States (NOAA 2008). Buoy lines between the surface and head rope are generally under tension partially equivalent to their full buoyancy and breakaway link ratings will be specific to buoy size.

Cultivated mussels grow by filtering naturally occurring phytoplankton from the ocean. Juvenile mussels will grow on lines until an intermediate size where the density of mussels on the fuzzy rope becomes limiting to further growth. At this point, a servicing vessel will lift the backbone line in order to access the fuzzy rope stocked with juvenile mussels and pull the fuzzy rope through vessel-based equipment designed to strip the mussels from the fuzzy rope, and then clean, separate, and grade the juvenile mussels by size. Juvenile mussels then will be restocked to clean fuzzy rope and covered with naturally-dissolving cotton socking at a reduced density for their second stage of grow out to market size. All these intermediate mussel-tending steps take place on the servicing vessel.

Maintenance and inspection of the longlines will be carried out at least on a monthly basis and consist of lifting the longlines out of the water and adding additional buoys as necessary to account for increased mussel weight. Inspections of the anchor ropes, anchors, and connecting ropes will be carried out monthly for the first two years following deployment, and in the event there are no marine wildlife entanglements within the first two years, may be reduced to quarterly inspections thereafter. Inspections can include a variety of techniques: recordings by depth/fish finder; remotely operated vehicle (ROV) surveys of lines; and/or monitoring performed by SCUBA divers.

Gear and planted ropes will be inspected regularly as part of a comprehensive monitoring plan, but generally the planted ropes will only be manipulated during initial stocking, intermediate harvest and restocking, and final harvest. Inspection will involve monitoring the all hardware and

rigging and surface buoys and their tension, and checking for escaped gear and potential entanglements. Examples of possible observations that would trigger concern and further investigation are (1) gaps or tangling of dropper ropes detected on depth finder or other structural anomalies, (2) fouling by objects or other marine debris detected in support buoys or buoy deployment lines, and (3) loss of function or damage to devices related to navigational safety.

Harvesting involves separating the mussels from the ropes, followed by cleaning, sorting, and bagging. When the mussels reach market size, which is expected to occur after about one year of total production time, the submerged backbone lines again will be lifted in order to access the fuzzy cultivation ropes, and mussels again will be stripped from the line, cleaned, and separated, and this time size-graded and bagged for landing at the Ventura Harbor as market-ready product. The bagged mussels will be transported to Ventura Harbor for offloading, sale, and distribution. All husbandry activities related to harvesting, grading, and restocking of mussels to cultivation lines will occur onboard the servicing vessel using specialized equipment for that purpose.

Watercraft used for planting, inspections, and harvesting will be home ported at Ventura Harbor. At full project build out 20 to 40 vessels will be traveling to the specific sub-permit sites to conduct these activities. The maximum distance traveled between the harbor and the farthest potential sub-permit area will be approximately 8 miles. Once constructed, it is projected that each sub-permit site will generate an estimated 150 trips per year to accomplish the tasks outlined above.

Landed product will comply with all testing and labeling regulations as part of the California Department of Public Health (CDPH) Shellfish Sanitation Plan and the National Shellfish Sanitation Program (NSSP) guidelines for shellfish grown in federal waters. NOAA-Seafood Inspection Program (NOAA-SIP), in collaboration with the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA), recently began the process of developing NSSP-compliant sanitation protocols for bivalve shellfish cultivated in federal waters.

Organization and Governance

VPD proposes to make mussel growing area sub-permits available to a variety of grower/producers, anticipated to include existing commercial fishermen, existing commercial shellfish businesses, and startups that otherwise would be disinclined to embark on the lengthy and expensive mandatory regulatory pathway. As a requirement of their participation, grower/producers will be obligated to operate under robust environmental monitoring guidelines and BMPs incorporated into the proposed project's entitlements. While all grower/producers will be held accountable for compliance with these requirements, VPD is ultimately responsible for compliance with all permit conditions and required BMPs. All grower/producer responsibilities would be spelled out as conditions in grower/producer sub-permits with VPD, thus establishing

VPD enforcement authority for those conditions. VPD anticipates further discussions with the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) concerning the proposed sub-permitting process once the USACE has had an opportunity to review the application.

Project Decommissioning

The project will include a decommissioning plan, which will provide for the removal of all equipment and structures in each sub-permit area associated with project activities when activities in that sub-permit are terminated. The decommissioning plan will be a requirement of each sub-permit. Financial assurances to guarantee implementation of the decommissioning plan will be required of each grower/producer and reviewed periodically.

19. Project Purpose

Objectives of the proposed project are:

1. To increase the supply of safe, sustainably produced, and locally grown shellfish while minimizing potential negative environmental impacts;
2. To enhance and sustain Ventura Harbor as a major west coast fishing port and support the local economy;
3. To provide economies of scale, pre-approved sub-permit area, and technical support to include small local producers who would not otherwise be able to participate in shellfish aquaculture;
4. To provide an entitlement and permitting template for aquaculture projects state-wide;
5. To enhance public knowledge and understanding of sustainable shellfish farming practices and promote community collaboration in achieving VSE objectives;
6. To advance scientific knowledge and state of the art aquaculture practices through research and innovation.

1. To increase the supply of safe, sustainably-produced, and locally-grown shellfish while minimizing potential negative environmental impacts

The proposed project will serve to diversify the catch and stabilize the commercial fishing fleet home-ported at Ventura Harbor. The proposed project also will provide a locally cultivated, sustainably raised food source, and significantly advance state and national goals and objectives for increased domestic aquaculture and a secure food supply. The proposed project is supported, in part, through the NOAA Sea Grant program, the goal of which is to contribute to “a safe, secure and sustainable supply of seafood to meet public demand.”

Ventura Harbor is home to one of the top fisheries off-loading harbors in the state. One of the core goals of the VSE project is to enhance the Ventura Harbor working waterfront with a sustainable and dependable seafood harvest. The project will help meet state and federal goals for the growth of domestic shellfish aquaculture to better serve the U.S. population demands for new, sustainably grown protein sources. This is consistent with the VPD’s goal of upgrading infrastructure, equipment and facilities for a modernized, efficient and safe working harbor. A 2007 California Sea Grant Extension Program report titled “Commercial Fisheries of the Santa Barbara Channel and Associated Infrastructure Needs” noted that diversification of fishing operations through the development of new fisheries could provide new business opportunities.

The proposed project offers a number of other benefits related to food supply, because at present the mussel market in the United States and locally is dominated by imports from Canada, Chile, New Zealand, and Europe. California is the third-largest consumer of shellfish in the United States, and current state production lags far behind demand. Shortfalls are met by importation,

which contributes to the state and national seafood deficit and increases our carbon footprint by the need to transport shellfish into the state from around the world.

This project will supply a locally grown mussel product to an established market with the potential for expansion. Mussels provide a high-protein, low-fat source of human nutrition. Compared with other cultivated protein sources (*e.g.*, beef, pork, chicken), mussels are a more environmentally sustainable food source, require no added feed or water, have significantly lower associated greenhouse gas emissions, and use ocean areas rather than land for production (see Table 1). The proposed project at build out would produce 9,000 to 11,000 tons of mussels for market per year. Further, by serving as a template for additional offshore shellfish-growing projects, this proposed project aims to increase the efficiency of shellfish permitting and thus provide a template to promote additional shellfish growing operations offshore of California.

Table 1
Comparison of Sustainability Indicators among Animal Production Systems

Animal Type	Food Conversion (kg feed/kg edible weight)	Protein Efficiency (%)	Nitrogen Emissions (kg/ton protein produced)	Phosphorous Emissions (kg/ton protein produced)	Land (tons edible product per HA)	Consumptive Freshwater Use (m³/ton)
Beef	31.7	5	1,200	180	0.24–0.37	15,497
Chicken	4.2	25	300	40	1.0–1.20	3,918
Pork	10.7	13	800	120	0.83–1.10	4,856
Finfish (average)	2.3	30	360	48	0.15–3.70	5,000*
Bivalve mollusks	Not fed	Not fed	-27	-29	0.28–20	0

Source: Aquaculture Workshop 2015.

Notes: kg = kilogram; HA = hectare; m³/ton = cubic meters per ton.

* Consumptive water use is difficult to compare across finfish aquaculture production systems because of variability in feed sources and depending on whether the system is freshwater or saltwater.

To minimize conflicts with other ocean uses and ensure location away from pollution sources, the proposed location was selected after multiple stakeholder workshops and consultations, noticed public meetings of the Ventura Port Commission, and utilization of two different marine spatial planning tools. (See “18. Nature of Activity” discussion.)

The proposed project is consistent with California's Aquaculture Development Act (California Public Resources Code, Sections 826–828), which encourages the practice of aquaculture to augment food supplies, expand employment, promote economic activity and protect and better use the land and water resources of the state, and Assembly Joint Resolution 43 (2014), wherein the State Legislature states its support “to protect existing shellfish beds and access to additional acreage for shellfish farming and restoration.” The proposed project is also consistent with NOAA's National Shellfish Initiative (NOAA 2013) and National Marine Aquaculture Policy (NOAA 2011), which seek to increase populations of bivalves in coastal waters through commercial aquaculture production and acknowledge the multiple benefits of shellfish aquaculture, including providing new jobs and business opportunities, meeting the growing demand for seafood, and providing habitat for important species. Finally, the proposed project furthers the goals of the National Ocean Policy Implementation Plan (National Ocean Council 2013), one of which is to increase efficiencies in the permitting process and encourage agency coordination to facilitate additional marine aquaculture development.

2. To enhance and sustain Ventura Harbor as a major west coast fishing port and support the local economy

The proposed project is very important to the future of Ventura Harbor. The harbor's status as a robust commercial fishing port is vital to VPD qualifying for USACE harbor dredging funds since the harbor is not a deep water port and does not house a U.S. Coast Guard station. Absent USACE dredging funds the harbor will silt up and close.

Integral to the VPD's mission is to provide a safe and navigable harbor that benefits fisherman. Included amongst the VPD's goals is to maintain and enhance a safe and navigable harbor by:

- Securing federal funding to support the USACE operation and maintenance program at the harbor federal entrance;
- Dredging the Inner Harbor and preserving infrastructure;
- Providing superior Harbor Patrol, Maintenance, and related Port District services;
- Upgrading infrastructure, equipment and facilities for a modernized, efficient and safe working harbor

To meet its mission and goals the VPD allocates annual revenues to operations, maintenance and capital improvements. In FY18-19 operating revenues were approximately \$10 million and operating expenses were approximately \$8.7 million. However capital improvements totaled \$5.2M, causing the VPD to utilize approximately \$3.9 million in unrestricted reserve funds. Due to VPD reserve fund policies, this is not sustainable at this level annually. This means that some combination of increased revenues or revenue sources and alternative methods to finance some capital infrastructure projects is

necessary. Specific to the commercial fishing industry, the VSE project can play a vital role in VPD annual revenue generation that can be leveraged for the financing of commercial fishing infrastructure while creating other positive economic impacts and maintaining dredging priorities as discussed further below.

The VPD, which is an independent special district, receives approximately 88-90% of its revenues from commercial leases, boat slip fees and fish off-loading charges. The remaining funds are local property tax revenues accounting for approximately 10-12% of revenues. These property tax revenues have consistently been allocated to public safety for Harbor Patrol but do not cover these operational costs. Additionally, the VPD is expanding Harbor Patrol operations to “24-7” due to increased demand for services which further increases annual operating expenses for public safety functions.

Dredging

The VPD is completely dependent upon the USACE for the annual maintenance of the harbor’s federal entrance system, and the unloading of commercially harvested seafood at the harbor is a primary justification for this federal support. Without diversified fisheries delivering consistent fish offloading necessary to justify federal funding to USACE for Ventura Harbor dredging, the Harbor risks future entrance closures.

The entrance system includes the following components:

1. A 1,750 foot entrance channel
2. A 600,000 cubic yard sand trap
3. A 1,800 foot offshore breakwater
4. A 1,550 foot north jetty
5. A 250 foot middle jetty
6. A 600 foot south beach groin

The annual maintenance dredging of the entrance channel and sand trap currently require between \$5,000,000 and \$7,000,000 per year. The cost of maintaining the rock structures (i.e. breakwater, jetties and groin), while not occurring on an annual basis, has nonetheless averaged about \$1,280,000 per year over the last 15 years. Were it not for the federal assumption of these maintenance needs, the harbor’s federal entrance channel would simply shoal to closure, and all of the maritime interests in the harbor, both commercial and recreational would lose ocean access.

In order to avoid that possibility, in March 2012, when federal funding was inadequate for the USACE to complete the necessary dredging of the harbor entrance area, the VPD was compelled to utilize \$1,500,000 of its limited reserves to finish the dredging. It was only possible for the VPD to take that

action, however, because the USACE had already absorbed the contractor's \$1,000,000 equipment mobilization cost. Even under such limited conditions, it is simply not sustainable for the VPD to financially support the federal dredging program.

Infrastructure

One of the core goals of the VSE project is to enhance the Ventura Harbor working waterfront with a sustainable and dependable seafood harvest. This is consistent with the VPD's goal of upgrading infrastructure, equipment and facilities for a modernized, efficient and safe working harbor. The existing commercial fishing businesses generate direct revenue to the VPD in the form of commercial boat slips and fish offloading fees. These fees generate approximately \$1.2M in annual revenue that supports marina operations and some infrastructure needs. The commercial boat slip fees are highly dependent upon a stable commercial fishing fleet, which depends largely upon the ongoing success of the California Market Squid industry along with other smaller fisheries. This industry has proven resilient but unpredictable from year to year due to a variety of impacts from weather, water temperatures, and market forces, including more recently imposed tariffs on international seafood products. For example, the VPD has had years where 60 million pounds or more in squid was offloaded at the Harbor while other years the VPD has had less than 20 million pounds offloaded at the Harbor. The VPD's off-loading fees are generated largely by the squid industry; however, these fees only represent 10% of the \$1.2M in total revenue identified above (approximately \$120,000 annually).

The VPD, as part of its annual budget, prepares a 5-year capital improvement plan (CIP) which anticipates large scale projects that are necessary to maintain a modernized, efficient and safe working harbor. These needs are particularly pressing given the harbor's age, with many facilities 35-55 years in age. The scale of these projects necessitates capital financing, since annual revenues are largely utilized for ongoing operations and pay just a portion of capital improvements.

For example, a current project receiving capital financing is the Village Commercial dock replacement. This \$4.6 million project seeks to replace the dilapidated dock system, which is used primarily by 42 purse seiners and related commercial fishing vessels such as 20 light boats for the California Market Squid fleet. The project financing requires that ongoing annual VPD revenues be used to support the debt service.

In the next five to ten years, the VPD will need to finance a substantial amount of new infrastructure construction and likely dredge the inner harbor for commercial fishing boat needs and revetment maintenance, neither of which is a USACE-funded activity because it is not part of the Harbor's federal entrance. Other projects may include future replacement of an older fisheries building, reconstruction of a fish pier, replacement or addition of fish offloading cranes, modernization of fish handling facilities, worksite improvements, fish equipment storage and fleet parking needs. It is conceivable that

the VPD could finance \$20M or more in commercial fishing infrastructure costs to support ongoing operational needs. This is in addition to the \$4.6 million in debt discussed above. For illustrative purposes only, if the VPD were to borrow \$20 million over 30 years at current interest rates, the annual debt service costs to the VPD for this debt would be approximately \$1.2 million.

The VPD is subject to significant due diligence and financial “tests” in order to borrow capital project funds. While the VPD continues to meet these borrowing requirements, and maintains a strong financial position, it is clear that the VPD must seek to diversify its fisheries to support commercial fishing operational and infrastructure costs. Annual boat slip and offloading fees are used to fund ongoing fisheries and marina operations but do not provide the necessary funding to complete large-scale capital projects. Thus, the implementation of new fisheries and resulting revenues is of major importance to the VPD.

The VSE project anticipates wholesale market values of \$2.76M per 100-acre parcel or \$55.2M at full build-out of 20, 100-acre parcels. Many factors will ultimately determine actual revenue, with the most critical factor being the size of the approved project, as well as growing conditions, operational interruptions, time period to full build out, market conditions, project and operational costs, etc. However, in utilizing these initial projections the VPD is evaluating potential revenue sharing models as discussed below.

The VPD is evaluating a new revenue approach with the VSE project. The VPD will be the project permittee. As such, the VPD may consider implementing a participation fee (e.g. 3-5% of gross wholesale value) for future private grower producers, rather than just rely on fish offloading and slip fees to help fund infrastructure needs. For example, an operating fee of 3% of the gross wholesale value at full build-out as described above could generate annual revenues to the VPD of approximately \$1.65M. These funds generated will be used to support the VPD’s project administration costs and could help support future debt issued for commercial fishing infrastructure (e.g. \$1.2M annual debt service as described above). A project of a lesser scale would directly impact future VPD annual revenues that can be used in part to support the financing of ongoing commercial fishing infrastructure and harbor needs.

3. To provide economies of scale, pre-approved sub-permit area, and technical support to include small producers who would not otherwise be able to participate in shellfish aquaculture

Designed economies of scale will maximize the previously described direct and indirect secondary benefits of the proposed project. Significant expenses are associated with permitting,

environmental review, compliance with shellfish health regulations, and environmental monitoring; therefore, leasing and permitting the proposed project as one will provide economies of scale and eliminate a significant impediment to market diversification and participation by small shellfish companies or new investors. By permitting all the growing areas as a single proposed project, individual grower/producers benefit from the collective upfront permitting efforts of VPD.

As a specific example of a regulatory economy of scale, monitoring requirements such as implementation of a sediment quality monitoring plan are more efficiently handled at the VPD project scale as opposed to separate efforts by individual grower/producers. VPD, acting as the responsible party for BMP compliance, can use collective funds to monitor sediment conditions within the larger project area, offering technical sampling and reporting consistency, along with facilitating collection of a larger data set, which will offer greater opportunities to track overall project impacts. Collective sampling and reporting will also yield efficiencies in compliance review for the agencies, as VPD can act as a clearinghouse for information, handling the initial screening and vetting of information before it is transmitted to the appropriate regulatory agencies.

Project grower/producers will have access to a pooled, centralized and comprehensive monitoring and reporting program for all the growing plots. All necessary permits and entitlements will already have been obtained by VPD, making participation by the grower/producer “turn-key.” The costs to the grower/producer associated with ongoing water quality sampling and monitoring will be reduced by the efficiency of a centralized pooled program, which will in turn reduce operating costs and increase the direct benefit to the grower/producer.

Further, grower/producers will also have access to technical expertise and the accepted BMPs developed through the permitting process and described below. Similarly, grower/producers will enjoy access to centralized marketing and branding of a Ventura-specific premium seafood product grown and harvested in the proposed area.

Each of these elements of the project design contributes cumulatively to a total package, which in turn contributes positively, and materially to the ongoing operational health and vitality of the Ventura Harbor community. The costs associated with the proposed project (i.e. permitting and monitoring) would be too high for a small operation. In order for the sub-permits to be affordable for individual grower/producers, the proposed project must be a large scale project.

4. To provide an entitlement and permitting template for aquaculture projects state-wide

A major goal of the proposed project is delineation of a streamlined strategic permitting pathway that will not only facilitate the establishment of a Ventura Harbor-based shellfish operation promoting sustainable economic development, but that will more generally serve as a model to

help other entities address regulatory barriers and planning challenges that currently create impediments to the expansion of the shellfish aquaculture industry in California.

The proposed project is a unique approach to developing environmentally and economically sustainable shellfish commerce with product landed at the Ventura Harbor. This initiative is novel in several ways.

- The project proposes to produce bivalve shellfish in the offshore marine environment using cultivation practices that, although well-established worldwide, are in their infancy in the United States, particularly on the West Coast.
- The proposed project is a cooperative and collaborative effort taking place in an open-source format with state and federal regulators to establish a template for additional future shellfish growing operations in California.
- The proposal to permit a group of twenty 100-acre growing plots allows for participation by potential grower/producers who might otherwise be precluded from participation in aquaculture because of the significant regulatory burden of obtaining the required government approvals.
- The scale of the proposed project allows the individual grower/producers to benefit from centralized environmental monitoring, product safety testing, and product marketing.
- This proposed project as it is scaled will bolster the working waterfront in Ventura Harbor, providing economic benefits to VPD, its tenants, and the community.

The proposed project seeks to significantly improve the interagency review and permitting process for offshore shellfish aquaculture and create a comprehensive and efficient permitting process that is cost effective for both review agencies and applicant alike. In doing so, the overarching objective is to establish a viable and replicable permitting pathway model that satisfies the requirements of the review and permitting agencies and may be used by any prospective shellfish grower/producers to facilitate project design and aid in the evaluation of future offshore aquaculture proposals.

5. To enhance public knowledge and understanding of sustainable shellfish farming practices and promote community collaboration in achieving VSE objectives

Realizing the vision of an improved permitting process requires coordinated planning among all stakeholders to attain the full environmental and economic benefits. VPD and key VSE participants are committed to transparency, open communication, and comprehensive public education and outreach efforts. To this end, VPD and key VSE participants hosted an ongoing

series of informational public meetings to discuss the social, economic, environmental, scientific, and technological variables encompassed by the proposed project. These interactive, workshop-style meetings provided a forum for open dialog among all interested members of the general public, state and federal agency representatives, shellfish industry leaders, and environmental and scientific leaders to discuss the policy, planning, and scientific issues surrounding the establishment of a Ventura Harbor-based offshore shellfish aquaculture operation. This was a critical first step toward productive collaboration and ultimately, overall project success.

6. To advance scientific knowledge and state of the art aquaculture practices through research and innovation

The project is envisioned to include both research and education components. The project includes as additional participants, researchers and educators with the following institutions:

- UCSB Bren School
- University of California, San Diego, Scripps Institution of Oceanography
- Woods Hole Oceanographic Institute
- NOAA Fisheries West Coast Region

The project will serve an in situ working laboratory for improving shellfish aquaculture techniques and will be used as an open-water classroom. Qualified researchers affiliated with universities (i.e., UCSB Bren School, or University of Southern California, etc.), or qualified marine research institutes (i.e., Woods Hole Oceanographic Institute, Scripps Institution of Oceanography, etc.) will have access to aquaculture plots to conduct research and monitoring approved by the VPD; however, access may be limited in certain circumstances to respect grower/producer proprietary data or technology or to accommodate a grower/producer's operational and logistical needs in operating the farm. VPD will review and approve research projects in consultation with USACE, NMFS, NOAA, and any affected grower/producers. Grower/producers will be fairly compensated for the use of their vessels, equipment, and fair market value of any mussels produced or generated as part of approved research projects.

23. Description of Avoidance, Minimization, and Compensation

Avoidance of User Conflicts

As described previously, the size of the proposed project was determined based on needing to meet the project objectives, primarily Objectives 2 and 3:

2. To enhance and sustain Ventura Harbor as a major west coast fishing port and support the local economy;
3. To provide economies of scale, pre-approved sub-permit area, and technical support to include small local producers who would not otherwise be able to participate in shellfish aquaculture.

To meet its mission and goals the VPD allocates annual revenues to operations, maintenance and capital improvements. As stated in Section 19, Project Purpose, the VPD had a negative cash flow of approximately \$3.9 million in FY18-19, which was funded by use of unrestricted reserves, but is not sustainable at this level annually. As such, a combination of increased revenues or revenue sources and alternative methods to finance some capital infrastructure projects is necessary. Specific to the commercial fishing industry, the VSE project can play a vital role in VPD's annual revenue generation that can be leveraged for the financing of commercial fishing infrastructure while creating other positive economic impacts and maintaining dredging priorities. *See* Section 19 for further discussion of these issues.

There is a strong nexus between the continued receipt of federal support and the vitality of the harbor's commercial fishing operations and landings. In order to ensure that dredging continues, the harbor needs to increase the tonnage landed at Ventura Harbor in a sustainable manner. As other forms of commercial fishing are not currently a viable or sustainable option, the proposed project will significantly increase and diversify the catch landed at Ventura Harbor. A smaller scale fishery is unlikely to provide enough tonnage to ensure dredging continues.

Similarly, it is not feasible to provide economies of scale to small, local producers without a large scale operation. The operation costs, such as monitoring, permitting, and technical support, would be far too high with a smaller size. In order to have a sustainable fishing operation with a recognizable product, the proposed project needs to be a larger operation.

Siting Analysis

Once the size of the proposed project was determined, spatial planning guided the VPD in determining which area was most suitable for longline mussel cultivation with the lowest impact on existing marine uses. The initial candidate area in state waters was selected by VSE with the assistance of analysis prepared by the UCSB Bren School (using SeaSketch software), and focused on the Southern California Bight. The factors evaluated in the analysis included suitability of the candidate growing area for mussels considering water depth and ocean bottom; location in State waters near Ventura Harbor for product landing; avoidance of potential pollution sources; and avoidance of conflicts with existing subsurface leases for oil and gas pipelines, etc. The report identified areas where conflicts with or impacts by aquaculture development had the potential to affect stakeholders, the environmental health of the marine benthos, quality of ocean views, and the risk of disease spread among fish farms. Thousands of spatial plans were considered. The spatial plans indicated that for various locations within the Southern California Bight, mussel aquaculture can achieve considerable value while minimizing impacts to the existing sectors (0-5% impact). As a result of the UCSB Bren School spatial planning analysis, eight SeaSketch alternatives were identified, including an alternative in federal waters.

- SeaSketch Alternative 1 – 20 lease sites located along the 80' contour at 45-degree angle
- SeaSketch Alternative 2 – 20 lease sites along 80' contour with contiguous straight-line outer edge
- SeaSketch Alternative 3 – 20 lease sites along 80' contour with 2X2 configuration extending toward the middle of candidate area
- SeaSketch Alternative 4 – 20 lease sites along 3nm State waters line, six sites south of Pitas Pt. extended towards the middle of the candidate area
- SeaSketch Alternative 5 – 20 lease sites that follows 3 nm line intuitively
- SeaSketch Alternative 6 – 20 lease sites at 3nm line arranged in a 2X2 configuration
- SeaSketch Alternative 7 – 20 lease sites intuitively following the 3nm State waters line in a 2X2 configuration
- SeaSketch Alternative 8 – 20 lease sites outside of the 3nm State waters line, in Federal waters, arranged in two, ten parcel 2X2 configurations slightly offset.

The VSE team established criteria on which to evaluate and prioritize each siting alternative. As a result, the VSE team constructed a siting decision matrix to quantify the benefits of each potential siting configuration, and assist the VPD Board of Commissioners in its decision-making process. The stakeholder engagement process supported the identification of key factors upon which to assist siting configuration decision-making. Each of the criteria was assigned a weight based on perceived relative importance to achieving optimal operational capacity and minimizing potential user conflicts and environmental impacts. Siting alternatives were then scored using a rating system that corresponds to preferences identified by the VSE team. These criteria included:

- Approximate water depth
- Potential adverse water pollution sources

- Potential visual effects from shore
- Potential interaction with commercial and recreational fishing interests
- Subleasing or sub-permitting complexities
- Potential overlap with subsurface leases
- Environmental review complexity
- Contiguous siting
- Distance from Harbor

Through the stakeholder engagement process and consultation with its aquaculture specialist, Scott Lindell of Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution, it became clear that location of the project in State waters posed certain issues. Most importantly, VSE received information from local halibut trawlers that the proposed State waters candidate area was located in one of two areas statewide designated by CDFW as halibut trawl grounds. Further, Mr. Lindell advised that a minimum 80' bottom depth (versus the initial criterion of 60' bottom depth) would reduce exposure to various mussel predator species (*e.g.*, diving ducks) and potential storm surge. Following a November 2017 public hearing, the VPD Board of Commissioners selected a federal waters alternative (SeaSketch Alternative 8) location.

Subsequently, NOAA Fisheries Southwest District Aquaculture Coordinator, Diane Windham, connected VSE with NOAA's National Ocean Service staff, which undertook a second siting study focused on federal waters proximate to Ventura Harbor. (*See* "Coastal Aquaculture Siting and Sustainability Technical Report, Ventura Shellfish Enterprise: Aquaculture Siting Analysis Results" prepared by Coastal Aquaculture Siting and Sustainability Program, within the Marine Spatial Ecology Division of the National Centers for Coastal and Ocean Science, National Ocean Service, NOAA, dated September 6, 2018, copy attached.) The siting analysis represents an objective, data-driven approach to identify the locations within federal waters with the highest compatibility with the proposed project. The results of this siting analysis identify two alternative sites proximate to Ventura Harbor given equal consideration of existing use conflicts, including:

- Designated shipping fairways,
- Areas of high vessel density and wrecks and obstructions,
- Sensitive habitats,
- Military uses,
- Existing vessel traffic corridors,
- Oil and gas production,
- Commercial fishing (specifically trawl and squid fisheries), and
- Obstructions, including submerged cables and wrecks.

Other important considerations were the distance from Ventura Harbor and depth (25-37m). Slightly less influential parameters included wind speed and direction, wave height, surface current, and chlorophyll *a*.

The two CASS Report Alternatives are both situated in the northern portion of the siting analysis study area, which was determined to have the smallest potential overlap with conflicting uses. The primary difference between the two sites is the configuration of sub-permit areas (Figures 3 and 4). In CASS Report Alternative 1, each sub-permit area has two shorter lines in parallel, and is represented in Figure 3. CASS Report Alternative 2, shown in Figure 4, was designed as a longer “stack” of single lines within each sub-permit area, which was found to be less flexible. Since varying oceanic patterns may necessitate more design flexibility, CASS Report Alternative 1 was determined to be the most compatible configuration. CASS Report Alternative 1 will have 20 plots, each with a dimension of 2,299.5 feet by 1,899.5 feet, and an average water depth of 98 feet.

Importantly, the two CASS Report Alternative sites overlap with the federal waters alternative site (SeaSketch Alternative 8) identified in the UCSB Bren School spatial planning analysis, indicating the area has been shown by two independent studies to have the fewest conflicts with other uses and sensitive environmental resources (Figure 5). Following a public hearing in September 2018, it is anticipated the VPD Board of Commissioners approved CASS Report Alternative 1 (also shown in Figure 1) as the preferred project site. CASS Report Alternative 2 (shown in Figure 4) is shown as an alternate site location.

Measures to minimize impacts to the waters of the U.S.

The proposed project has been designed to minimize direct and indirect impacts to waters of the U.S. to the maximum extent practicable through implementation of the following measures. Please see Table 2 for details of the BMPs, the responsible party, and the enforcing agency of each measure.

Measures to minimize debris and impacts to water quality

1. Sediment Quality Monitoring Plan. A Sediment Quality Monitoring Plan shall be developed requiring monitoring of sediment conditions within the project area, including monitoring the quantity, type, and distribution of biological materials (such as shellfish, shell material, and fouling organisms) that accumulate on the seafloor. Monitoring will also include an evaluation of any changes to oxygen demand of benthic infaunal and epifaunal communities, and changes to the chemical and biochemical conditions of seafloor sediments along with a description of performance standards to meet.

If performance standards are not met, corrective actions will be outlined. The Plan will include reporting requirements, including annual report submittals to NOAA and NMFS for review. If performance standards are met for a period of time, the plan will provide for appropriately scaling down monitoring and intervals over time.

2. Spill Prevention and Response. Discharges of feed, pesticides, or chemicals (including antibiotics and hormones) in ocean waters are prohibited. Fuel, lubricants and chemicals must be labeled, stored and disposed of in a safe and responsible manner, and marked with warning signs. Precautions shall be taken to prevent spills, fires and explosions, and procedures and supplies shall be readily available to manage chemical and fuel spills or

leaks. Each grower/producer shall comply with the Spill Prevention and Response Plan (SPRP) for vessels and work barges that will be used during project construction and operations. Each grower/producer operating in the project area shall be trained in, and adhere to, the emergency procedures and spill prevention and response measures specified in the SPRP during all project operations. The SPRP shall provide for emergency response and spill control procedures to be taken to stop or control the source of the spill and to contain and clean up the spill. The SPRP shall include, at a minimum: (a) identification of potential spill sources and quantity estimates of a project specific reasonable worst case spill; (b) identification of prevention and response equipment and measures/procedures that will be taken to prevent potential spills and to protect marine and shoreline resources in the event of a spill. Spill prevention and response equipment shall be kept onboard project vessels at all times; (c) a prohibition on at-sea vessel or equipment fueling/refueling activities; and (d) emergency response and notification procedures, including a list of contacts to call in the event of a spill; (e) assurance that all hydraulic fluid to be used for installation, maintenance, planting, and harvesting activities shall be vegetable based.

3. Aquaculture Gear Monitoring and Escapement Plan. Include in overall management plan an aquaculture gear monitoring and escapement plan. Any farm gear that has broken loose from the farm location shall be retrieved. The farm site shall be visited at minimum twice per month to examine the aquaculture gear for potential loss or non-compliant deployment, including inspections for fouling organisms. Any organisms that have a potential to cover the sea floor will be removed and disposed of at an identified upland facility. A Marine Debris Management Plan shall also be prepared that includes (a) a plan for permanently marking all lines, ropes, buoys, and other facility infrastructure and floating equipment with the name and contact information of the grower/producer; (b) a description of the extent and frequency of maintenance operations necessary to minimize the loss of materials and equipment to the marine environment resulting from breakages and structural failures; and (c) a description of the search and cleanup measures that would be implemented if loss of shellfish cultivation facility materials, equipment, and/or infrastructure occurs.
4. Decommissioning Plan. A decommissioning plan for the timely removal of all shellfish, structures, anchoring devices, equipment, and materials associated with the shellfish cultivation facility and documentation of completion of removal activities will be a requirement of each permit or sub-permit. Financial assurances to guarantee implementation of the plan will be in place and reviewed periodically.

Measures to prevent spread of invasive species

1. Cultivation of Spat Offsite. Only hatchery-reared mussel spat grown at a facility certified by CDFW will be used in order to ensure that spat are free of introduced invasive species, parasites, and pathogens; however, natural mussel spat collected on farm grown-out lines and buoys may also be harvested and cultivated.

2. Invasive Species. Grower/producers operating in the project area shall be required to receive training from NMFS to identify potential invasive species and how to properly dispose of such invasive species if discovered.

Measures to prevent navigational impacts

1. Update NOAA Charts. VPD to submit to the NOAA Office of Coast Survey: (a) the geographical coordinates of the facility boundaries obtained using a different geographic position unit or comparable navigational equipment; (b) as-built plans of the facility and associated buoys and anchors; (c) each grower/producer's point of contact and telephone number; and (d) any other information required by the NOAA Office of Coast Survey to accurately portray the location of the shellfish cultivation facility on navigational charts.
2. Notice to Mariners. No less than 15-days prior to the start of in-water activities associated with the installation phase of the project, VPD shall submit to (a) the U.S. Coast Guard (for publication in a Notice to Mariners); and (b) the harbormasters (for posting in their offices of public noticeboards), notices containing the anticipated start date of installation, the anticipated installation schedule, and the coordinates of the installation sites. During installation, VPD shall also make radio broadcast announcements to the local fishers' emergency radio frequency that provide the current installation location and a phone number that can be called for additional information.

Measures to prevent impacts to threatened or endangered species

The enclosed Biological Assessment evaluates the potential effects of the VSE project on federally protected species. In addition to the BMPs identified below, the Biological Assessment identifies certain design features that minimize potential impacts, including marine mammal entanglement. With the incorporation of appropriate avoidance and minimization measures, a preliminary determination has been made that the project may affect, but is not likely to adversely affect any federally-listed threatened or endangered species, or cause adverse modification to federally designated critical habitat.

1. Marine Wildlife Entanglement Plan. No less than once per month, each grower/producer operating on a VPD lease shall visually inspect all ropes, and equipment via depth/fish finders to determine if any entanglement of a marine mammal has occurred and to ensure that (a) no lines have been broken, lost or removed; (b) all longlines, anchor lines, and buoy lines remain taught and in good working condition; and (c) any derelict fishing gear or marine debris that collects in the growing gear is removed and disposed of at an identified onshore facility. All equipment and materials accidentally released or found to be missing from the facility during monthly inspections, including buoys, floats, lines, ropes, chains, cultivation trays, wires, fasteners, and clasps, shall be searched for, collected, properly disposed of onshore, and documented in the annual inspection report. Monitoring shall occur monthly for the first two years following deployment and, in the event that there are

no marine wildlife entanglements within the first two years, may be reduced to quarterly inspections thereafter.

Inspections shall include recordings by depth/fish finder or ROV surveys of lines and/or monitoring performed by SCUBA divers. Recorded video shall be provided along with the annual report described above. Any maintenance issues including wear, loosening, or fatigue of materials shall be remedied as soon as possible. All incidents of observed whale entanglement shall be immediately reported to SOS WHALe. Any other marine wildlife (i.e., other marine mammals, turtles) observed to be entangled will be immediately reported to NOAA Fisheries Marine Mammal Stranding Network Coordinator, West Coast Region, Long Beach Office. Only personnel who have been authorized by NOAA Fisheries and who have training, experience, equipment, and support will attempt to disentangle marine wildlife. If possible, the grower/producer shall document and photograph entangled wildlife and the entangling gear material.

2. Predator Control. Potential predator species will be identified. Specified humane methods of predator deterrence will be utilized, favoring non-lethal methods. No controls, other than non-lethal exclusion, shall be applied to species that are listed as threatened or endangered.
3. Marine Wildlife Observer. A Marine Wildlife Observer shall be present on each project construction vessel during all construction activities, including the installation of long lines and anchoring systems. The observer shall monitor and record the presence of all marine wildlife (marine mammals and sea turtles) within 100 yards of the work area. The observer shall have the authority to halt operations if marine wildlife are observed or anticipated to be near a work area and construction activities have the potential to result in injury or entanglement of marine wildlife. In addition, all work (including vessel motors) will be halted if a cetacean is observed within the monitoring area or if a pinniped or sea turtle is observed within 50 yards of the work area. Work may commence after the observed individuals have moved out of the monitoring area.

Observers' reports on marine mammal monitoring during construction activities shall be prepared and submitted to NOAA Fisheries on a monthly basis. Reports shall include such information as the (1) number, type, and location of marine mammals observed; (2) the behavior of marine mammals in the area of potential sound effects during construction; (3) dates and times when observations and in-water project construction activities were conducted; and (4) dates and times when in-water construction activities were suspended because of marine mammals.

VPD shall prepare a list of qualified marine wildlife observers who meet the following minimum qualifications: visual acuity in both eyes (correction is permissible) sufficient to discern moving targets at the water's surface with ability to estimate target size and distance; (2) use of binoculars or spotting scope may be necessary to correctly identify the target; (3) advanced education in biological science, wildlife management, mammalogy, or related fields (bachelor's degree or higher is preferred); (4) experience and ability to conduct field observations and collect data according to assigned protocols (this may

include academic experience); (5) experience or training in the field identification of marine mammals (cetaceans and pinnipeds) and sea turtles; and (6) ability to communicate orally, by radio or in person, with project personnel to provide real time information on marine wildlife observed in the area, as needed.

4. Entanglement Prevention. Grow-ropes will be attached to the head rope with a low-breaking-strength twine (4-millimeter (0.16-inch) diameter; <1,000 pounds), which will facilitate rapid detachment in the unlikely event of any interaction with the longline. A 1,100-pound breakaway link will be installed between the surface marking buoys and the vertical lines.
5. Marine Wildlife Education. Each grower/producer will be required to provide bi-annual (twice per year) marine wildlife education to its employees regarding proper procedures relating to marine wildlife. The training curriculum will include identifying the presence of specified marine wildlife and procedures for avoiding impacts to marine wildlife during operations. These procedures will include (1) reducing speed and observing the distances from marine life specified in Wildlife-7; (2) providing a safe path of travel for marine mammals that avoids encirclement or entrapment of the animal(s) between the vessel and growing apparatus; (3) if approached by a marine mammal, reducing speed, placing the vessel in neutral and waiting until the animal is observed clear of the vessel before making way; (4) avoiding sudden direction or speed changes when near marine mammals; (5) refraining from approaching, touching or feeding a marine mammal; and (6) immediately contacting their supervisor and other identified parties/agencies identified in Wildlife-1 should an employee observe an injured marine mammal.
6. Lighting. All growing area operations shall be completed during daylight hours. No growing area operations will be conducted at night and no permanent artificial lighting of the shellfish cultivation facility shall occur, except for that associated with the use of navigational safety buoys required by the U.S. Coast Guard.
7. Vessel Management. Vessels in transit to and from the growing area shall maintain a distance of 100 yards from any observed cetacean and 50 yards between any observed pinniped or sea turtle. If cetaceans are observed within 100 yards or pinnipeds or sea turtles observed within 50 yards, the vessel shall reduce speeds to 12 knots or less until it is the appropriate distance (as required by this condition) from the particular marine life. If a cetacean is heading into the direct path of the vessel (i.e., approaching a moving vessel directly into the bow), the vessel shall shut off the engine until the cetacean is no longer approaching the bow and until a greater separation distance is observed. If small cetaceans are observed bow-riding, and the vessel is operating at speeds of 12 knots or less, the vessel shall remain parallel to the animal's course and avoid abrupt changes in direction until the cetaceans have left the area.
Each sighting of a federally listed threatened or endangered whale or turtle shall be recorded and the following information shall be provided:

- a. Date, time, coordinates of vessel

- b. Visibility, weather, sea state
- c. Vector of sighting (distance, bearing)
- d. Duration of sighting
- e. Species and number of animals
- f. Observed behaviors (feeding, diving, breaching, etc.)
- g. Description of interaction with aquaculture facility

**Table 2: Ventura Shellfish Enterprise
Proposed Best Management Practices to Mitigate Potential Adverse Project Impacts**

Measure	Description of Measure	Responsible Party	Enforcing Agency
Seed supply – 1	Cultivation of Spat Offsite. Only hatchery-reared mussel spat grown at a facility certified by CDFW will be used in order to ensure that spat are free of introduced invasive species, parasites, and pathogens; however, natural mussel spat collected on farm grow-out lines and buoys may also be harvested and cultivated.	Grower/Producer ²	Ventura Port District (VPD) and CDFW
Sediment quality – 1	Sediment Quality Monitoring Plan. A Sediment Quality Monitoring Plan shall be developed requiring monitoring of sediment conditions within the project area, including monitoring the quantity, type, and distribution of biological materials (such as shellfish, shell material, and fouling organisms) that accumulate on the seafloor. Monitoring will also include an evaluation of any changes oxygen demand of benthic infaunal and epifaunal communities, and changes to the chemical and biochemical conditions of seafloor sediments along with a description of performance standards to meet. If performance standards are not met, corrective actions will be outlined. The Plan will include reporting requirements, including annual report submittals to NOAA and NMFS for review. If performance standards are met for a period of time, the plan will provide for appropriately scaling down monitoring and intervals over time.	VPD to prepare plan Third-party consultant hired by VPD to conduct monitoring	NOAA and NMFS
Wildlife – 1	Marine Wildlife Entanglement Plan. No less than once per month, each grower/producer operating on a VPD lease shall visually inspect all ropes, cables, and equipment via depth/fish finders to determine if any entanglement of a marine mammal has occurred and to ensure that (a) no lines have been broken, lost or removed; (b) all longlines, anchor lines, and buoy lines remain taught and in good working condition; and (c) any	Grower/Producer to inspect and respond VPD to identify disposal facility	VPD and NOAA Fisheries

² Note that all Grower/Producer responsibilities will be spelled out as conditions in grower/producer sub-permits with VPD, thus establishing VPD enforcement authority for those conditions.

	<p>derelict fishing gear or marine debris that collects in the growing gear is removed and disposed of at an identified onshore facility. All equipment and materials accidentally released or found to be missing from the facility during monthly inspections, including buoys, floats, lines, ropes, chains, cultivation trays, wires, fasteners, and clasps, shall be searched for, collected, properly disposed of onshore, and documented in the annual inspection report.</p> <p>Monitoring shall occur monthly for the first two years following deployment and, in the event that there are no marine wildlife entanglements within the first two years, may be reduced to quarterly inspections thereafter.</p> <p>Inspections shall include recordings by depth/fish finder or ROV surveys of lines and/or monitoring performed by SCUBA divers. Recorded video shall be provided along with the annual report described above. Any maintenance issues including wear, loosening, or fatigue of materials shall be remedied as soon as possible. All incidents of observed whale entanglement shall be immediately reported to SOS WHALe. Any other marine wildlife (i.e., other marine mammals, turtles) observed to be entangled will be immediately reported to NOAA Fisheries Marine Mammal Stranding Network Coordinator, West Coast Region, Long Beach Office. Only personnel who have been authorized by NOAA Fisheries and who have training, experience, equipment, and support will attempt to disentangle marine wildlife. If possible, the grower/producer shall document and photograph entangled wildlife and the entangling gear material.</p>		
Wildlife – 2	<p>Predator Control. Potential predator species will be identified. Specified humane methods of predator deterrence will be utilized, favoring non-lethal methods. No controls, other than non-lethal exclusion, shall be applied to species that are listed as threatened or endangered.</p>	<p>VPD to identify potential predator species and deterrence methods</p> <p>Grower/Producer to implement identified methods as necessary</p>	<p>Any methods of predator control are subject to prior approval of VPD, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and NOAA Fisheries</p>
Wildlife – 3	<p>Marine Wildlife Observer. A Marine Wildlife Observer shall be present on each project construction vessel during all construction activities, including the installation of long lines and anchoring systems. The observer shall monitor and record the presence of all marine wildlife (marine mammals and sea turtles) within 100 yards of the work area. The observer shall have the authority to halt operations if marine wildlife are observed or anticipated to be near a work area and construction activities have the potential to result in injury or entanglement of marine wildlife. In addition, all work (including vessel motors) will be halted if a cetacean is observed within the monitoring area or if a pinniped or sea turtle is observed within 50 yards of the work area. Work may commence after the observed individuals have moved out of the monitoring area.</p>	<p>VPD to identify qualified Marine Wildlife Observers and submit monthly observers' reports</p> <p>Growers/Producers to assure a qualified observer is present during construction activities and that observers' directives are heeded</p>	<p>VPD and NOAA Fisheries</p>

	<p>Observers' reports on marine mammal monitoring during construction activities shall be prepared and submitted to NOAA Fisheries on a monthly basis. Reports shall include such information as the (1) number, type, and location of marine mammals observed; (2) the behavior of marine mammals in the area of potential sound effects during construction; (3) dates and times when observations and in-water project construction activities were conducted; and (4) dates and times when in-water construction activities were suspended because of marine mammals.</p> <p>VPD shall prepare a list of qualified marine wildlife observers who meet the following minimum qualifications: visual acuity in both eyes (correction is permissible) sufficient to discern moving targets at the water's surface with ability to estimate target size and distance; (2) use of binoculars or spotting scope may be necessary to correctly identify the target; (3) advanced education in biological science, wildlife management, mammalogy, or related fields (bachelor's degree or higher is preferred); (4) experience and ability to conduct field observations and collect data according to assigned protocols (this may include academic experience); (5) experience or training in the field identification of marine mammals (cetaceans and pinnipeds) and sea turtles; and (6) ability to communicate orally, by radio or in person, with project personnel to provide real time information on marine wildlife observed in the area, as needed.</p>		
Wildlife – 4	<p>Entanglement Prevention. Grow-ropes will be attached to the head rope with a low-breaking-strength twine (4-millimeter (0.16-inch) diameter; <1,000 pounds), which will facilitate rapid detachment in the unlikely event of any interaction with the longline. A 1,100-pound breakaway link will be installed between surface marking buoys and the vertical lines.</p>	Grower/Producer	VPD
Wildlife – 5	<p>Marine Wildlife Education. Each grower/producer will be required to provide bi-annual (twice per year) marine wildlife education to its employees regarding proper procedures relating to marine wildlife. The training curriculum will include identifying the presence of specified marine wildlife and procedures for avoiding impacts to marine wildlife during operations. These procedures will include (1) reducing speed and observing the distances from marine life specified in Wildlife-7; (2) providing a safe path of travel for marine mammals that avoids encirclement or entrapment of the animal(s) between the vessel and growing apparatus; (3) if approached by a marine mammal, reducing speed, placing the vessel in neutral and waiting until the animal is observed clear of the vessel before making way; (4) avoiding sudden direction or speed changes when near marine mammals; (5) refraining from approaching, touching or feeding a marine</p>	<p>VPD to prepare training curriculum Grower/Producer to provide training</p>	VPD and NOAA Fisheries

	mammal; and (6) immediately contacting their supervisor and other identified parties/agencies identified in Wildlife-1 should an employee observe an injured marine mammal.		
Wildlife – 6	Lighting. All growing area operations shall be completed during daylight hours. No growing area operations will be conducted at night and no permanent artificial lighting of the shellfish cultivation facility shall occur, except for that associated with the use of navigational safety buoys required by the U.S. Coast Guard.	Grower/Producer	VPD and U.S. Coast Guard
Wildlife – 7	<p>Vessel Management. Vessels in transit to and from the growing area shall maintain a distance of 100 yards from any observed cetacean and 50 yards between any observed pinniped or sea turtle. If cetaceans are observed within 100 yards or pinnipeds or sea turtles observed within 50 yards, the vessel shall reduce speeds to 12 knots or less until it is the appropriate distance (as required by this condition) from the particular marine life. If a cetacean is heading into the direct path of the vessel (i.e., approaching a moving vessel directly into the bow), the vessel shall shut off the engine until the cetacean is no longer approaching the bow and until a greater separation distance is observed. If small cetaceans are observed bow-riding, and the vessel is operating at speeds of 12 knots or less, the vessel shall remain parallel to the animal's course and avoid abrupt changes in direction until the cetaceans have left the area.</p> <p>Each sighting of a federally listed threatened or endangered whale or turtle shall be recorded and the following information shall be provided:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Date, time, coordinates of vessel Visibility, weather, sea state Vector of sighting (distance, bearing) Duration of sighting Species and number of animals Observed behaviors (feeding, diving, breaching, etc.) Description of interaction with aquaculture facility 	Grower/Producer	U.S. Coast Guard
Wildlife – 8	Invasive Species. Grower/producers operating in the project area shall be required to receive training from NMFS to identify potential invasive species and how to properly dispose of such invasive species if discovered.	Grower/Producer	NMFS or entity delegated by NMFS to conduct training

Storage and disposal of supplies – 1	<p>Spill Prevention and Response. Discharges of feed, pesticides, or chemicals (including antibiotics and hormones) in ocean waters are prohibited. Fuel, lubricants and chemicals must be labeled, stored and disposed of in a safe and responsible manner, and marked with warning signs. Precautions shall be taken to prevent spills, fires and explosions, and procedures and supplies shall be readily available to manage chemical and fuel spills or leaks. Each grower/producer shall comply with the Spill Prevention and Response Plan (SPRP) for vessels and work barges that will be used during project construction and operations. Each grower/producer operating in the project area shall be trained in, and adhere to, the emergency procedures and spill prevention and response measures specified in the SPRP during all project operations. The SPRP shall provide for emergency response and spill control procedures to be taken to stop or control the source of the spill and to contain and clean up the spill. The SPRP shall include, at a minimum: (a) identification of potential spill sources and quantity estimates of a project specific reasonable worst case spill; (b) identification of prevention and response equipment and measures/procedures that will be taken to prevent potential spills and to protect marine and shoreline resources in the event of a spill. Spill prevention and response equipment shall be kept onboard project vessels at all times; (c) a prohibition on at-sea vessel or equipment fueling/refueling activities; and (d) emergency response and notification procedures, including a list of contacts to call in the event of a spill; (e) assurance that all hydraulic fluid to be used for installation, maintenance, planting, and harvesting activities shall be vegetable based.</p>	VPD to prepare SPRP and provide training to growers/producers Growers/Producers to implement VPD-prepared SPRP	U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, U.S. Coast Guard, California Office of Emergency Services
Storage and disposal of supplies – 2	<p>Aquaculture Gear Monitoring and Escapement Plan. Include in overall management plan an aquaculture gear monitoring and escapement plan. Any farm gear that has broken loose from the farm location shall be retrieved. The farm site shall be visited at minimum twice per month to examine the aquaculture gear for potential loss or non-compliant deployment, including inspections for fouling organisms. Any organisms that have a potential to cover the sea floor will be removed and disposed of at an identified upland facility. A Marine Debris Management Plan shall also be prepared that includes (a) a plan for permanently marking all lines, ropes, buoys, and other facility infrastructure and floating equipment with the name and contact information of the grower/producer; (b) a description of the extent and frequency of maintenance operations necessary to minimize the loss of materials and equipment to the marine environment resulting from breakages and structural failures; and (c) a description of the search and cleanup measures that would be implemented if loss of shellfish cultivation facility materials, equipment, and/or infrastructure occurs.</p>	VPD to prepare plan Growers/Producers to implement plan	VPD and U.S. Army Corps of Engineers

Storage and disposal of supplies -3	Decommissioning Plan. A decommissioning plan for the timely removal of all shellfish, structures, anchoring devices, equipment, and materials associated with the shellfish cultivation facility and documentation completion of removal activities will be a requirement of each permit or sub-permit. Financial assurances to guarantee implementation of the plan will be in place and reviewed periodically.	Grower/Producer to prepare and implement approved plan VPD to approve plan	U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
Navigation - 1	Update NOAA Charts. VPD to submit to the NOAA Office of Coast Survey: (a) the geographical coordinates of the facility boundaries obtained using a different geographic position unit or comparable navigational equipment; (b) as-built plans of the facility and associated buoys and anchors; (c) each grower/producer's point of contact and telephone number; and (d) any other information required by the NOAA Office of Coast Survey to accurately portray the location of the shellfish cultivation facility on navigational charts.	VPD	NOAA
Navigation - 2	Notice to Mariners. No less than 15-days prior to the start of in-water activities associated with the installation phase of the project, VPD shall submit to (a) the U.S. Coast Guard (for publication in a Notice to Mariners); and (b) the harbor masters (for posting in their offices of public noticeboards), notices containing the anticipated start date of installation, the anticipated installation schedule, and the coordinates of the installation sites. During installation, VPD shall also make radio broadcast announcements to the local fishers' emergency radio frequency that provide the current installation location and a phone number that can be called for additional information.	VPD	U.S. Coast Guard

Monitoring Plans

Conditions within the project area will be monitored throughout the proposed project's implementation to ensure compliance with all permit requirements and to evaluate all effects, including beneficial effects, of the growing areas. Monitoring will be conducted according to a robust monitoring programs designed to evaluate the proposed project's potential effects on the following factors:

- The seafloor and benthic environment beneath and in the vicinity of the facilities, including biological, physical, and chemical conditions
- Wildlife interactions including marine mammals, sea turtles, fish, and seabirds
- Marine debris, including lost and broken gear

As noted in Table 2, a sediment quality monitoring plan, aquaculture gear monitoring and escapement plan, and a decommissioning plan will be developed in conjunction with the permit

review process. These plans will be developed through iterative review with the appropriate regulatory agencies.

Figures

Figure 1- Project Location

Figure 2- Detailed Plan for Shellfish Longlines

Figure 3- CASS Report Alternative 1

Figure 4- CASS Report Alternative 2

Figure 5- CASS Report Alternative 1 Overlaid with SeaSketch Alternative 8

Figure 6- Simulated View of Parcel Array at the Surface: 100-Acre Plot

Figure 7- Simulated View of Parcel Array at the Surface

Figure 8- Simulated View of the Parcel Array Underwater

Figure 9- Simulated View of Parcel Array Underwater with Anchor Line

Figure 10- Parcel Array Overview

Figure 11- Parcel Array Overview Backbone Details

Attachments

Biological Assessment

Essential Fish Habitat Assessment

NOAA CASS Study

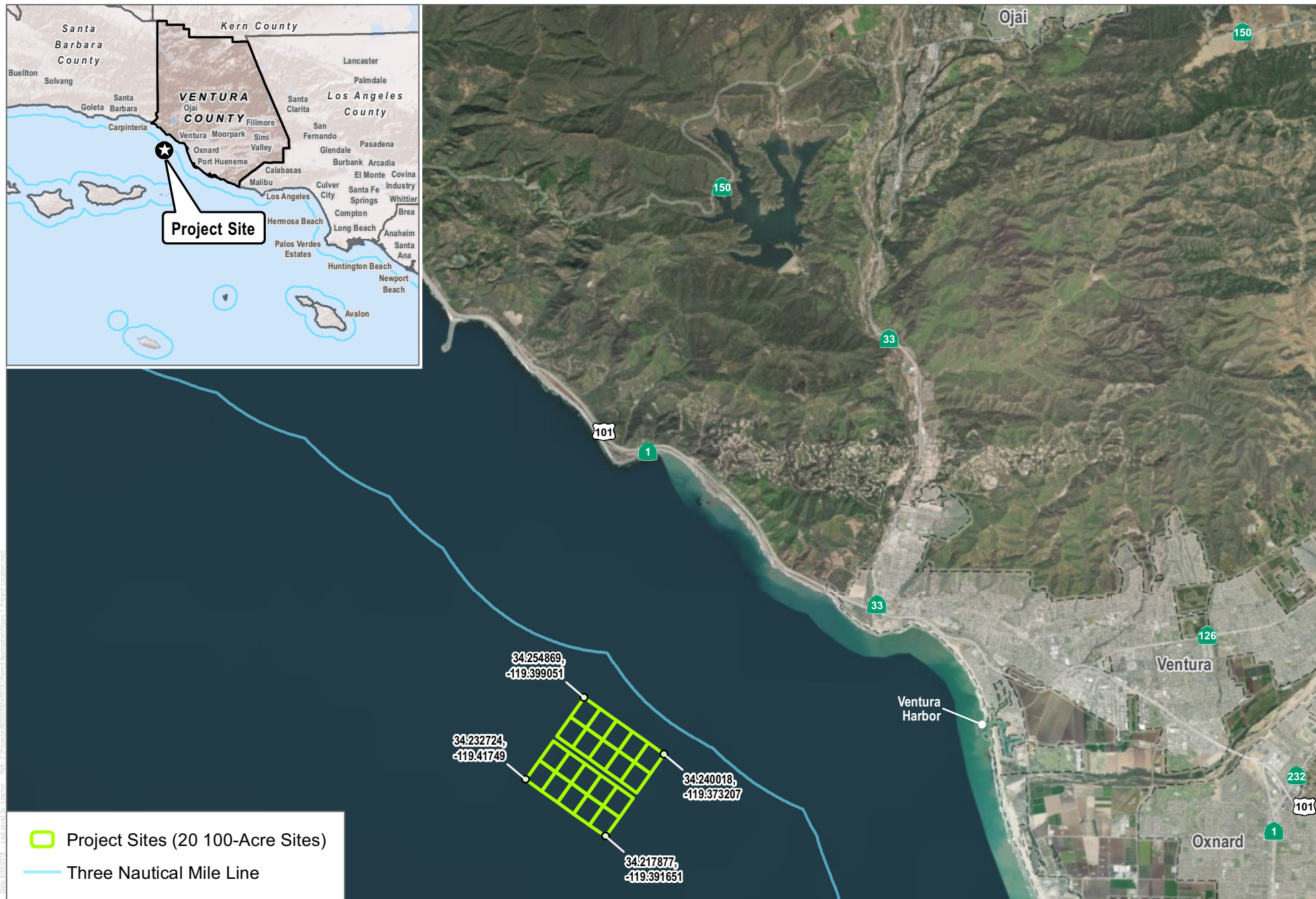
References

Dudek. 2017a. Draft Initial Study Checklist for the Ventura Shellfish Enterprise Project. Prepared by Dudek. Prepared for Ventura Port District. September

Dudek. 2017b. Draft Ventura Shellfish Enterprise Environmental Impact Report. Prepared by Dudek. Prepared for Ventura Port District. May.

Dudek. 2017c. Ventura Shellfish Enterprise: Strategic Permitting Initiative to Substantially Increase Shellfish farming in Southern California. 2017 NOAA Sea Grant Aquaculture Extension and Technology Transfer. Task 1 Deliverable: Strategic Permitting Plan. Prepared by Dudek. May 26.

- Dudek. 2018a. Biological Assessment Report for the Ventura Shellfish Enterprise. Prepared by Dudek. Prepared for Ventura Port District.
- Dudek. 2018b. Essential Fish Habitat Assessment Report for the Ventura Shellfish Enterprise. Prepared by Dudek. Prepared for Ventura Port District
- Gentry R.R., H.E. Froehlich, D. Grimm, P. Kareiva, M. Parke, M. Rust, S.D. Gaines, and B.S. Halpern. 2017. "Mapping the Global Potential for Marine Aquaculture." *Nature Ecology & Evolution*. 1:1317-1324. <https://doi.org/10.1038/s41559-017-0257-9>
- NOAA. 2011. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration Marine Aquaculture Policy. <https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/noaa-aquaculture-policies>
- NOAA. 2013. National Shellfish Initiative. <https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/content/national-shellfish-initiative>
- NOAA. 2018. "Coastal Aquaculture Siting and Sustainability Technical Report, Ventura Shellfish Enterprise: Aquaculture Siting Analysis Results." Prepared by Coastal Aquaculture Siting and Sustainability Program, within the Marine Spatial Ecology Division of the National Centers for Coastal and Ocean Science, National Ocean Service, NOAA. September 6.



SOURCE: NAIP 2016

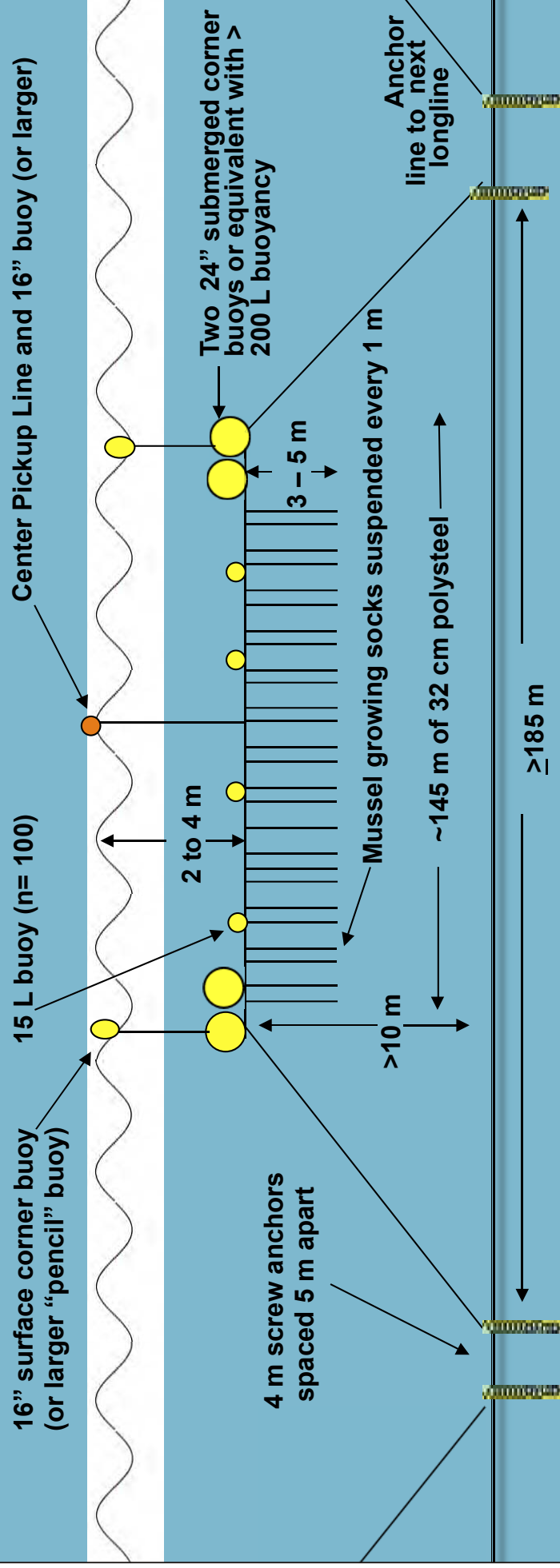
DUDEK



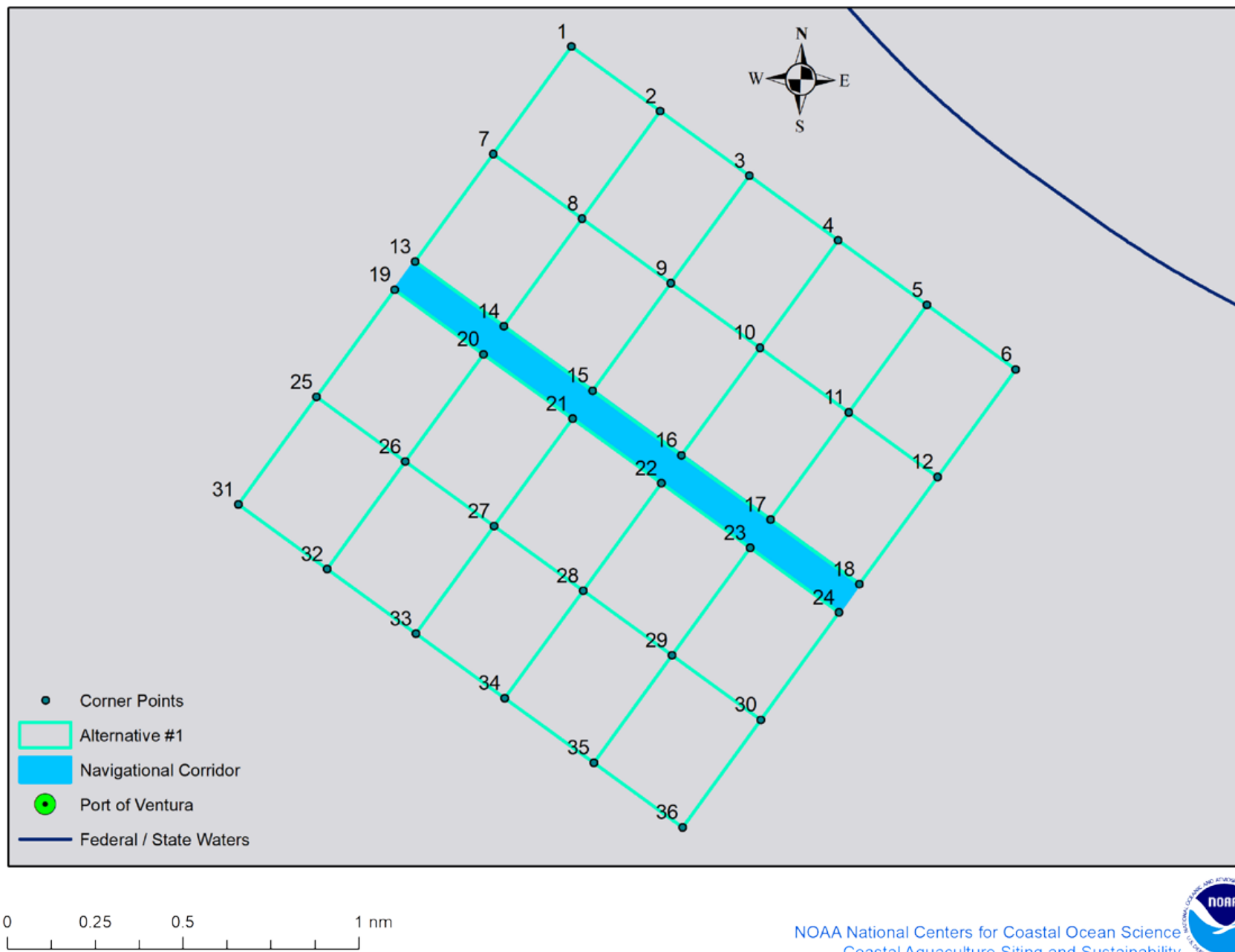
FIGURE 1
Project Location

Ventura Shellfish Enterprise Project

General plan for submerged longlines



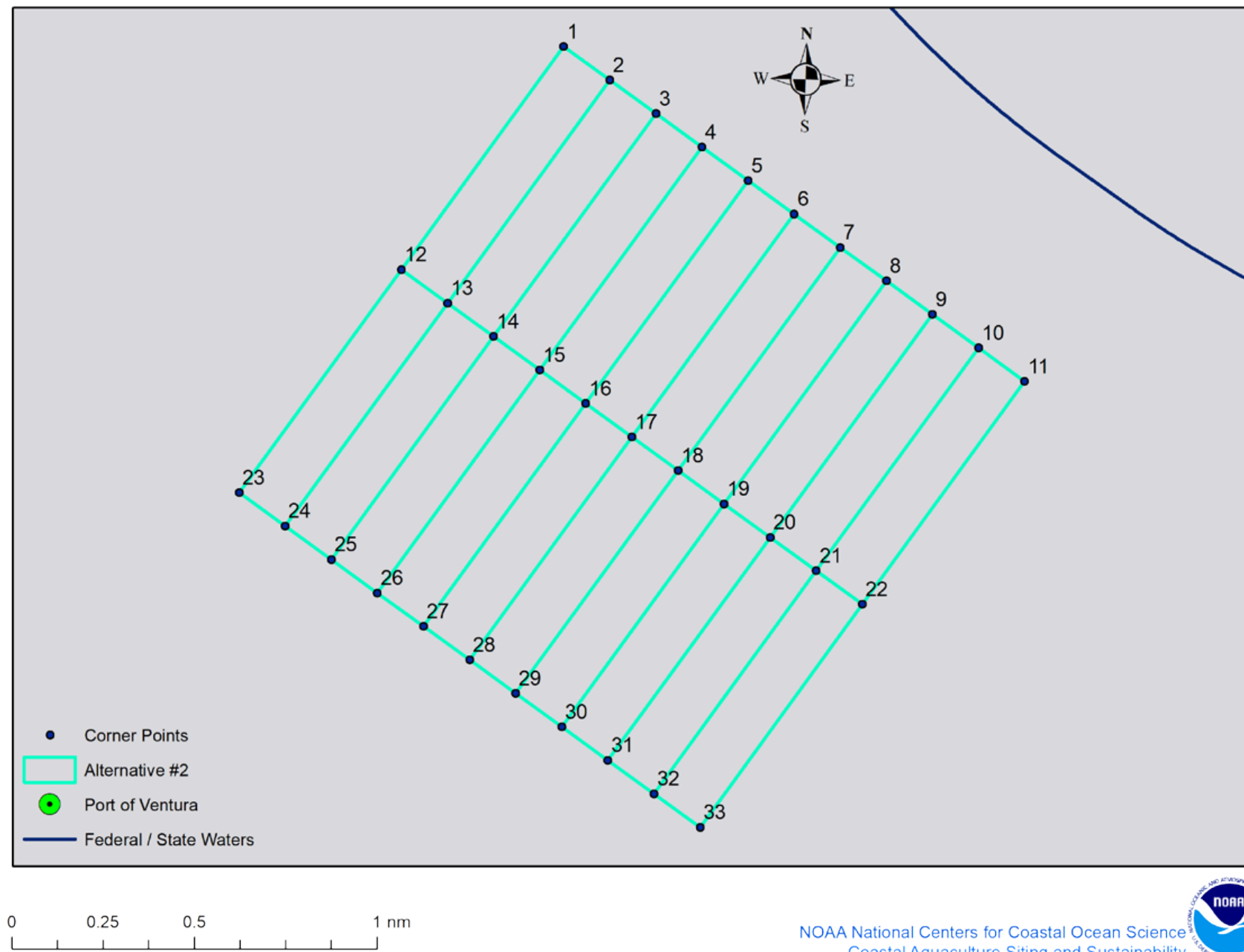
1. Anchor lines should have 3:1 scope from anchor to submerged corner buoy
2. Submerged buoyancy keeps lines tight despite surface waves and storms



SOURCE: NOAA 2018

DUDEK

Z:\Project\00000000\DATA\WGB.MXD



SOURCE: NOAA 2018

DUDEK



SOURCE: NAIP 2016

DUDEK

0 3,600 7,200
Feet

FIGURE 5
CASS Report Alternative 1 Overlaid with SeaSketch Alternative 8



FIGURE 6

Simulated View of Parcel Array at the Surface: 100 Acre Plot



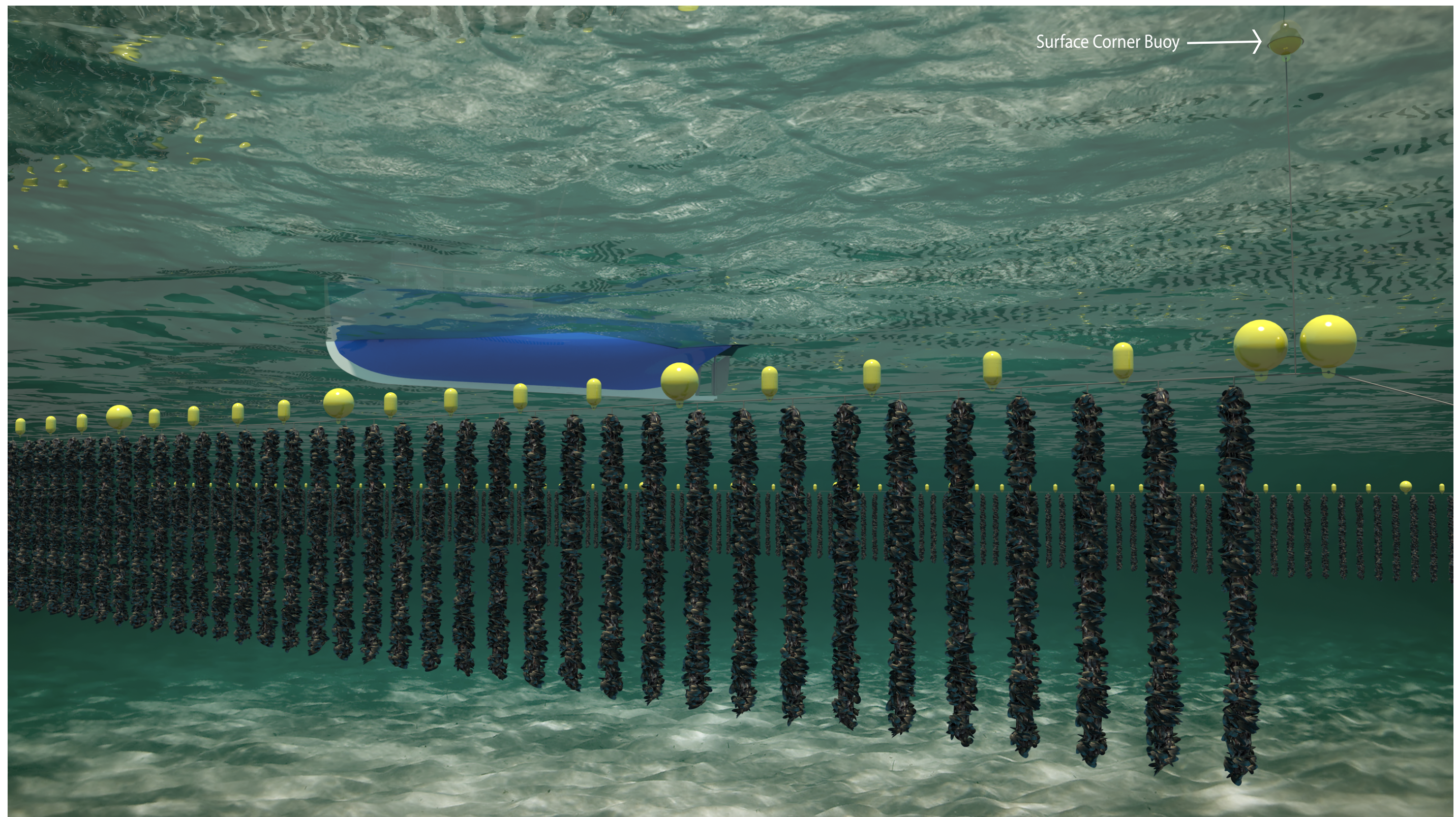


FIGURE 8

Simulated View of Parcel Array Underwater

Ventura Shellfish Enterprise Project

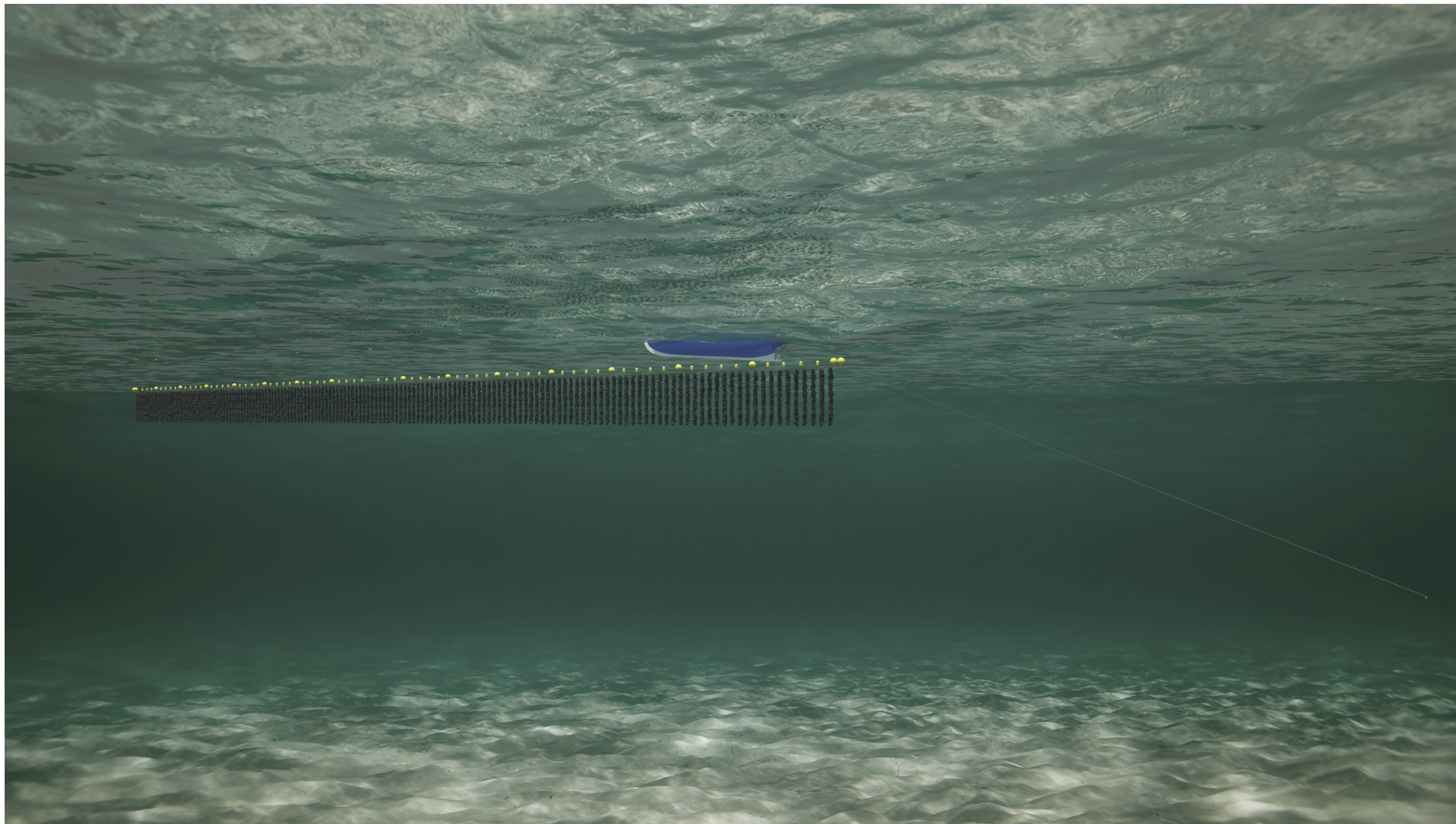
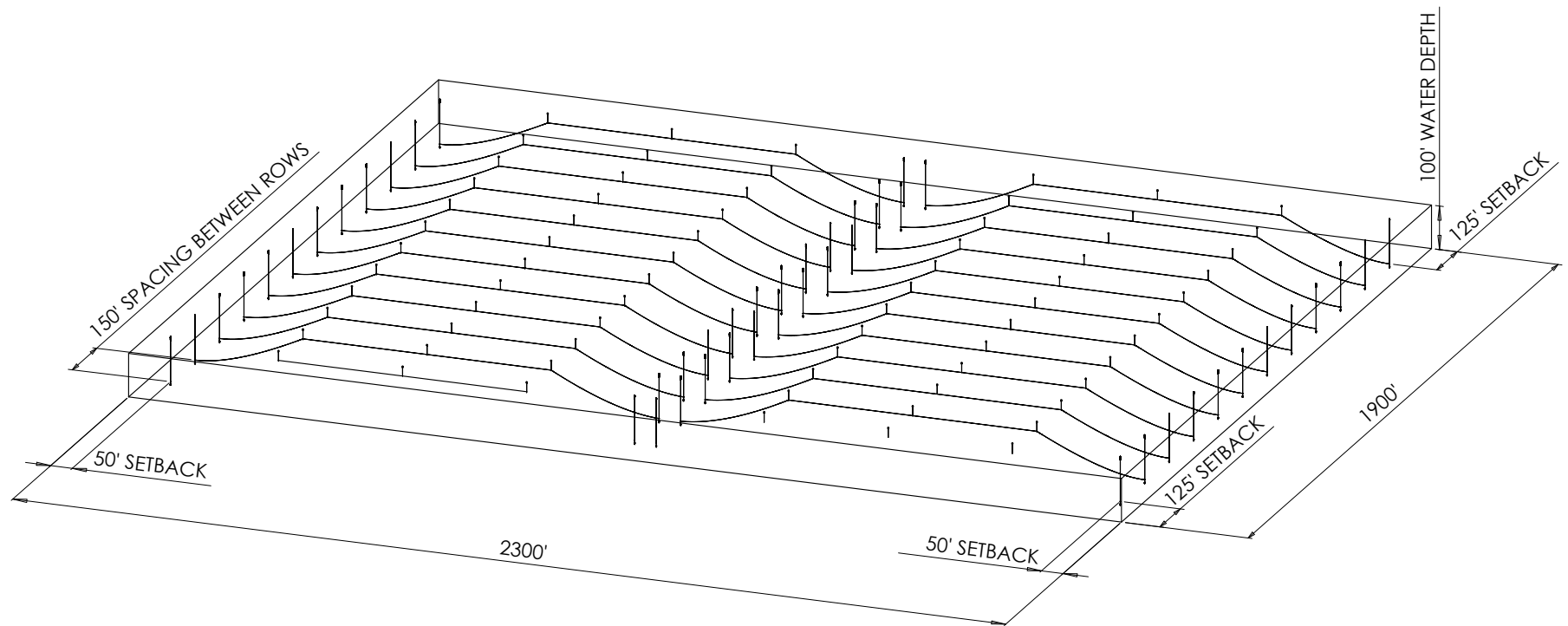
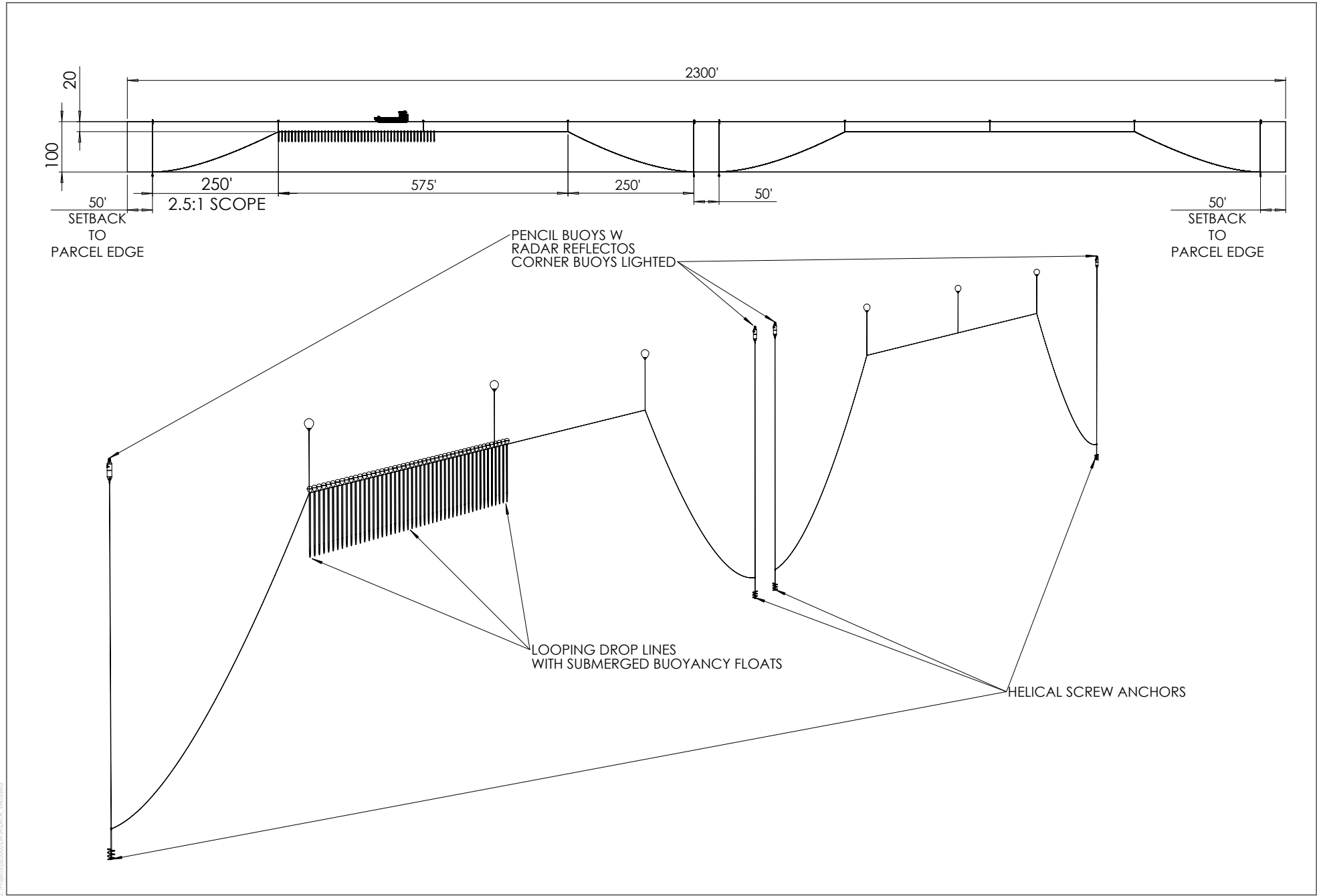


FIGURE 9

Simulated View of Parcel Array Underwater with Anchor Line

Ventura Shellfish Enterprise Project





SOURCE: VSE 2018

CONFIDENTIAL

BIOLOGICAL ASSESSMENT

**FOR THE VENTURA SHELLFISH
ENTERPRISE PROJECT**

PREPARED FOR:

VENTURA PORT DISTRICT

1603 Anchors Way
Ventura, California 93001
Contact: Brian Pendleton

PREPARED BY:

DUDEK

621 Chapala Street
Santa Barbara, California 93101
Contact: John H. Davis IV, Senior Coastal Ecologist
jdavis@dudek.com
(805) 252-7996

SEPTEMBER 2018

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION	PAGE
1.0 INTRODUCTION	1
2.0 DESCRIPTION OF PROJECT ACTION	3
2.1 Project Location	3
2.2 Project Actions	4
2.2.1 Project Construction	4
2.2.2 Project Operation	5
2.2.3 Project Decommissioning	7
2.3 Project Action Area	7
3.0 REGULATORY SETTING	27
3.1 Federal Endangered Species Act (1973)	27
3.2 Marine Mammal Protection Act (1972)	27
3.3 Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (Magnuson-Stevens Act)	28
4.0 FEDERALLY PROTECTED SPECIES AND CRITICAL HABITAT	29
4.1 Federally Protected Species	29
4.2 Status of the Species and their Habitat in the Action Area	29
4.2.1 Federally-Listed Species	30
4.2.2 Other Non-Listed Species Protected Under the MMPA	33
4.3 Critical Habitat	36
5.0 EFFECTS OF THE ACTION	37
5.1 Effects of the Project Actions	37
5.1.1 Federally-Listed Species	44
5.1.2 Other Non-Listed Species Protected Under the MMPA	47
5.2 Mitigation Measures	50
5.3 Cumulative Effects	55
5.4 Compensatory Mitigation	55
6.0 CONCLUSIONS	57
7.0 REFERENCES	59
APPENDICES	
A Essential Fish Habitat Assessment	
B Federally Protected Species Potential to Occur	
C Phytoplankton Population Impact Calculations	

TABLE OF CONTENTS (CONTINUED)

PAGE

FIGURES

1	Project Location	9
2	Detailed Plan for Shellfish Longlines	11
3A	Parcel Array Overview	13
3B	Backbone Details	15
4	Simulated View of Parcel Array at the Surface: 100 Acre Plot	17
5	Simulated View of Parcel Array at the Surface	19
6	Simulated View of Parcel Array Underwater	21
7	Simulated View of Parcel Array Underwater with Anchor Line	23
8	Ventura Shellfish Enterprise Action Area	25

TABLES

1	NOAA Fisheries Acoustic Thresholds	41
2	Summary of Effects Determinations	57

1.0 INTRODUCTION

This Biological Assessment (BA) has been prepared for the Ventura Port District (VPD, project applicant) to evaluate the effects of the Ventura Shellfish Enterprise (VSE) Project (project) on federally protected species along with federally designated critical habitat. The project, supported in part through the NOAA 2015 Sea Grant Aquaculture Extension and Technology Transfer to California Sea Grant (NOAA Sea Grant Program), will establish a commercial offshore bivalve aquaculture operation. VPD is applying for a U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (Corps) authorization under Section 10 of the Rivers and Harbors Act. The Corps will act as the federal lead agency on the project. The BA will determine whether any federally protected species or habitats are likely to be adversely affected by the project. Pursuant to Section 7 of the Endangered Species Act (ESA) and its implementing regulations (50 CFR § 402.01 et seq.), this BA has been prepared to support consultation between the Corps, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS), and National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration's (NOAA's) National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). Section 7 of the ESA insures that through consultation federal actions are not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of any federally protected species or result in the destruction or adverse modification of critical habitat. This BA is also intended to support of the National Environmental Quality Act (NEPA) planning process as well as the resource agency permitting of the project. An Essential Fish Habitat (EFH) assessment has also been prepared, which analyzes how the project would affect EFH for species regulated under a Fisheries Management Plan, pursuant to the requirements of the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act, which requires consultation with NMFS on all actions or proposed actions that may adversely affect EFH (Appendix A).

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

2.0 DESCRIPTION OF PROJECT ACTION

The project will establish a commercial offshore bivalve aquaculture operation based from the Ventura Harbor in Ventura, California, focused on the cultivation of Mediterranean mussels (*Mytilus galloprovincialis*).

2.1 Project Location

The project will consist of twenty 100-acre plots (total of 2,000 acres) located in open federal waters of the Santa Barbara Channel (Channel) in the Southern California Bight (SCB), northwest of Ventura Harbor (Figure 1), with approximate depths ranging from 78 to 114 feet below sea level (13 – 19 fathoms) and an average depth of 98 feet. The plots are 3.53 miles from the shore. Each of the 20 plots are 2,299.5 feet by 1,899.5 feet, for an average plot size of 100.27 acres. Each plot will contain up to 24 lines (12 end-to-end pairs), with each line consisting of 575 feet of backbone length and 250 feet of horizontal scope on each end. There will be a 50 foot setback on each end of the pairs (for a total of 100 feet of spacing between lines of adjacent parcels) and 50 foot spacing between the two center pins. Parallel lines will be spaced 150 feet apart, with a 125 foot setback at each of the long sides (for a total of 250 feet of spacing between lines of adjacent parcels). The closest distance to the 3-mile nautical line is 2,900 feet from the plots, with an average closest distance of over 3,000 feet. The closest distance to the City of Ventura limit is 4.5 miles. Ventura harbor is 4.1 miles from the closest plot (8 miles in distance to the most distant plot). The lease sites are located on sandy bottom habitat outside of any rocky reef habitat, as evaluated in Gentry et al. 2017 and illustrated by NOAA United States West Coast nautical charts (NOAA 2017a).

The project site is characterized by a gradually sloping sandy/soft bottom. The SCB is located along the curved coastline of Southern California from Point Conception south to Cape Colnett in Baja California and includes the Channel Islands and the Pacific Ocean. The habitats and biological communities of the SCB are influenced by dynamic relationships among climate, ecology, and oceanography (e.g., currents) (Leet et al. 2001). The SCB provides essential nutrients and marine habitats for a range of species and organisms. Submarine canyons, ridges, basins, and seamounts provide unique deep water habitats within the region. The basins provide habitats for a significant number of mid-water and benthic deep-sea fish near the Channel Islands, whereas nearshore areas provide habitats for kelp and seagrass communities. Nearshore geology includes a variety of bottom types, including soft sediments and rocky bottoms. Hard-substrates environments, such as the rocky intertidal, shallow subtidal reefs, and deep rock reefs, are a key component of the high productivity found near the project area. Due to linkages among ecosystems, the impacts of ecosystem dynamics contained within the project area extend to interactions with species in the greater Eastern Pacific Ocean. The Santa Barbara Channel is located within the SCB and extends from Point Conception to Point Mugu.

The waters of the Santa Barbara Channel form one of the most biologically productive ecosystems found on Earth. Unlike most of coastal California, which faces due west and the open ocean, the coastal waters of the Santa Barbara Channel are on a south-facing coast and caught between two land masses, the South Coast and the Northern Channel Islands. The project site is 9.1 miles from the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary, a Federal Marine Protected Area, and 13.5 miles from the Channel Islands National Park boundary. The western section of the Santa Barbara Channel is a meeting place of the cool Northern California Current and warm Southern California Countercurrent. This type of ecosystem is called a

“transition zone.” Transition zones are known to promote large concentrations of both biomass and species diversity, as they are the confluence between two or more ecologically distinct systems. In addition, upwelling provides unusually high concentrations of nutrients, especially macrozooplankton, which are one of the primary driving forces behind the Santa Barbara Channel’s biological productivity and diversity. Wind patterns around Point Conception and in the Santa Barbara Channel create frequent seasonal upwelling, which force deep nutrient-laden ocean waters to rise up the water column into the biologically rich euphotic zone (Santa Barbara Channelkeeper 2017). Data from last year, for the closest oceanographic buoy to the project site (Station 46217 Anacapa Passage), shows the following average wave action conditions for the project area: an average wave height of 1.04 feet, with a dominant wave period of 10.1 seconds, and an average wave period of 6.49 seconds, with surface currents generally moving in a SW (249 degrees) direction and an average temperature of 16 °C (National Data Buoy Center 2017). The Ventura area is known to be an area of high swell height, particularly in the winter (Guza and O’Reilly 2001). Wave action is focused by the large fan of sediment deposited on the shelf from the Ventura and Santa Clara rivers. When deep water swell comes in from a WSW direction, these bathymetric features can focus the wave energy northward into the Ventura area. Wave action is slightly less in the summer months when the Channel Islands block southward swells (Guza and O’Reilly 2001).

2.2 Project Actions

2.2.1 PROJECT CONSTRUCTION

The proposed plots will be used for growing Mediterranean mussels via submerged longlines (Figures 2 and 3).

Installation of anchors, longlines, and other facilities will be performed by permitted shellfish companies, in compliance with all permit requirements. Submerged longlines consist of a horizontal structural header line, or “backbone,” that is attached to the seafloor by sand screw anchors at each end and is marked and supported by a series of buoys along the central horizontal section. Sand screw anchors have been shown to exhibit superior holding power as compared to other anchoring systems and are removable. Sand screw anchors will be installed by a hydraulic drill with a drill head that operates from a rig lowered to the ocean floor. The sand screw anchors would be screwed into the sandy bottom ocean floor approximately 10 to 20 feet (3 to 6 meters) deep. Each 100-acre plot will contain up to 48 anchors for a total of 960 anchors at full project build out.

Buoys marking the corners of each parcel will identify the cultivation area for navigational safety and will comply with all regulations for height, illumination, and visibility, including radar reflection. As shown in Figure 2 and Figure 3, surface buoys for each longline would consist of two 16 inch surface corner buoys (one corner buoy supporting and marking either end of the backbone), as well as one 16 inch buoy supporting and marking the center pickup line, for a total of three surface buoys per longline. Simulated views of parcel arrays at the surface and underwater are provided in Figures 4 through 7. All surface buoys would be uniquely colored for each operator and marked with the grower/producer name and phone number. Buoys attached to the central horizontal portion of the backbone line support the line, provide a means of lifting the backbone line to access the cultivation ropes, and determine the depth of the submerged backbone, which will vary seasonally from 15 to 45 feet below the surface. Additionally, a combination of surface and submerged buoys attached to the backbone line will be used during the mussel production

cycle to maintain tension on the structural backbone line as the weight of the mussel crop increases. These will consist of 24-inch (or equivalent, with greater than 200 L buoyancy) buoys attached at required intervals along the surface and connecting to the backbone line, in combination with smaller submerged buoys affixed directly to the backbone line. The combination of surface and submerged buoyancy is designed to create a tensioned but flexible structure that is capable of responding dynamically to surface waves and storms.

The longlines that will be utilized are thick (1-inch diameter), tensioned (to approximately 800 pounds) rope that is not conducive to wrapping around or entangling protected species. The longline configuration produces a fairly rigid tensioned structure from which the cultivation ropes, or “fuzzy ropes” are attached. Fuzzy ropes are characterized by extra filaments that provide settlement substrate for mussels to attach. Fuzzy ropes may be attached to and suspended from the backbone rope either as individual lengths or as a continuous looping single length that drapes up and down over the backbone. The length of each section or loop of fuzzy rope would be approximately 20 feet but would depend on the lifting capacity of the servicing vessel. The length of the central horizontal section of backbone line would be 575 feet, which would support approximately 8,000 feet of fuzzy cultivation line.

The shape of each of the 100-acre cultivation parcels would be a function of the geometry of the submerged backbone line and anchoring. Each horizontal section of the longline will be approximately 575 feet and will require an anchor scope of approximately 2.5 times depth. Therefore, in 100 feet of water depth, scope from the horizontal section of backbone to the helical screw anchor will require 250 feet on each end of the line, making a total length of 1,075 feet from anchor screw to anchor screw. A 100-acre parcel with rectangular dimensions of 1,899.5 feet by 2,299.5 feet will therefore accommodate up to 24 individual longlines. The submerged longline growing gear configuration would be specifically engineered for open ocean conditions with respect to size and strength of all lines, anchoring, hardware, and buoyancy.

Construction in each individual growing plot will take place only after VPD approval of a sub-permits with the individual grower/producer. While project development is dependent on market demand, VPD estimates that full build out would occur within three to five years after project approval.

2.2.2 PROJECT OPERATION

The mussels will be grown and harvested by permitted growers/producers and landed at Ventura Harbor. Initial plantings of juvenile seed mussels, commonly referred to as spat, will be purchased from onshore hatcheries certified by the CDFW. At the hatcheries, mussels adhere directly to special textured ropes that promote mussel attachment and growth. When the seed are firmly settled to ropes, the ropes are covered with cotton socking material to protect them from shaking off the ropes during transport to the offshore growing site and deployment. The socks hold the spat next to the rope until the mussels naturally attach with their byssal threads, after which the cotton material naturally degrades. These ropes are then attached to the longlines and buoys, as described above.

The mussel grow-out ropes themselves are typically planted with seed 3-inches thick and may grow to be stiff with byssus at diameters of 10-inches or more at harvest, thus making them very unlikely sources of entanglement. As an additional precaution, grow ropes will be attached to the headrope with a low-breaking-strength twine (4-millimeter

(0.16-inch diameter), which will facilitate rapid detachment in the unlikely event of any interaction with the longline. To further minimize entanglement potential, a 1,100 pound breakaway link will be installed between the surface buoys and vertical lines, similar to strategies used to mitigate potential entanglement in trap fisheries in the northeastern United States (NOAA 2008). Buoy lines between the surface and headrope are generally under tension partially equivalent (0 to 10 kilograms (0 to 22 pounds)) to their full buoyancy (42 kilograms (93 pounds)).

Cultivated mussels grow by filtering naturally occurring phytoplankton from the ocean. Harvesting involves separating the mussels from the ropes, followed by cleaning, sorting, and bagging. All of these activities will take place aboard the harvesting vessel. Juvenile mussels will grow on lines until an intermediate size where the density of mussels on the fuzzy rope becomes limiting. At this point, a servicing vessel will lift the backbone line in order to access the fuzzy rope stocked with juvenile mussels and pull the fuzzy rope through vessel-based equipment designed to strip the mussels from the fuzzy rope and then clean, separate, and grade the juvenile mussels by size. Juvenile mussels then will be restocked to clean fuzzy rope at a reduced density for their second stage of grow out to market size. Maintenance and inspection of the longlines is proposed to be carried out on a monthly basis, which consists of lifting the longlines out of the water and adding additional buoys as necessary to account for increased mussel weight. Inspections of the anchor ropes, anchors, and connecting ropes shall take place at a minimum of twice per month. Inspections shall include recordings by depth/fish finder or ROV surveys of lines and/or monitoring performed by SCUBA divers.

When the mussels reach market size, which is expected to occur after about one year of total production time, the submerged backbone lines again will be lifted in order to access the fuzzy cultivation ropes, and mussels again will be stripped from the line, cleaned, and separated, and this time size-graded and bagged for landing at the Ventura Harbor as market-ready product. The bagged mussels will be transported to Ventura Harbor for offloading, sale, and distribution. All husbandry activities related to harvesting, grading, and restocking of mussels to cultivation lines will occur onboard the servicing vessel using specialized equipment for that purpose.

Watercraft used for planting, inspections, and harvesting would be home ported at Ventura Harbor. On average, between 20 to 40 boats would be traveling to the specific lease sites to conduct these activities on a three times per week to daily basis. The maximum distance traveled would be between the harbor and the farthest potential lease area, which could be up to approximately 8.7 miles. Once constructed, it is projected that each sub-permit site will generate an estimated 150 trips per year to accomplish the tasks outlined above.

Landed product will comply with all testing and labeling regulations as part of the California Department of Public Health (CDPH) Shellfish Sanitation plan and the National Shellfish Sanitation Program (NSSP) guidelines for shellfish grown in federal waters. NOAA-Seafood Inspection Program (NOAA-SIP), in collaboration with the Food and Drug Administration (FDA), recently began the process of developing NSSP-compliant sanitation protocols for bivalve shellfish cultivated in Federal waters.

Qualified researchers affiliated with universities (i.e., U.C. Santa Barbara - Bren School, or University of Southern California, etc.), or qualified marine research institutes (i.e., Woods Hole Oceanographic Institute, Scripps Institution of Oceanography, etc.) will have access to aquaculture plots to conduct research and monitoring approved by the

Ventura Port District; however, access may be limited in certain circumstances to respect grower/producer proprietary data or technology or to accommodate a grower/producer's operational and logistical needs in operating the farm. The Ventura Port District will review and approve research projects in consultation with USACE, NMFS, NOAA, and any affected grower/producers. Grower/producers will be fairly compensated for the use of their vessels, equipment, and fair market value of any mussels produced or generated as part of approved research projects.

2.2.3 PROJECT DECOMMISSIONING

The project will include a decommissioning plan when activities in that lease are terminated. The decommissioning plan for the timely removal of all shellfish, structures, anchoring devices, equipment, and materials associated with the shellfish cultivation facility and documentation of completion of removal activities will be a requirement of each permit or sub-permit. Financial assurances to guarantee implementation of the plan will be in place and reviewed periodically.

2.2.4 PROJECT OBJECTIVES

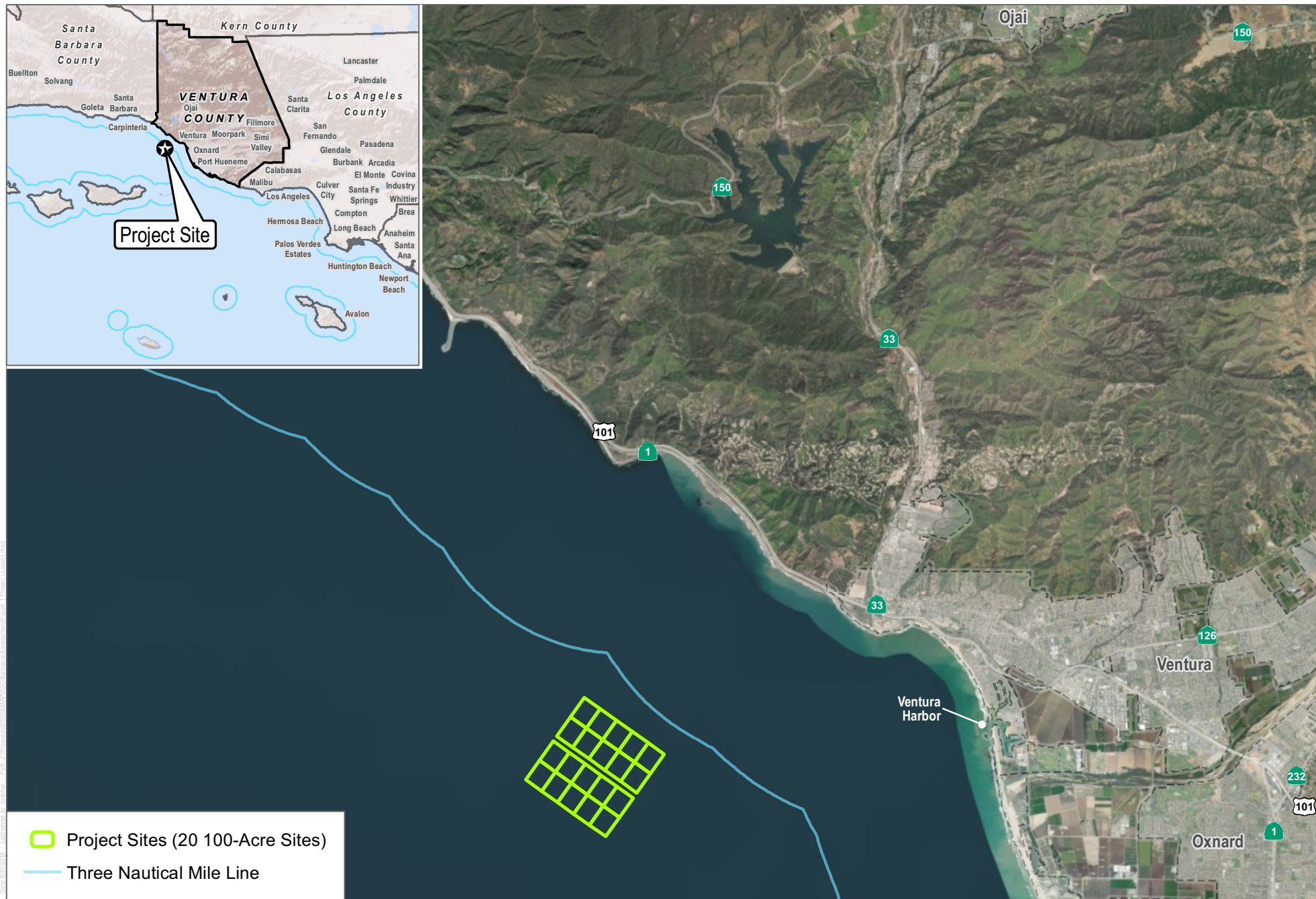
Objectives of the proposed project are as follows:

1. To increase the supply of safe, sustainably produced, and locally grown shellfish while minimizing potential negative environmental impacts;
2. To enhance and sustain Ventura Harbor as a major west coast fishing port and support the local economy;
3. To provide economies of scale, pre-approved sub-permit area, and technical support to include small local producers who would not otherwise be able to participate in shellfish aquaculture;
4. To provide an entitlement and permitting template for aquaculture projects state-wide;
5. To enhance public knowledge and understanding of sustainable shellfish farming practices and promote community collaboration in achieving VSE objectives;
6. To advance scientific knowledge and state of the art aquaculture practices through research and innovation.

2.3 Project Action Area

The Action Area for this project includes the project site (twenty 100-acre growing sites occupying a total project area of 2,000 acres) and all areas within 100 feet of the Project Actions (Figure 8). This Action Area was defined based upon several factors, including the project location and components, the potential noise impacts and disturbance areas for project components, and the properties of underwater acoustics. It is anticipated that the potential noise impacts from the initial installation of the sand screw anchors using a hydraulic drill will be minimal. Helical anchors for mussel farms in open ocean habitats have been installed all over the world, including at Catalina Island. They are drilled into the seabed using a hydraulic auger controlled at the surface. The drill is submersible and is lowered with the anchor. Noise levels are very low in the water, with a 50 horsepower hydraulic power pack on the boat (Fielder Marine Services, New Zealand, pers.comm.). Rotation speeds are very low, which minimizes entanglement of marine species. The anchor installation disturbs less than 1 square meter of sea bed on installation and once installed no rope

or chain touches the sea floor which also minimizes seabed disturbance (Fielder Marine Services, New Zealand, Pers.comm). Marine wildlife, especially cetaceans, are known to be sensitive to noise effects (NMFS 2007a). However, construction noise levels will be well within acceptable thresholds for both marine mammals and fish (ICF Jones & Stokes and Illingworth and Rodkin, Inc. 2009; NMFS 2007a). Due to the minimal noise level and area of disturbance on the sea floor, we believe an action area of 100 feet is sufficient.



SOURCE: NAIP 2016

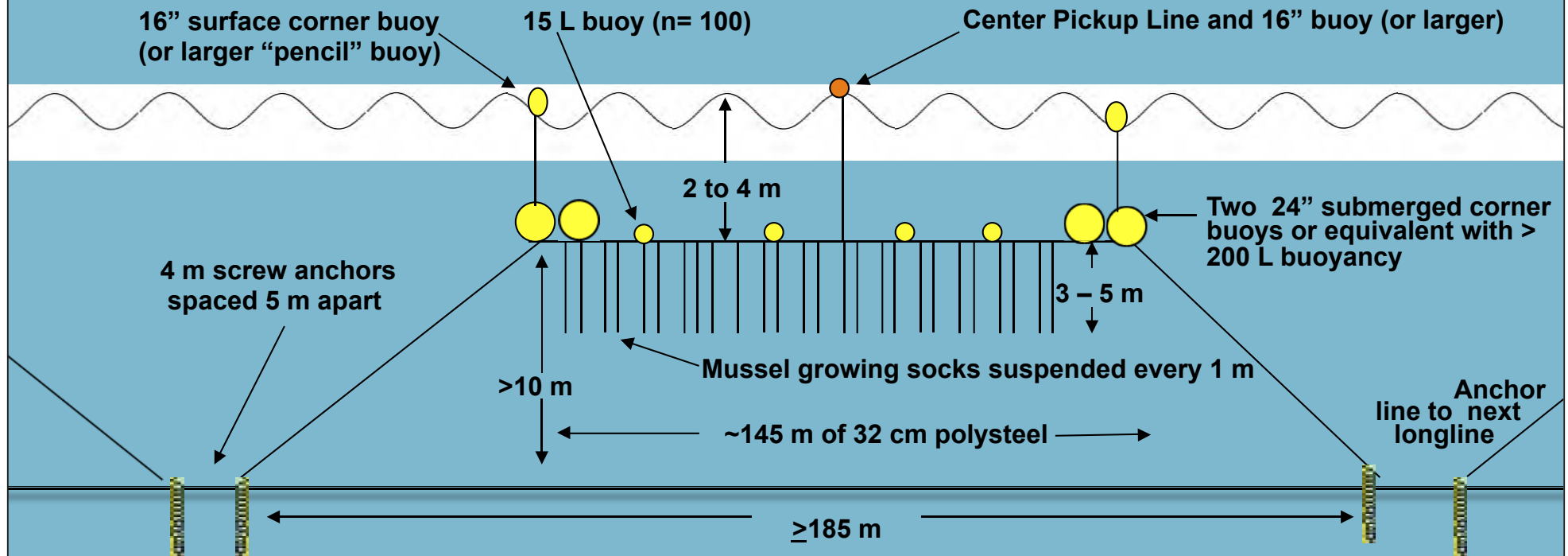
DUDEK

0 6,250 12,500
Feet

FIGURE 1
Project Location

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

General plan for submerged longlines



1. Anchor lines should have 3:1 scope from anchor to submerged corner buoy
2. Submerged buoyancy keeps lines tight despite surface waves and storms

FIGURE 2

Detailed Plan for Shellfish Longlines

Biological Assessment for the Ventura Shellfish Enterprise Project

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

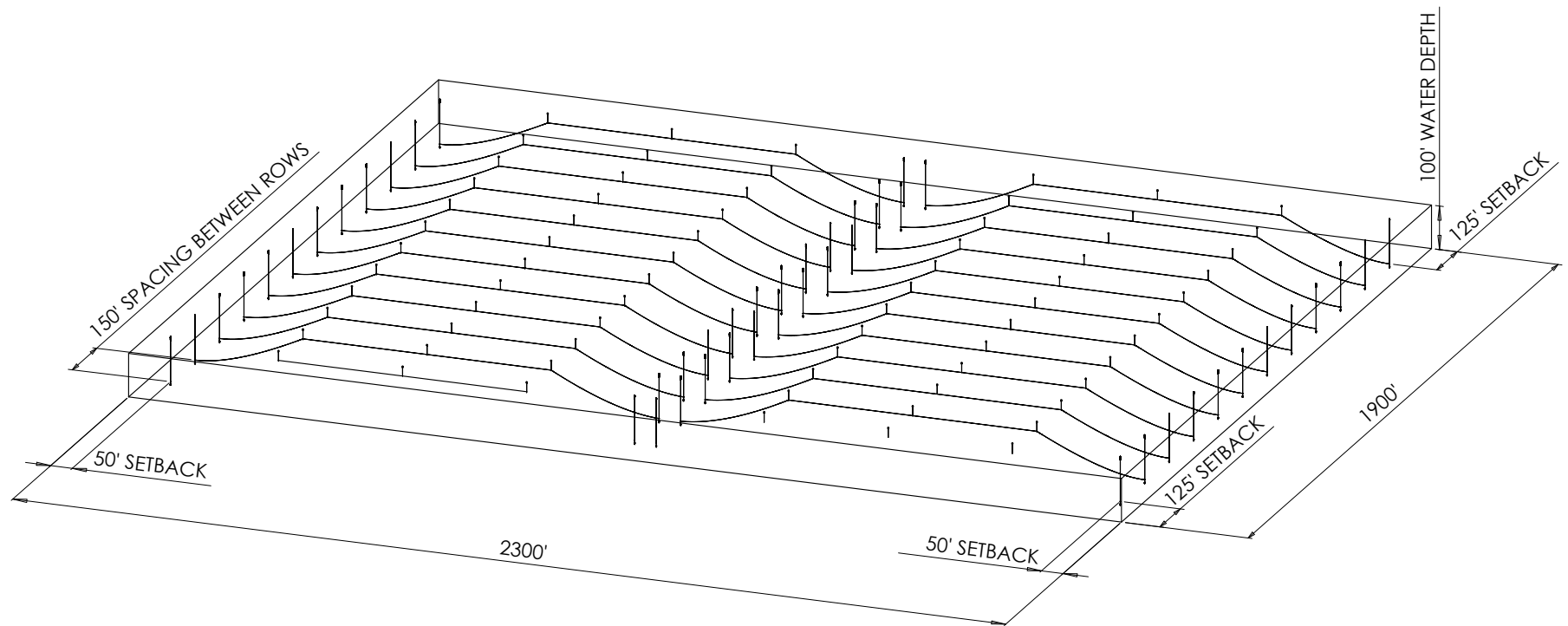
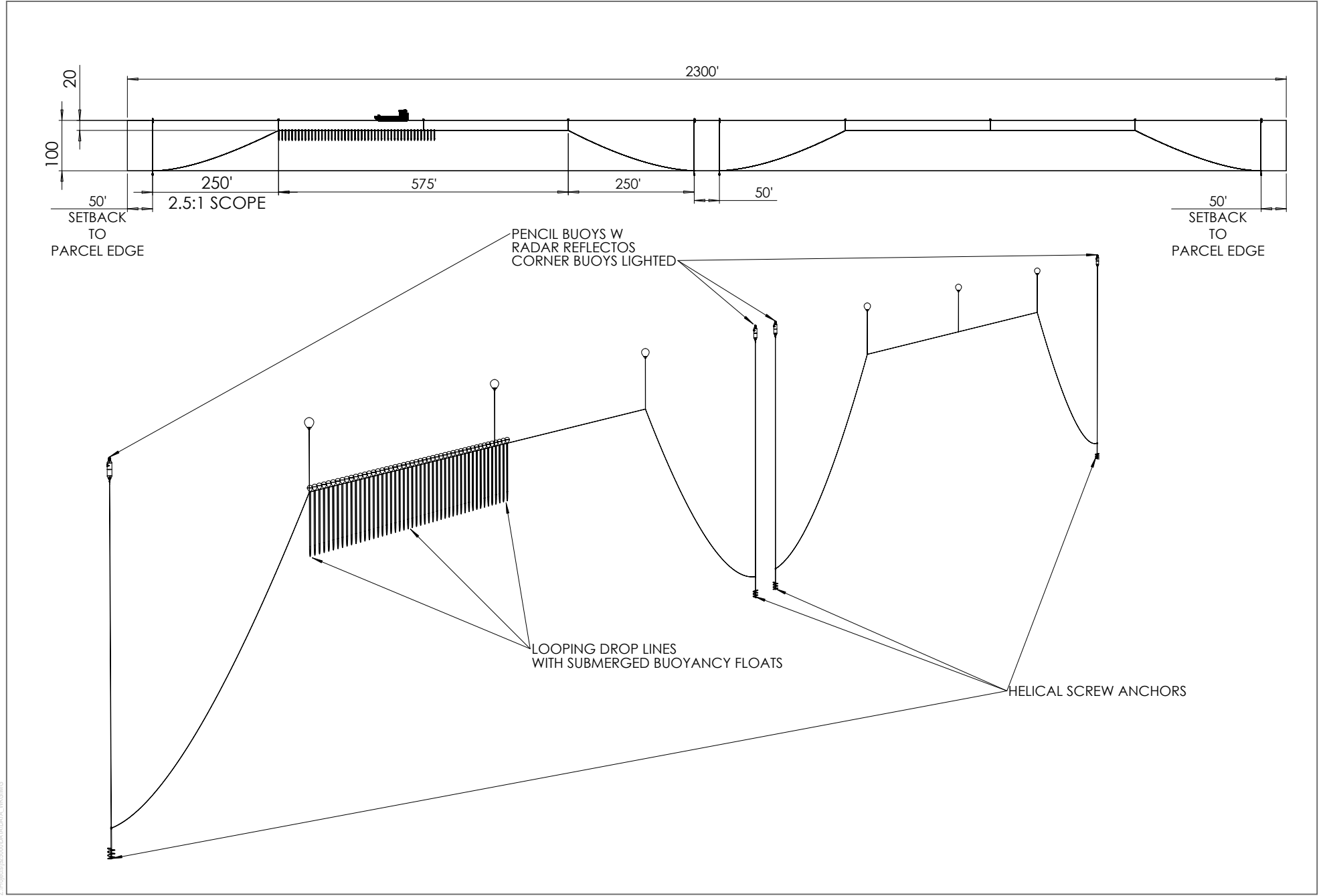


FIGURE 3A

Parcel Array Overview

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



SOURCE: VSE 2018

DUDEK

FIGURE 3B
Backbone Details

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



FIGURE 4

Simulated View of Parcel Array at the Surface: 100 Acre Plot

Biological Assessment for the Ventura Shellfish Enterprise Project

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

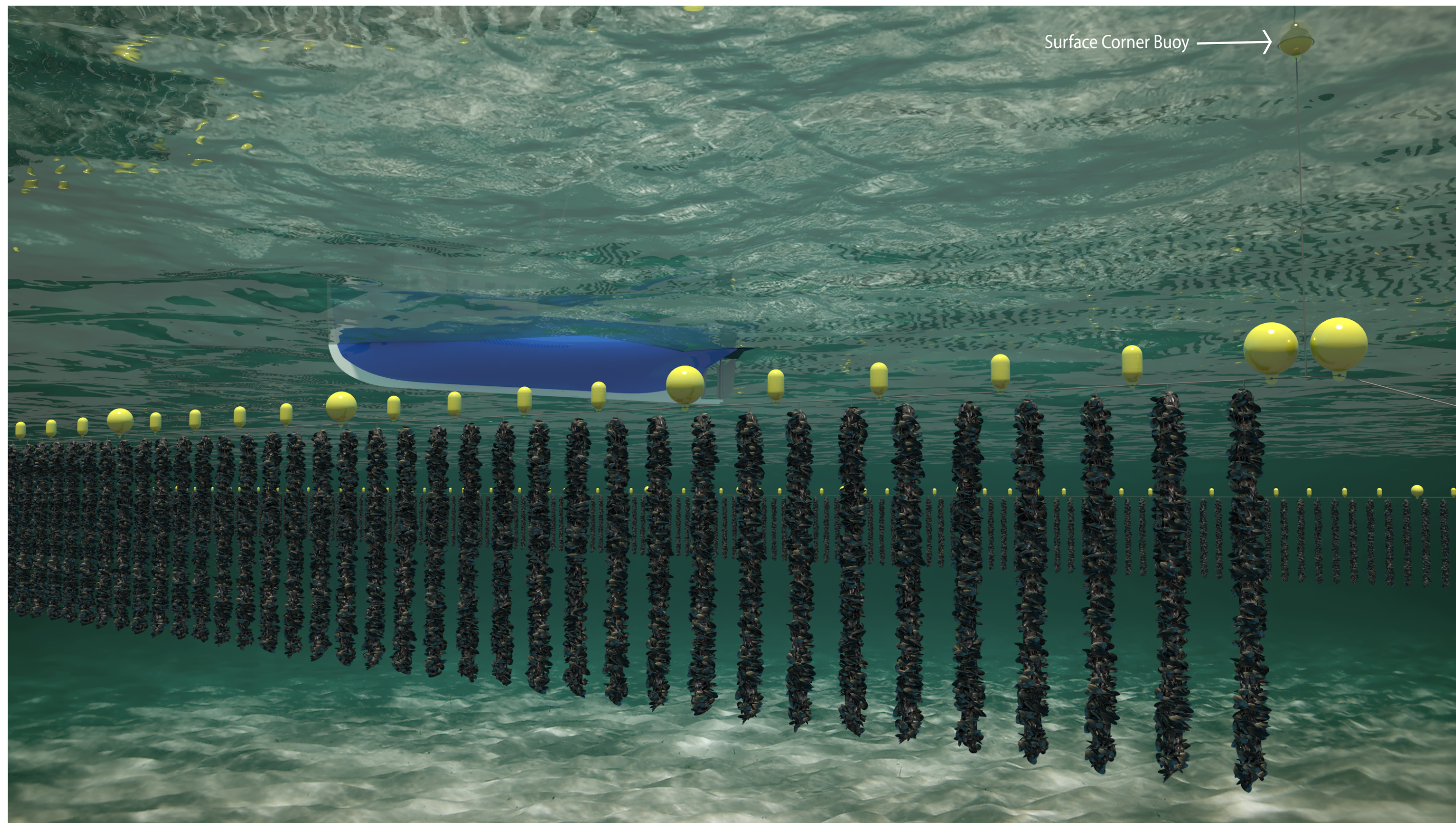


FIGURE 6

Simulated View of Parcel Array Underwater

Biological Assessment for the Ventura Shellfish 218rprise Project

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

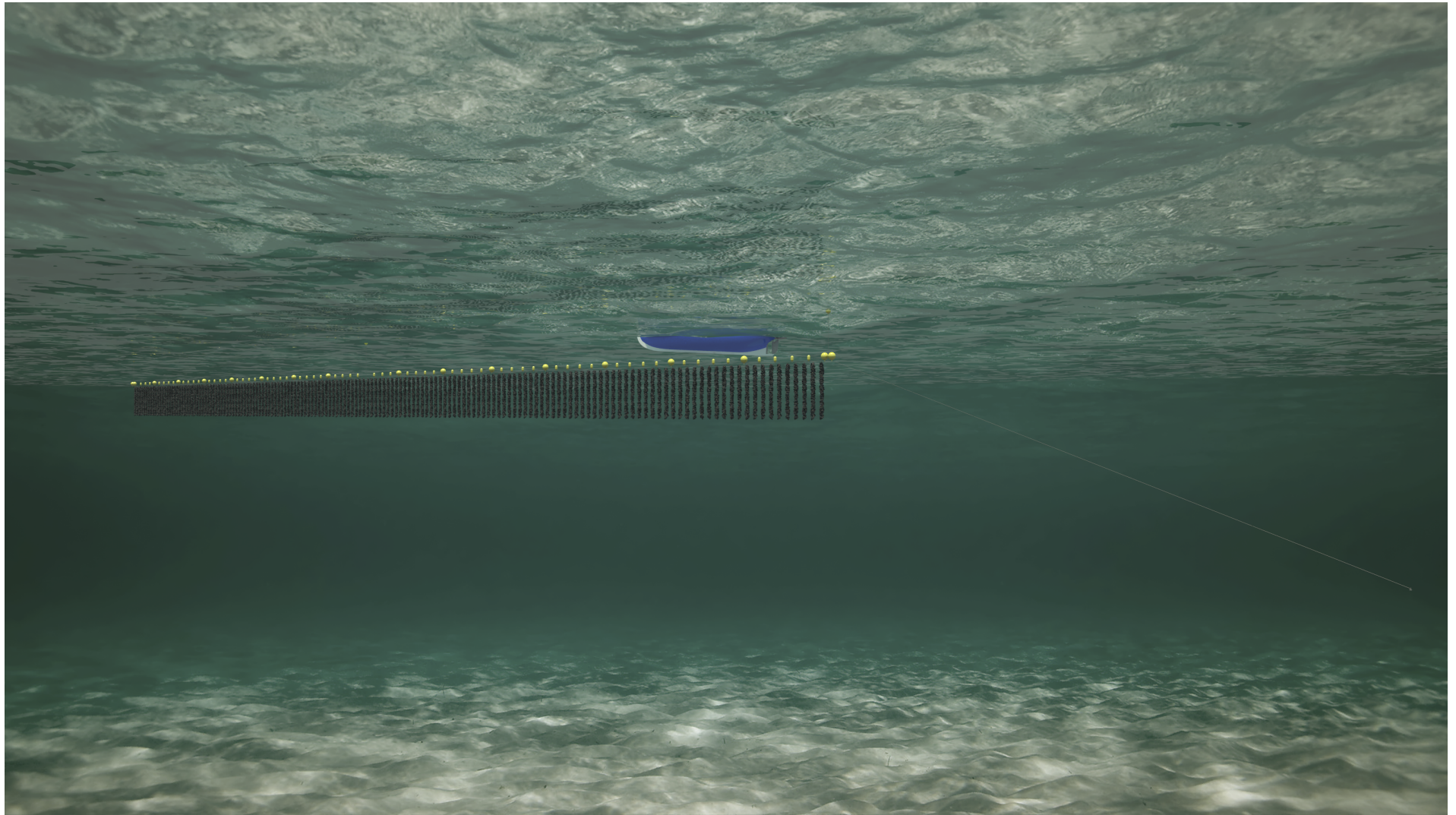
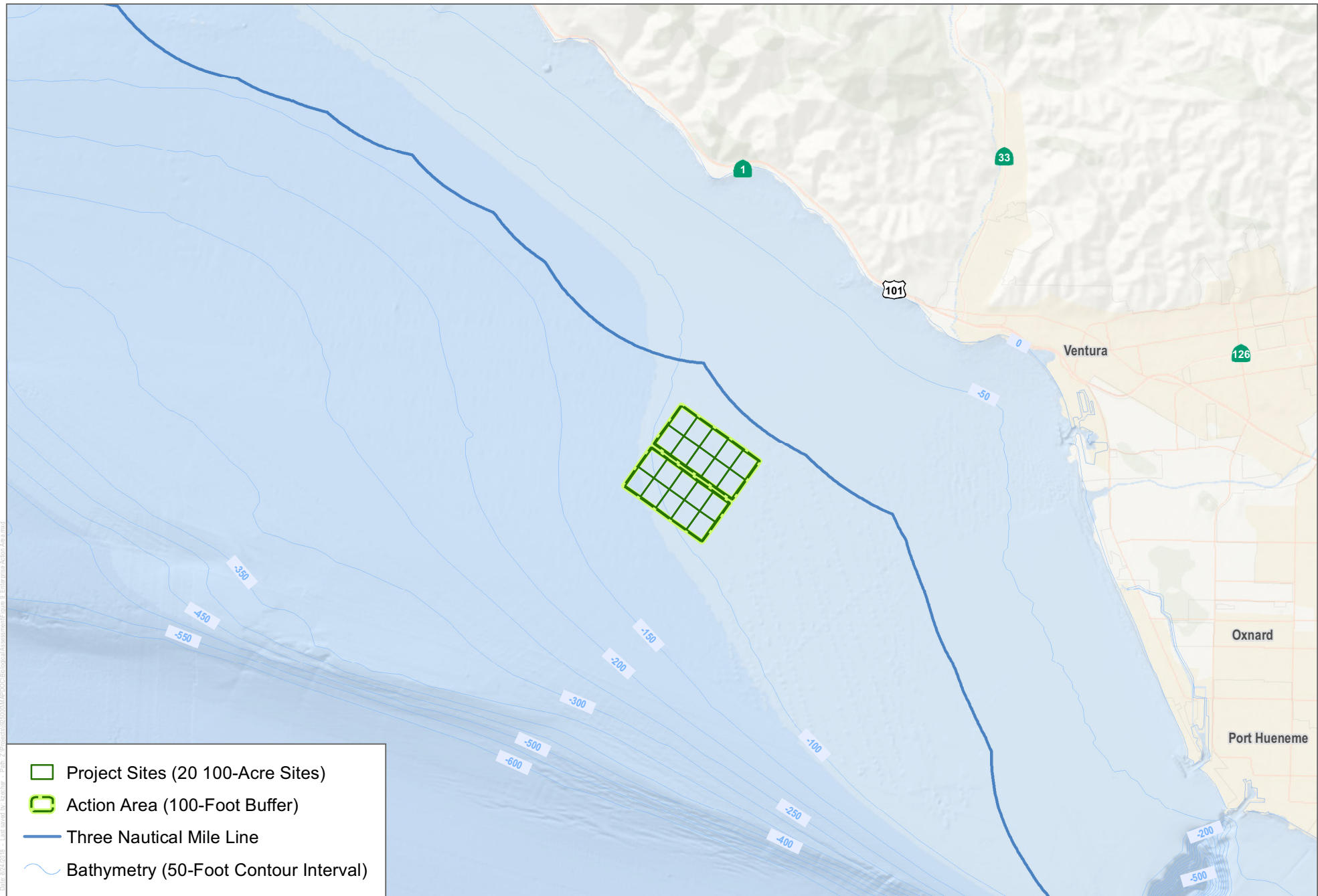


FIGURE 7

Simulated View of Parcel Array Underwater with Anchor Line

Biological Assessment for the Ventura Shellfish Enterprise Project

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



SOURCE: ESRI ArcGIS Online: World Ocean Base

DUDEK

0 1 2 Miles

FIGURE 8

Ventura Shellfish Enterprise Action Area
Biological Assessment for the Ventura Shellfish Enterprise Project

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

3.0 REGULATORY SETTING

3.1 Federal Endangered Species Act (1973)

The federal Endangered Species Act (ESA) of 1973 (16 U.S.C. 1531 et seq.), as amended, is administered by the USFWS and NMFS. This legislation is intended to provide a means to conserve the ecosystems upon which endangered and threatened species depend and provide programs for the conservation of those species, thus preventing extinction of plants and wildlife. The ESA defines an endangered species as “any species that is in danger of extinction throughout all or a significant portion of its range.” A threatened species is defined as “any species that is likely to become an endangered species within the foreseeable future throughout all or a significant portion of its range.” Under the provisions of Section 9(a)(1)(B) of the ESA (16 U.S.C. 1531 et seq.), it is unlawful to “take” any listed species. Take is defined in Section 3(19) of the ESA as, “harass, harm, pursue, hunt, shoot, wound, kill, trap, capture, or collect, or to attempt to engage in any such conduct.” A Final Rule published in the Federal Register on November 8, 1999 (64 FR 60727–60731), further defines “harm” as any act that kills or injures fish or wildlife, and emphasizes that such acts may include significant habitat modification or degradation that significantly impairs essential behavioral patterns (e.g., nesting or reproduction) of fish or wildlife. Further, the USFWS, through regulation, has interpreted the terms “harm” and “harass” to include certain types of habitat modification that result in injury to or death of species, which therefore are defined as forms of take. These interpretations, however, are generally considered and applied on a case-by-case basis and often vary from species to species.

In a case where a property owner seeks permission from a federal agency for an action that could affect a federally listed plant or wildlife species, the property owner and agency are required to consult with USFWS. Take prohibitions in Section 9 of the ESA (16 U.S.C. 1531 et seq.) do not expressly encompass all plants. Property owners may take listed plant species without violating the take prohibition if:

- The proposed development is private and does not require federal authorization or permit.
- There are no special federal regulations under Section 4(d) that prohibit take of the plant species.
- There are no state laws prohibiting take of the plant species.

Section 9(a)(2) of the ESA (16 U.S.C. 1531 et seq.) addresses the protections afforded to listed plants. In addition, the ESA provides protection to invertebrate species by listing them as threatened or endangered.

3.2 Marine Mammal Protection Act (1972)

The Marine Mammal Protection Act of 1972 (MMPA), as amended, establishes a federal responsibility for the protection and conservation of marine mammal species by prohibiting the “take” of any marine mammal. The MMPA defines “take” as the act of hunting, killing, capture, and/or harassment of any marine mammal, or the attempt at such. The MMPA also imposes a moratorium on the import, export, or sale of any marine mammals, parts, or products within the U.S. The USFWS and NMFS are jointly responsible for implementation of the MMPA; USFWS is responsible for the protection of sea otters, and NMFS is responsible for protecting pinnipeds (seals and sea lions) and cetaceans (whales and dolphins).

Under Section 101(a)(5)(D) of the MMPA, an incidental harassment permit may be issued for activities other than commercial fishing that may impact small numbers of marine mammals. An incidental harassment permit covers activities that extend for periods of not more than 1 year, and that will have a negligible impact on the impacted species. Amendments to the MMPA in 1994 statutorily defined two levels of harassment. Level A harassment is defined as any act of pursuit, torment, or annoyance that has the potential to injure a marine mammal in the wild. Level B harassment is defined as harassment having potential to disturb marine mammals by causing disruption of behavioral patterns, including, but not limited to, migration, breathing, nursing, breeding, feeding, or sheltering.

3.3 Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (Magnuson-Stevens Act)

The Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (16 U.S.C. Sections 1801–1884) of 1976, as amended in 1996 and reauthorized in 2007, is intended to protect fisheries resources and fishing activities within 200 miles of shore. The amended law, also known as the Sustainable Fisheries Act (Public Law 104-297), requires all federal agencies to consult with the Secretary of Commerce on proposed projects authorized, funded, or undertaken by that agency that may adversely affect Essential Fish Habitat (EFH). The main purpose of the EFH provisions is to avoid loss of fisheries due to disturbance and degradation of the fisheries habitat. Managed fisheries found in the project vicinity include, but are not limited to California halibut, ridgeback prawn, sea cucumber trawl, and rock crab trawl fisheries, and set gill net for California halibut and white sea bass

Essential Fish Habitat is addressed in the Essential Fish Habitat Assessment Report for the Ventura Shellfish Enterprise.

4.0 FEDERALLY PROTECTED SPECIES AND CRITICAL HABITAT

4.1 Federally Protected Species

The following resources were used to determine which federally listed, proposed, or federally recognized (i.e., NMFS Species of Concern) species had a potential to occur in the Action Area: NOAA California Species List Tools (NOAA 2018a), NOAA Find a Species Website (NMFS 2018a, filtered for West Coast Region), Channel Islands Bird Checklist (Collins 2011), USFWS Information for Planning and Consulting (USFWS 2018a), USFWS Environmental Conservation Online System (USFWS 2018b), the NOAA Section 6 Program Website (NOAA 2018b), NMFS Species of Concern (NMFS 2018), Environmental Sensitivity Index (ESI 2010), and California Natural Diversity Database (CNDDDB; CDFW 2018). The NOAA Species List Tools (NOAA 2018a) and CNDDDB (CDFW 2018) were queried for the 7.5-minute U.S. Geological Survey quadrangle that bordered the Pacific Ocean from the Ventura County line south to Port Hueneme, which included Pitas Point, White Ledge Peak, Ventura, Oxnard, and Oxnard OE W.

Information on species distribution, behavior, and habitat preferences was obtained from sources such as NOAA Find a Species Website (NMFS 2018a), Marine Mammal Stock Assessment Reports (e.g., Allen and Angliss. 2014), Marine Mammals of the World: A Comprehensive Guide to Their Identification (Jefferson et al. 2008), Point Blue Conservation Science Whale Alert Map (PBCS 2018), Large Cetacean Analysis for the Santa Barbara Channel Region (Cascadia 2011), Marine Mammal Commission (MMC 2007, 2018), Marine Mammal Haulouts and Rookeries (CDFW 2009), California Bird Records Committee (CBRC 2018), USFWS Recovery Plans, USFWS 5-Year Reviews and/or Federal Registers. Additional resources are reported within the species account information.

The database searches returned a total of 68 species. Of these species, 8 cetaceans, 1 mustelid, 2 pinnipeds, 3 birds, 5 sea turtles, 2 sharks, 8 fish, and 2 invertebrates have a federal status of Endangered or Threatened. Other species that are covered only under the MMPA (no other federal designation) include 21 cetaceans and 4 pinnipeds. Species that are only covered under NMFS Species of Special Concern include 1 shark, 8 fish and 3 invertebrates. Although NMFS Species of Concern designation is not protected under the ESA, this BA includes these species for a complete analysis of species with a recognition from a federal agency.

Based on Dudek's habitat suitability analysis, 12 species have a moderate to high potential to occur in the Action Area. Appendix B provides Dudek's habitat suitability analysis and an assessment of the species potential to occur in the Action Area, including species not expected to occur or a low potential to occur. Section 4.2, below, provides species descriptions and assessments for those species with a moderate to high potential to occur.

4.2 Status of the Species and their Habitat in the Action Area

This section describes the status, basic life history, and potential for occurrence for federally-listed, proposed, or federally recognized species that are identified as potentially affected by the Project Actions as described above.

4.2.1 Federally-Listed Species

4.2.1.1 Cetaceans

Gray Whale

Gray whales (*Eschrichtius robustus*) of the Eastern North Pacific Stock were delisted from the ESA in 1994 (59 FR 31094-31095) but are protected by the MMPA. This species occurs in coastal waters along the west coast of North America from Mexico to Alaska, and in eastern Siberia. Gray whales usually feed along the Bering, Chukchi, and Beaufort seas during the summer, and winter along breeding and calving areas off the coast of Baja California. Calves are born from January to February (NMFS 2018a). During their northward migration from Baja to Alaska, cow-calf pairs stay particularly close to shore to avoid predation by orcas (*Orcinus orca*) (NMFS 2014). Gray whales are bottom feeders that consume benthic amphipods (epibenthic fauna such as mysids, amphipods, polychaete tubeworms). Since this species is a bottom feeder, gray whales are restricted to shallow continental shelf waters (Jefferson et al. 2008). Juvenile gray whales often are found in Santa Barbara Harbor and along the coastline and have been observed in the surf at Ventura Point (J. Davis IV, pers. obs). In Santa Barbara, gray whales are seen during their northward migration within 3 nautical miles from shore, frequently travelling along the kelp line within close proximity to Coal Oil Point where surveys take place for four months beginning in February (Gray Whales Count 2018). Data shows an upward trend for gray whales over the last five years from 736 whales in 2013 to 1,052 whales in 2017. More whales means an increase in the chance for interaction between ships and fishing gear. Ship strikes, entanglement, habitat degradation, whale watching harassment, low-frequency noise disturbance and impacts from commercial/industrial development are the largest threats to gray whales (NMFS 2018c). In California, ship strikes of gray whales are the most commonly reported followed by fin, blue, humpback, and sperm whales (NOAA 2017b).

Potential for Occurrence. High potential to occur. This species is a frequent visitor to the Ventura coastline and the Santa Barbara Channel and is commonly observed during migration, especially during the northward migration from Baja to Alaska. Gray whales are often observed close to shore, and there have been many regular occurrences in the Action Area on a yearly basis (PBCS 2018). The local whale watching boat, The Condor Express, has sighted 12 gray whales within 5 miles of the project area since the start of the 2018 gray whale season in the Santa Barbara Channel (Condor Express 2018, PBCS 2018). Whales are traveling northward at about 2.5 miles from shore as seen for example on the local whale watching trip in Santa Barbara Channel on March 15, 2018 (Condor Express 2018). Gray whale migration routes overlap with the Action Area and encompass the entire Santa Barbara Channel (Calambokidis et al. 2015; NOAA 2012; NOAA 2018e).

Humpback Whale

The humpback whale (*Megaptera noaengliaea*) is a federally-listed endangered species and is protected by the MMPA. Humpback whales occur throughout the North Pacific. North Pacific breeding areas fall broadly into three regions: 1) western Pacific (Japan and Philippines); 2) central Pacific (Hawaiian Islands); and 3) eastern Pacific (Central America and Mexico). Along the U.S. west coast, one stock is currently recognized that includes individuals that appear to be part of two separate feeding groups, a California and Oregon feeding group and a northern Washington and southern

British Columbia feeding group. Humpbacks from both groups have been matched to breeding areas off Central America, mainland Mexico, and Baja California. The population is estimated at approximately 1,918 animals for the California/Oregon/Washington stock (NOAA 2015). Migrating individuals from the Central America Distinct Population Segment (DPS) may migrate through the Action Area on their way to feeding grounds located off the Pacific Northwest (NMFS 2018a). This species stays near the surface of the ocean when migrating and prefers shallow waters when feeding and calving. This species can be seen close to shore when conditions allow for prey switching from krill to small schooling fish, which inhabit nearshore areas. Humpbacks are commonly found feeding in the Santa Barbara Channel during summer and fall, with some observations closer to shore in the Ventura Area. Typically, humpback whales utilize predictable habitats offshore along the continental shelf break and slope where upwelling occurs where they feed on krill (Yen et al. 2004). However, when conditions change and krill is not available, humpback whales are known to prey switch and feed on small schooling fish, which occur in nearshore waters (Fleming et al. 2016). In July 2017, a humpback found its way into Ventura Harbor (VC Star 2017). In addition, this species is strongly associated with the 200 meter isobath (Cascadia 2011). Threats to humpback whales include ship strikes, entanglement in fishing gear, whale watch harassment, and habitat impacts (NMFS 2018c). On the west coast of the United States, ship strikes are an important cause of mortality for baleen whales, including humpback, blue, fin and gray whales (Berman-Kowalewski et al. 2010).

Potential for Occurrence. Moderate to high potential to occur. Foraging and migration habitat is present in the Action Area. Numerous observations of this species have been documented within the Santa Barbara Channel both close to shore and near the Channel Islands (PBCS 2018). NOAA's cetacean mapping tool indicates humpback whale feeding habitat is close to the Action Area and is prevalent in the Santa Barbara Channel (NOAA 2018e). The project area is situated near feeding Biologically Important Areas (BIAs) and encompasses moderate humpback whale predicted densities for the Santa Barbara Channel (Calambokidis et al. 2015). Habitat-based density models show high predicted density in the action area (Becker et al. 2016), and Becker et al. (2017) show a marked seasonal difference in the area, with the highest predictions for this species in winter and spring for the Santa Barbara Channel.

Fin Whale

The fin whale (*Balaenoptera physalus physalus*) is a federally-listed endangered species and also is protected by the MMPA. Fin whales occur worldwide, primarily in temperate to polar latitudes and are less common in the tropics. They are one of the more commonly seen whales in the Northern Hemisphere. Its distribution is not well known, but it generally migrates poleward to feed in the summer and to the subtropics to breed in the winter (Jefferson et al. 2008). The location of the winter breeding grounds is unknown. Fin whales feed on krill, small schooling fish, copepods and squid (NOAA 2018a). They are usually solitary or travel in pairs, but on feeding grounds there can be groups of up to 20, with 100 or more whales loosely grouped (Carwardine et al. 1998). The California/Oregon/Washington stock has approximately 3,200 fin whales. Fin whales prefer deeper, offshore waters and are a fast swimming species. This species is more commonly associated with the 200 meter isobath, which is approximately 7.4 miles from the Action Area (Cascadia 2011). Threats to this species include ship strikes, entanglement and ocean noise pollution (NOAA 2018a). On the west coast of the United States, ship strikes are an important cause of mortality for baleen whales, including humpback, blue, fin and gray whales (Berman-Kowalewski et al. 2010).

Potential for Occurrence. Moderate potential to occur. This species has been observed migrating and feeding through the Santa Barbara Channel on many occasions with one occurrence (12 individuals) noted within 1 mile of the Action Area in 2011 (PBCS 2018; Cascadia 2011). Resources (krill, small schooling fish and squid) are likely present in the Action Area. The project area is situated within moderate fin whale predicted densities within the Santa Barbara Channel (Becker et al. 2016; Calambokidis et al. 2015).

4.2.1.2 SEA TURTLES

Loggerhead Sea Turtle

The loggerhead sea turtle (*Caretta caretta*) is a federally-listed endangered species, and also is protected by the MMPA. The North Pacific Ocean DPS occurs in tropical to temperate waters in the Pacific Ocean. Loggerhead sea turtles migrate from nesting grounds in Japan and Australia to feeding grounds located along the west coast from central to North America. Nesting occurs mainly on open beaches or along narrow bays having suitable sand, and often in association with other species of sea turtles. They choose ocean beaches with high wave energy, narrow, steep slopes, and coarse-grain sand for their nests. There are no known nesting locations that occur along the western seaboard of the U.S. or Hawaii (NMFS and USFWS 1998a). The closest known loggerhead nesting beaches in the North Pacific Ocean are located in Japan (NMFS and USFWS 2007). Baja California has the largest known aggregations of loggerhead sea turtles. Migration occurs along nearshore coastal waters (neritic zone). Loggerhead sea turtles typically feed on benthic invertebrates in hard bottom habitats, although fish and plants are occasionally consumed (NMFS and USFWS 1998a). During ideal conditions (water temperature/break), this species is known to migrate along the coast of California, including the Santa Barbara Channel. Sightings of this species along the U.S. west coast typically are of juveniles measuring 20-60 centimeter shell length (NMFS and USFWS 1998a). Loggerhead sea turtles are subject to several threats including loss of nesting habitat; disorientation of hatchlings by beachfront lighting; degradation of foraging habitat; marine pollution and debris; ship strikes; disease; and incidental take from commercial trawling, longline, and gill net fisheries (NMFS and USFWS 1998a).

Potential for Occurrence. High potential to migrate. Although there is no suitable feeding habitat (hard bottoms, benthic invertebrates) within the Action Area, during migration they may enter the Action Area. This species has been observed at San Clemente Island (NMFS and USFWS 2007). Loggerhead sea turtles are not expected to nest in the Action Area. No beach habitat is present in the Action Area and the Santa Barbara Channel area is outside of nesting range.

Green Sea Turtle

The green sea turtle (*Chelonia mydas*) is a federally-listed threatened species, and also is protected by the MMPA. The Eastern Pacific DPS ranges from Baja California to southern Alaska. However, the green sea turtle is more common from San Diego southward. This species forages in the open ocean when migrating as well as shallow waters of lagoons, bays, estuaries, mangroves, eelgrass, and seaweed beds. They are herbivorous and feed primarily on seagrasses and algae. Green sea turtles are generally found in shallow waters except when migrating. It is a regular visitor in the waters off the southwest coast of the United States. Residents occur in the San Gabriel River, Long Beach (NMFS and USFWS 1998b). The closest known nesting occurrences are in Mexico (NMFS and USFWS 1998b). This species requires open beaches

with a sloping platform and minimal disturbance for nesting. Green sea turtles have strong nesting site fidelity and often make long distance migrations between feeding grounds and nesting beaches. Threats to the green sea turtle include commercial harvesting, loss of nesting habitat; disorientation of hatchlings by beachfront lighting; nest predation by native and non-native predators; degradation of foraging habitat; marine pollution and debris; ship strikes; and incidental take from commercial fishing operations (NMFS and USFWS 1998b).

Potential for Occurrence. High potential to occur. They have been captured at Sterns Wharf in Santa Barbara harbor and at the Channel Islands. This species may migrate and/or forage in the Action Area. Green sea turtles are not expected to nest in the Action Area.

4.2.2 OTHER NON-LISTED SPECIES PROTECTED UNDER THE MMPA

4.2.2.1 Cetaceans

Common Minke Whale

The common minke whale (*Balaenoptera acutorostrata*) is protected by the MMPA. Minke whales are found throughout the world in polar, temperate, and tropical waters in both coastal and offshore habitats (NMFS 2018a). They are the smallest baleen whale in North American waters. It migrates seasonally and travels great distances. Common minke whales are the smallest baleen whale in North American waters. Some individual minke whales are residents in California waters. They are often solitary but sometimes travel in groups of 2-3 individuals (NMFS 2018a). This species feeds on copepods, krill, and small schooling fish. Minke whales are a normally cryptic species but are sometimes curious and will approach vessels (especially stationary vessels). Minke whales are subject to the following threats including entanglement (gill nets, seine nets, herring weirs, lobster traps, driftnets, longlines, and trawls), habitat disturbance, human interactions, noise pollution, and ship strikes (NMFS 2018a).

Potential for Occurrence. Moderate potential to occur. Foraging and migration habitat is present in the Action Area. Minke whales feed on euphausiids, copepods and small schooling fish, which are present in the Channel. In addition, this species has been recorded since 1988 in the Santa Barbara Channel and within 1 mile of the Action Area, although this species is usually in slightly deeper waters (PBCS 2018). Stock reports for the California/Oregon/Washington Stock show minke whales in close proximity to the northern Channel Islands, within the Santa Barbara Channel (NMFS 2016c).

Common Bottlenose Dolphin

The common bottlenose dolphin (*Tursiops truncatus*) is protected by the MMPA. Bottlenose dolphins have a worldwide distribution ranging from 45°N to 45°S latitude and are found in temperate and tropical waters. Coastal populations often migrate into bays, estuaries, and river mouths. Offshore populations inhabit pelagic waters along the continental shelf. The common bottlenose dolphin, as its name suggests, is a common coastal species, and a generalist feeder (squid, fish and crustaceans) (Jefferson et al. 2008). Common bottlenose dolphins are comprised of two sub-populations: coastal bottlenose dolphins and offshore bottlenose dolphins. Coastal bottlenose dolphins are known to

regularly occur within 1 kilometer of shore (Carretta et al. 1998). In southern California, they are found within 500 m of the shoreline 99% of the time and within 250 m 90% of the time (NMFS 2017g). On the other hand, offshore bottlenose dolphins inhabit areas at distances greater than a few kilometers from the mainland (NMFS 2011a). They may travel alone or in groups and commonly work together to herd prey. They are active at the surface and will approach ships and even other whales to bow ride as an energy efficient mode of transportation (NMFS 2018a). They interact with fisheries and are often seen following shrimp trawlers (Jefferson et al. 2008). Common bottlenose dolphins are subject to the following threats including entanglement (gill nets, driftnets, longlines, and trawls), habitat degradation, noise pollution, pollution from oil spills and chemicals, and ship strikes.

Potential for Occurrence. High potential to occur; specifically for offshore bottlenose dolphin populations. This species has many occurrences throughout the Santa Barbara Channel and within or directly adjacent to the Action Area (PBCS 2018). Habitat-based density models show high predicted density for this species in the action area (Becker et al. 2016).

Long-beaked Common Dolphin

The long-beaked common dolphin (*Delphinus capensis capensis*) is protected by the MMPA. Long-beaked common dolphins are commonly found along the U.S. west coast, from Baja California (including the Gulf of California) northward to about central California. Long-beaked and short-beaked common dolphins are similar species but have different habitat preferences. Long-beaked common dolphins prefer coastal waters. Long-beaked common dolphins are not as abundant as short-beaked common dolphins. They select shallower areas in tropical, subtropical, and warmer temperate to cool waters closer to the coast (within 50-100 nautical miles (90-180 km)) and the continental shelf (NMFS 2018a). This species will sometimes come close to shore within waters that are only a few meters deep (Jefferson et al. 2008). Long-beaked common dolphins usually travel in pods of 100-500 individuals, but have been seen numbering in the thousands. They are active at the surface and will approach ships to bow ride as an energy efficient mode of transportation (NMFS 2018a). Long-beaked common dolphins are subject to the following threats: entanglement (gill nets, driftnets, longlines, and trawls).

Potential for Occurrence. High potential to occur. Foraging resources (small schooling fish and squid) are likely present in the Action Area. This species has been recorded multiple times and in great numbers (e.g., occurrences with 1,500 individuals) in the Santa Barbara Channel, including the Action Area (PBCS 2018). Habitat-based density models show high predicted density for this species in the action area (Becker et al. 2016; Douglass et al. 2014).

Short-beaked Common Dolphin

The short-beaked common dolphin (*Delphinus delphis delphis*) is protected by the MMPA. Short-beaked common dolphins inhabit warm tropical to cool temperate waters that are primarily oceanic and offshore. Off the U.S. west coast, the majority of the populations are found off California, especially during the warm-water months. This species occurs along the continental slope in waters 650-6,500 feet (200-2,000 m) deep (NMFS 2018a). This species is often associated with areas of upwelling and areas of steep sea-bottom, and as an offshore species they are commonly associated with pilot whales (Jefferson et al. 2008). Short-beaked common dolphins prefer deeper, offshore habitat. Short-beaked common dolphins travel in pods of hundreds to thousands of individuals. They are

active at the surface and will approach ships and even other whales to bow ride as an energy efficient mode of transportation (NMFS 2018a). Short-beaked common dolphins are subject to the following threats: entanglement (gill nets, driftnets, longlines, and trawls).

Potential for Occurrence. Moderate to high potential to occur. Foraging resources (small schooling fish and squid) are likely present in the Action Area. This species has been recorded multiple times and in great numbers (e.g., occurrences with 1,500 individuals) in Santa Barbara Channel and adjacent to the Action Area (PBCS 2018). Habitat-based density models show high predicted density in the action area (Becker et al. 2016; Douglass et al. 2014), and indicated a marked seasonal difference in the area, with the highest predictions for this species in summer and fall for the Santa Barbara Channel (Becker et al. 2017; Campbell et al. 2014).

Pacific White-sided Dolphin

The Pacific white-sided dolphin (*Lagenorhynchus obliquidens*) is protected by the MMPA. Pacific white-sided dolphins are found in temperate waters in the North Pacific and they utilize waters over the continental shelf to the deep open ocean (NMFS 2018a). In North America, in the Pacific they range from the Gulf of Alaska to the Gulf of California. Pacific white-sided dolphins exhibit seasonal inshore/offshore and north/south movements, but are generally non-migratory. This species feeds mostly on cephalopods and small schooling fish in deep offshore waters but also on the continental shelf (Jefferson et al. 2008). They are often observed working together in pod sizes of 10-100 individuals working together to herd schools of fish. Pacific white-sided dolphins are subject to several threats: entanglement in fishing gear (gillnets, longline), pollution, noise (will react to pingers), and ship strikes (NMFS 2018a). They will often bow ride with vessels as a method of energetically efficient transportation.

Potential for Occurrence. Moderate potential to occur. Foraging habitat is present in the Action Area. In addition, this species has numerous occurrences within the Santa Barbara Channel (mostly offshore, this species is commonly associated with other deep-water cetaceans such as Risso's dolphins and Northern right whale dolphins (NMFS 2018a)) and a few occurrences in the Action Area (PBCS 2018). Habitat-based density models show high predicted density for this species in the action area (Becker et al. 2016), particularly in the fall (Campbell et al. 2014; Douglass et al. 2014).

4.2.2.2 Pinnipeds

California Sea Lion

The California sea lion (*Zalophus californianus*) is protected by the MMPA. It inhabits the eastern North Pacific Ocean from central Mexico to Canada. This species is present along the west coast from the Tres Marias Islands off Puerto Vallarta, throughout the Gulf of California and the Baja peninsula, north to Alaska. Males (adults, subadults, and juveniles) undertake a northward migration to Central California and Washington after the breeding season in southern rookeries. They are generalist opportunistic feeders (squid and fishes in areas of upwelling) and utilize the continental shelf and slope, but have also been observed in deeper oceanic waters (Jefferson et al. 2008). California sea lions prefer shallow coastal and estuarine waters and sandy beaches for haul out sites but will also haul out on marina docks, jetties, and buoys (NMFS 2018a). On land, they are wary of humans, but in the water they are curious, bold

and will approach boats looking for fish. They will take fish from commercial fishing gear, sport fishing lines, and fish passage facilities at dams and rivers. They are less wary of people because they associate people with an easy meal. They may also be curious about construction activities. California sea lions are subject to several threats: entanglement in fishing gear (gillnets, longline), pollution, ship strikes and human caused injuries.

Potential for Occurrence. High potential to occur. This species has known haulouts along all of the Channel Islands and rookeries at San Nicholas Island (CDFW 2009, NMFS 2018a). The project site is within their distribution range (Lowry and Carretta 1999; NOAA 2018a). California sea lions mostly forage near mainland coastlines, the continental shelf, and seamounts. Adult females feed between 10–100 km from shore (Lowry and Carretta 1999) while adult males may forage up to 450 km from shore (Weise et al. 2006).

Pacific Harbor Seal

The Pacific harbor seal (*Phoca vitulina*) is protected by the MMPA. It is widespread in coastal areas of the Northern Hemisphere, in temperate and polar habitats. It is generally non-migratory and inhabits areas from the coast to the continental slope (Jefferson et al. 2008). On the U.S. west coast, this species is found in coastal and estuarine waters from Canada to Baja California, Mexico. Harbor seals inhabit temperate coastal habitats and use rocks, reefs, beaches, and drifting glacial ice for hauling out and pupping sites (NMFS 2018a). Diving averages less than 35 meters and they are generalist feeders (a variety of fish, cephalopods and crustaceans) (Jefferson et al. 2008). On land, harbor seals are very wary and shy, and will stampede into the water when disturbed. In the water, they are curious but cautious and will peer at people/boats. Harbor seals are subject to several threats: incidental capture in fishing gear (gillnets, trawls, purse seines, weirs), ship strikes, pollution, power plant entrainment, and harassment by humans when on land.

Potential for Occurrence. High potential to occur. Harbor seals have known haulouts and rookeries at Carpinteria Bluffs (Santa Barbara County) and Point Mugu (Ventura County); and haulouts from Point Conception to Santa Barbara and along all of the Channel Islands (CDFW 2009).

4.3 Critical Habitat

No designated critical habitat for federally-listed threatened and endangered species occurs within the Action Area (USFWS Environmental Online System (USFWS 2018b), NOAA Critical Habitat Maps (NOAA 2018c)).

5.0 EFFECTS OF THE ACTION

5.1 Effects of the Project Actions

This section analyzes all of the potential effects to listed species from Project Actions. As described in NMFS (2009) and 50 CFR 402.02, **direct effects** are those that have direct or immediate effects on the species or its habitat during construction. These effects include temporary changes in marine wildlife behavior from construction noise; and temporary construction disturbance to feeding habitat. **Indirect effects** are those that are caused by or will result from the Project Action later in time, after completion of initial construction, but still reasonably certain to occur. These effects include marine mammal disturbance due to inadvertent spills or introduction of chemical pollutants; release of invasive species, parasites, and pathogens from seed stock; effects on sediment quality due to biodeposits and changes in benthic invertebrate species; phytoplankton consumption, and fouling organisms and non-native species. Effects that may occur **both** during construction (direct effects) and later in time (indirect effect) include entanglement in aquaculture gear; vessel strikes; noise disturbance from vessels, and interference with migration or feeding routes. Each of these effects is discussed more in detail below. In addition, further assessments and mitigation measures aimed at avoiding, reducing, or remedying the effect of Project Actions are recommended below.

Direct and Indirect Effects (Occurring During and After Construction)

- **Potential for Marine Wildlife Entanglement in Aquaculture Gear.** The Project Actions may result in marine mammal entanglement. Mussel aquaculture utilizes various ropes in the water column that may pose an entanglement risk to cetaceans and sea turtles. In contrast to fishing gear, however, there are far fewer documented entanglement cases in mussel aquaculture gear. Interactions and entanglements with longline aquaculture gear worldwide are rare, and close approaches by protected species are seldom documented (Price et al. 2016). West coast entanglement summaries for 2015 and 2016 report no entanglements from mussel aquaculture fisheries (NOAA 2017c). There have been no reported marine mammal entanglements associated with Santa Barbara Mariculture, which has operated a 25-acre mussel aquaculture farm in the Santa Barbara Channel, using similar cultivation techniques, for over a decade (CDFG 2018).

Reported entanglements are predominantly from crab, gillnet and spiny lobster fisheries. Fixed fisheries gear (e.g., pot and trap gear) is the most commonly recognized and reported gear type causing entanglements since 2000. Documented entangled animals and disentanglement efforts in the Pacific Northwest have mostly involved gray whales and humpback whales and have involved both gill nets and crab gear. While not as common, both fin and blue whales are sometimes entangled in gill nets and crab gear based on a few stranded animals and scarring on live animals (NOAA 2014). More recently, from 2014 to 2017, the majority of the whale entanglements involved humpback whales and most of the entanglements were from commercial Californian and Washington Dungeness crab traps, and gillnet fisheries (NOAA 2017c). Large whale species appear to be more vulnerable to entanglement than smaller cetacean species, such as dolphins and porpoises, which are more prone to be caught as bycatch in nets due to their smaller size (Benjamins et al. 2014). Furthermore, juveniles are more likely to be entangled due to their inquisitive nature and inexperience. The

proposed mussel culture techniques have some significant differences as compared to crab and fishing gear that reduce the potential for marine mammal entanglement. As opposed to fishery gear, the mussel aquaculture gear is stationary, the lines are larger, and the gear is not designed to catch or ensnare fish. Further, as described below, the lines will be highly tensioned, which reduces the risk of marine mammals being caught in slack lines. Therefore, the project design is expected to pose a much smaller risk to marine mammal entanglement compared to longline fishing methods.

Cetaceans also have different ways in which they can perceive mussel farm lines and navigate around them. For example, odontocetes, such as harbor porpoises, are able to use echolocation to detect the lines (Lloyd 2003; Nielson et al. 2012), and minke whales are able to detect and avoid ropes that are white or black (Kot et al. 2012). No entanglements have been reported for pinnipeds with this method of mussel aquaculture (Lloyd 2003, Clement 2013).

Entanglements involving sea turtles and cetaceans have occurred in mussel aquaculture operations in Australia, New Zealand, Iceland, South Korea and Canada (Young et al. 2015). Entanglement risk is highest at mussel farms that employ mussel spat collecting ropes, as these ropes are thinner and more flexible making them more conducive to entanglement (Keeley et al. 2009). The majority of entanglements have involved these thinner mussel spat collector ropes or buoy lines connected to them. To avoid this concern, Mitigation Measure BIO-4 requires all mussel spat to be provided by land-based hatcheries certified by the California Department of Fish and Wildlife (or collected from grow-out lines) and will prohibit spat collector ropes. The project will only utilize grow-out ropes, which are thicker and more tightly anchored and tensioned (Lindell 2014; Moore & Wieting, 1999; Price et al. 2017).

Lines with spat or mature muscles will be freely hanging (not looping ropes), thereby allowing wildlife to traverse through the area. These lines will likely be heavy enough and under sufficient tension to prevent loose lines from becoming entangled and forming loops or knots along the longline. In addition, it is anticipated that when muscles are harvested, the lines will immediately be re-seeded with spat. Project design specifications are also proposed to minimize protected marine mammal and sea turtle entanglement. The longlines that will be used are a thick (1-inch-diameter) tensioned (to approximately 800 pounds) rope that is not conducive to wrapping around or entangling protected species. The mussel grow-out ropes themselves are typically planted with seed 3 inches thick and may grow to be stiff with byssus at diameters of 10 inches or more at harvest, thus making them very unlikely sources of entanglement. As an additional precaution, grow-ropes will be attached to the headrope with a low-breaking-strength twine (4-millimeter (0.16-inch) diameter; <1,000 pounds), which will facilitate rapid detachment in the unlikely event of any marine mammal interaction with the longline (see Mitigation Measure BIO-2).

Other potential entanglement points include (1) two vertical lines to the surface buoys marking each end of the headrope and (2) one pull-up buoy line for servicing at the midpoint. To minimize these potential entanglements, a 1,100-pound breakaway link will be installed between these buoys and the vertical lines, similar to strategies used to mitigate potential entanglement in trap fisheries in the northeastern United States (NOAA 2008). Buoy lines between the surface and headrope are generally under tension partially equivalent

(0 to 10 kilograms (0 to 22 pounds)) to their full buoyancy (42 kilograms (93 pounds)). Overall, the longline configuration produces a fairly rigid structure under tension, with stout lines and little slack.

Other mitigation measures have been incorporated into the project to further minimize the potential for marine mammal entanglement. The project will incorporate a marine wildlife entanglement plan to regularly check equipment for evidence of marine mammal entanglement (MM BIO-1) and require a qualified marine wildlife observer to be present during construction activities that can halt activities if marine mammals are observed (MM BIO-3). Further details regarding these measures are found in the mitigation measures provided in Section 5. After the incorporation of these mitigation measures and given the lack of documented marine mammal entanglement incidents associated with the proposed aquaculture cultivation method, impacts associated with marine mammal entanglement are considered insignificant.

- **Ship Strikes Due to Increased Activity.** Vessel strikes are known to be a hazard to a number of marine species, particularly whales. Project Actions may result in an additional 20 to 40 small boats traveling to lease sites on an average of 3 times per week to daily and would therefore contribute to increased boat traffic in the area during both construction and regular operations. Between 1988 and 2012, there were 100 documented large whale ship strikes along the California coast (NOAA 2017b). Large whale species are vulnerable to collisions with all vessel types, classes and sizes (NOAA 2017b); however, most collisions are associated with large container and freight ships due to their mass and the speed at which they transit the shipping lanes (Silber et al. 2010). When large vessels such as container ships are involved, the crew may be unaware a strike has occurred. As such, the number of ship strikes to whales is likely under reported. Most cases where whales were known to be severely hurt or killed occurred at vessel speeds of 14 knots or more and were caused by large ships of 80 meters or more in length (Laist et al., 2001). However, collisions with smaller boats, such as those that would be used for the aquaculture operations, do have the potential to injure or kill marine wildlife, especially when travelling at high speeds (Ritter 2012). Large container or freight ships will not be used during construction of the mussel farm nor during regular maintenance. To address this concern, the project will require continuous education regarding how to properly interact with marine mammals if encountered during operations (MM BIO-5) and include vessel management requirements if vessels observe marine mammals in close proximity to the vessel (MM BIO-6). After incorporation of these mitigation measures, impacts associated with ship strikes are considered insignificant.
- **Interference with Migration or Feeding Routes.** The Project Actions will result in increased human activity and the establishment of aquaculture facilities across 2,000 acres. Available habitat within Southern California Bight includes 400 miles of recessed coastline from Point Conception, Santa Barbara County to Cabo Colnet, Mexico, (SCCWRP 2016) and comprises over 6 million acres. Increased human activity and facilities during construction and operation may deter marine wildlife from using previously open and unoccupied areas for feeding or migration in different spatial and temporal ways. As a result, marine wildlife may be forced to seek feeding or open migration routes outside of the Action Area, thereby causing wildlife to expend time and energy seeking these resources. The project site is within the northward migration route for gray whales but it is largely unknown how many marine species perceive and respond to man-made structures in the ocean (Price et al. 2017). Habitat exclusion can range from low to high risk depending upon

the location and density of mussel farms. Existing studies have demonstrated the potential for species to be excluded from foraging habitats. Lloyd (2003) describes how curtains of mussel growing lines may act as barriers and impede hunting behavior in dolphins (dusky, common, and Hector's dolphins) by interfering with sonar signals for finding prey and communicating with other members of the pod. Dusky dolphins rarely enter mussel farms (Markowitz et al. 2004). Whales and some dolphins tend to be more sensitive, while pinnipeds and both common and bottlenose dolphins seem attracted to the underwater arrays (Clement 2013). Dusky dolphins were observed foraging adjacent to mussel farms pointing to the suggestion that fish may be attracted to the structure (Price et al. 2017). Most studies were conducted in nearshore waters and it is uncertain how, or even if these results, pertain to offshore longline mussel farms in deep open ocean locations. However, this effect would be minimal due to the expansive open ranges that are open for marine wildlife in the greater region, and the project site is not located within critical habitat.

Direct Effects (Construction-Related Effects)

- **Changes in Marine Wildlife Behavior from Construction.** Disturbance to marine wildlife such as construction-related noise could occur from anchor installation and array set up. Noise effects may have a variety of indirect effects on marine wildlife species, including increased stress, weakened immune systems, altered feeding behavior, altered mother-infant relationships, displacement due to startle, degraded communication with conspecifics (e.g., masking), damaged hearing from extremely loud noises, and increased vulnerability to predators (MMC 2007; NMFS 2016c; Thomsen 2009). Another potential effect is abandonment of an area due to human disturbance which has been shown in several species (Lloyd 2003). The NOAA Fisheries criteria distinguishes between impulse sound, such as that from impact pile driving, and continuous sounds, such as that from vibratory pile driving. The Level A (injury) and Level B (disturbance) threshold levels used by NOAA Fisheries are summarized in Table 2 for cetaceans (whales, dolphins, and porpoises) and pinnipeds (seals and sea lions). NOAA is developing comprehensive guidance on sound characteristics likely to cause injury and behavioral disruption in the context of the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA), Endangered Species Act (FESA) and other statutes. Until formal guidance is available, NOAA Fisheries uses conservative thresholds of received sound pressure levels from broad band sounds that may cause behavioral disturbance and injury, and the criterion levels specified in Table 1 are specific to the levels of harassment permitted under the MMPA (NMFS 2018e). Project Activities will temporarily disturb and alter the seafloor habitat from the placement of screw anchors used to hold the lines, ropes, floats, and buoys. Construction-related noise with the installation of sand screw anchors is very low in the water, with only a 50 horsepower hydraulic power pack on the boat, stipulating that noise will not approach NOAA thresholds. Furthermore, rotation speeds are also very low, which minimizes entanglement of marine species. The anchor installation disturbs less than 1 square meter of sea bed on installation and once installed no rope or chain touches the sea floor which also minimizes seabed disturbance (Fielder Marine Services, New Zealand, Pers.comm). Marine species that are the focus of this assessment are highly mobile and have the ability to temporarily avoid the project site during construction activities. Therefore, noise impacts associated with installation of equipment are considered insignificant.

Table 1
NOAA Fisheries Acoustic Thresholds

Criterion	Criterion Definition	Threshold
<i>In-Water (Excluding Tactical Sonar and Explosives)</i>		
Level A	PTS (injury) conservatively based on TTS	190 dB _{rms} ¹ for pinnipeds 180 dB _{rms} for cetaceans
Level B	Behavioral disruption for impulsive noise (e.g., impact pile driving)	160 dB _{rms}
Level B	Behavioral disruption for non-pulse noise (e.g., vibratory pile driving, drilling)	120 dB _{rms}
<i>In-Air</i>		
Level A	PTS (injury) conservatively based on TTS	None established
Level B	Behavioral disruption for harbor seals	90 dB _{rms}
Level B	Behavioral disruption for non-harbor seal pinnipeds	100 dB _{rms}

Indirect Effects (After Completion of Initial Construction)

- Oil Spills.** Construction and harvesting operations (and the use of any heavy equipment) could result in water-quality effects due to chemical-compound pollution (fuel, oil, lubricants, inadvertent spills, and other materials) in the event of an oil spill. As with any mechanized machinery, there is a small risk of accidental discharge of fuel, lubricants, or hydraulic fluids, which could affect marine wildlife in the area and result in injury and/or mortality to wildlife in the area of the contaminant through ingestion, physical contact that reduces survival functions (e.g., oiled wildlife), or a reduction in suitable feeding habitat. Although spills of this nature are detrimental to aquatic organisms, it is expected that the impacts would be negligible because of the limited occurrence of spills and corrective actions.
- Marine Debris.** The project has the potential to create marine debris if aquaculture gear breaks free through poor maintenance or damage from storm or wave activity. Entanglement may occur if aquaculture gear comes loose, washes away, or otherwise escapes into the environment as a result of tide, wind, or wave action. Additional risk may occur if derelict fishing gear, lines, and other materials become entangled in the longline arrays of this project, which could compromise structural integrity and/or exacerbate the risk of marine wildlife entanglements. There is also a risk that marine debris could be ingested by gray whales and sea turtles. To address this concern, Mitigation Measure BIO-10 incorporates an aquaculture gear monitoring and escapement plan to routinely check and maintain aquaculture gear to prevent breakage and quickly retrieve any gear that breaks free. Further, Mitigation Measure BIO-11 incorporates a decommissioning plan to require timely removal of aquaculture gear once shellfish operations cease on a parcel. Upon incorporation of the proposed mitigation, impacts associated with marine debris are considered insignificant.

¹ RMS refers to the sound pressure level that is square root of the sum of the squares of the pressure contained within a defined period from the initial time to the final time. For marine mammals, the RMS pressure historically has been calculated over the period of the pulse that contains 90% of the acoustical energy.

- **Release of Potentially Invasive Species, Parasites, and Pathogens from Seed Stock.** Mussel aquaculture practices have the potential to introduce invasive species, parasites, and pathogens into the environment via contaminated seed stock, which could have detrimental effects on the California marine ecosystem. However, this project will use spat from hatcheries certified by CDFW to not contain invasive species, parasites or pathogens of concern or will be collected directly from grow-out lines. Seed stock, other than those obtained from State waters, must be inspected and certified before planting in compliance with Sections 15201 and 15600 of the Fish and Game Code. Mediterranean mussels are a non-native, but naturalized species. In fact, this mussel is now one of the most abundant mussel species between Marin County and San Diego (Suchanek et al. 1997). Given the widespread nature of this species, the proposed mussel farm would have a negligible effect on the surrounding environment. Furthermore, benthic characteristics of the project site demonstrate a lack of available suitable substrate for any further establishment of mussels beyond the project site, as the closest substrate where mussels could establish beyond the project site is several miles away.
- **Disturbance/ Displacement of the Benthic Environment.** Effects on sediment quality underneath shellfish aquaculture gear could be impacted from biodeposits and changes to the benthic invertebrate species composition. The Project Actions have the potential to disturb or alter the seafloor habitat by the deposition of biological materials resulting from dislodged or discharged shells, shell fragments, and deposits from the growing operation accumulating on the seafloor beneath the aquaculture structures. Such material typically includes feces and pseudofeces from the cultivated shellfish, as well as fouling organisms such as algae, barnacles, sponges, and other invertebrates that accumulate on the project equipment and subsequently become dislodged by natural processes, or due to harvesting or cleaning operations. Cultivated shellfish or shells from can also be dislodged from the structure during growth, storm events, predation by marine wildlife, and cleaning and harvesting activities. The accumulation of material including shell fragments, intact shells, fouling organisms, and feces can alter the physical and chemical characteristics of the bottom substrate, and can affect the benthic community and sediment-dwelling organisms that may be sensitive to conditions such as substrate composition and chemistry. Accumulation of material could also attract organisms that would change the composition of the benthic community. Other potential benthic impacts can include increased loads on sediment dissolved oxygen and redox conditions, and changes to nutrient cycling resulting in a decrease in benthic species abundance and sediment porosity (Pearson and Rosenberg 1978; Wilding and Nickell 2013; Wilding 2012). The effect on benthic nitrogen cycling is determined by biogeochemical and physical variables, such as water depth, current velocities, and bottom type and composition (CFGF 2018). Shellfish are able to alter the biogeochemical process in the water column by stimulating nitrification (Souchu et al. 2001). Mussel farms that are located in areas with greater water depths and current speeds, spread biodeposits over a larger area without posing the risk of enhanced sediment nutrient release (Stadmark & Conley 2011). A local mussel farm, the Santa Barbara Mariculture Company, with thirteen years in operation, conducted benthic analysis testing. This sediment analysis testing examined grain size, and levels of benthic epifaunal and infaunal biodiversity both within the farm and outside of the farm, and found no significant benthic impact (CFGF 2018). Given the conditions at the Ventura Shellfish Enterprise project site, with the significant depth, wave action and mixing, this potential impact is unlikely to be significant and bioaccumulation is expected to be dispersed over a larger area. To confirm this conclusion, Mitigation

Measure BIO-9 has been incorporated, which requires monitoring of sediment quality and composition to evaluate any benthic impacts associated with the project.

Installation of the anchors proposed with the project also has the potential to displace benthic invertebrates. However, the adverse impacts to epifauna and infauna would be minimal. Each anchor would only have a footprint of less than one square meter. The total habitat area that would be disturbed by the proposed project would be small and regionally insignificant when compared to the overall amount of habitat available in the area. Further, many benthic invertebrates are mobile and would quickly recolonize the area after installation of the anchors. Therefore, impacts associated with benthic disturbance are considered insignificant.

- **Fouling Organisms and Nonnative Species.** The submerged structures of the Project Actions can provide hard substrate habitat for invasive “fouling organisms.” Fouling organisms, such as invasive algae, sea squirts, and mussels, can pose economic and ecological risks to the marine environment. For example, the invasive carpet sea squirt (*Didemnum vexillum*) reproduces rapidly and fouls marine habitats (including shellfish aquaculture operations and fishing grounds), ship’s hulls, and maritime structures. Like other fouling organisms, they are found on hard substrates that include floats, moorings and ropes, steel chain and ship hulls. They overgrow other marine organisms such as tunicates, sponges, macro algae, hydroids, anemones, bryozoans, scallops, mussels, and oysters. Where these colonies occur on the seabed, they likely cover the siphons of infaunal bivalves and serve as a barrier between demersal fish (or benthic feeding grey whales) and their prey. However, the invasive carpet sea squirt is not present in the Channel Islands area. The nearest known occurrences are in Monterey Bay and Mission Bay in San Diego (Woods Hole Science Center 2007). Further, there is a lack of available substrate within or near the project site suitable for colonization by fouling organisms, as these invasive species cannot attach themselves to the sandy bottom substrate at the project site.
- **Carrying Capacity (Phytoplankton Consumption).** Mussels feed primarily on phytoplankton filtered from the water column. Each individual is capable of filtering over 20-gallons of seawater per day (Okumus et al. 2002). Hence, in some circumstances, large concentrations of mussels found in mussel farms can remove a significant proportion of available phytoplankton from the water column in an area, causing localized phytoplankton depletion (Okumus et al. 2002). Other studies suggest that nutrient regeneration in the water column within mussel farms is high, as phytoplankton consumed by the mussels results in released nutrients supporting new phytoplankton production (CFGC 2018). Ventura Shellfish Enterprise has adopted the methodology utilized by CDFW to evaluate carrying capacity impacts associated with Santa Barbara Mariculture Company’s mussel aquaculture farm, whereby the standing stock of phytoplankton biomass outside the facility is determined and compared with the filtration/consumption rate of mussels within the farm. The results of the Santa Barbara Mariculture Company indicated that total production of the fully built-out farm would not have an adverse impact on phytoplankton in the Santa Barbara Channel (CFGC 2018). Similarly, calculations for the Ventura Shellfish Enterprise mussel farm indicate that no adverse impact on phytoplankton in the Santa Barbara Channel would occur (Appendix C).

5.1.1 FEDERALLY-LISTED SPECIES

5.1.1.1 Cetaceans

Gray Whale

Direct Effects

As described in Section 4.0, gray whales and their calves forage and travel in close proximity to shore during their northward migration. Due to their size, behavior, and occurrence close to shore, gray whales are likely to be affected by the Project Actions. The gray whale is a frequent visitor to the Santa Barbara Channel and may migrate directly along the path of the project site. As a result, gray whales may experience both direct and indirect effects from the Project Actions. If Project Actions will occur during the migration period, adults (and particularly calves) have the potential for entanglement in aquaculture gear. However, gray whales routinely swim through kelp and are adept at navigating obstacles, given they are accustomed to coastal areas. Absent mitigation, entanglement could adversely affect this species. However, with incorporation of **MM BIO-1 through BIO-5**, the effect would be reduced.

As described in Section 4.0, one of the main threats to gray whales is from ship strikes. Project Actions will involve an increase in boat traffic both within the Project Action Area and routes to and from the Ventura Harbor. Ship strike risk may also increase at nighttime when whales are resting, unaware of ship presence, and are less visible to staff onboard. Absent mitigation, the Project Actions have the potential to result in injury and/or mortality to gray whales from ship strikes, which would adversely affect this species. However, with incorporation of **MM BIO-6**, the effect would be reduced.

Project Actions have the potential to interfere with gray whale migration and feeding routes. However, the Santa Barbara Channel measures over 20 miles wide and the Project Action Area would be under 2 miles wide. Due to the expansive open ranges that are available for grey whales in the greater region, the Project Actions interference with migration and feeding routes would not adversely affect this species.

Project Actions have the potential to result in changes of gray whale migration or feeding behavior during construction from noise or disturbance to benthic feeding areas. Although noise effects will be very low, gray whales may temporarily avoid construction areas. Absent mitigation, construction activities may adversely affect this species. However, with incorporation of **MM BIO-3, MM BIO-5 and MM BIO-6**, the effect would be reduced.

Indirect Effects

Project Actions have the potential to result in inadvertent oil spills. Any grey whales traversing through areas that enter areas containing material from oil spills or other pollutants may experience immediate health effects. Absent mitigation, Project Activities may adversely affect this species. However, with incorporation of **MM BIO-7**, the effect would be reduced.

Project Actions have the potential to result in the release of invasive species, parasites, and pathogens. Absent mitigation, Project Activities may adversely affect this species through reducing its access to prey within the Project Area. However, with incorporation of **MM BIO-4, MM BIO-8, and MM BIO-10** the effect would be reduced.

Determination of Effects

Project Actions have the potential to result in direct and indirect effects to grey whale individuals and/or their migration and feeding habitats. The highest risk to this species includes entanglement in gear and vessel strikes. Construction activities are anticipated to be relatively brief (several weeks) within each plot which would cause temporary changes to grey whale feeding and migrating behavior. In addition, due to the availability of feeding habitat in the Santa Barbara Channel, Project Actions are not anticipated to interfere with gray whale migration and feeding routes. Additional Project effects to this species include the potential effects on sediment quality from aquaculture farms or fouling organisms. Measures to avoid and minimize any potential adverse effects to grey whale are discussed above and include **MM BIO-1 through BIO-11**. With implementation of these measures, the effects of the Project Actions would not jeopardize the continued existence of this species. As such, the Project Actions **may affect, but is not likely to adversely affect** the grey whale.

Humpback Whale and Fin Whale

Humpback and fin whales are anticipated to experience similar effects as those described for grey whales, with the exception of effects to sediment quality and the fouling of organisms. As described below, these species are expected to be directly and indirectly effected by the Project Actions from entanglement, ship strikes, interference with migration or feeding routes, changes in behavior from construction activities, oil spills, and release of invasive species. Given recent reports, humpback whales may in fact be more susceptible to entanglements, given their size, large appendages relative to body size ratio, and propensity to roll when entangled (NOAA 2018f).

Direct Effects

Humpback and fin whales may transit directly along the path of the project site. If Project Actions occur during the migration period, individuals have the potential for entanglement in aquaculture gear. Absent mitigation, entanglement would adversely affect this species. However, with incorporation of **MM BIO-1 through BIO-5**, the effect would be reduced.

Project Actions will involve an increase in boat traffic both within the Project Action Area and routes to and from the Ventura Harbor. Ship strike risk may also increase at nighttime when whales are resting, unaware of ship presence, and are less visible to staff onboard. Absent mitigation, the Project Actions have the potential to result in injury and/or mortality to humpback and fin from ship strikes, which would adversely affect these species. However, with incorporation of **MM BIO-6**, the effect would be reduced.

Project Actions have the potential to interfere with humpback and fin whale migration and feeding routes. However, the Santa Barbara Channel measures over 20 miles wide and the Project Action Area would be under 2 miles wide. Due to the expansive open ranges that are available for these in the greater region, the Project Actions interference with migration and feeding routes would not adversely affect these species.

Project Actions have the potential to result in changes of humpback and fin whale migration or feeding behavior during construction from noise or avoidance of suitable feeding areas. Although, noise effects will be very low, these

species may temporarily avoid construction areas. Absent mitigation, construction activities may adversely affect this species. However, with incorporation of **MM BIO-3, MM BIO-5 and MM BIO-6**, the effect would be reduced.

Indirect Effects

Project Actions have the potential to result in inadvertent oil spills. Any humpback or fin whales traversing through areas that enter areas containing material from oil spills or other pollutants may experience immediate health effects. Absent mitigation, Project Activities may adversely affect these species. However, with incorporation of **MM BIO-7**, the effect would be reduced.

Determination of Effects

Project Actions have the potential to result in direct and indirect effects to humpback and fin whale individuals and/or their migration and feeding behaviors. The highest risk to these species includes entanglement in gear and vessel strikes. Construction activities are anticipated to be relatively brief (several weeks) within each plot which would cause temporary changes to humpback and fin whale feeding and migrating behavior. In addition, due to the availability of feeding habitat in the Santa Barbara Channel, Project Actions are not anticipated to interfere with these species' migration and feeding routes. Additional Project effects to these species include the release of invasive species, parasites, and pathogens from seed stock. Measures to avoid and minimize any potential adverse effects to the humpback and fin whale are discussed above and include **MM BIO-1 through BIO-11**. With implementation of these measures, the effects of the Project Actions would not jeopardize the continued existence or recovery of these species. As such, the Project Actions **may affect, but are not likely to adversely affect** the humpback and fin whales.

5.1.1.2 Sea Turtles

Direct Effects

Loggerhead and green sea turtles may traverse the Project Action Area during migration. Should marine debris (e.g., fishing nets or wire not a part of the Project Actions) become entangled on the aquaculture long lines, sea turtles may become entangled leading to injury and/or mortality. Absent mitigation, entanglement would adversely affect these species. However, with incorporation of **MM BIO-1 through BIO-5 and MM BIO-10**, the effect would be reduced.

Project Actions will involve an increase in boat traffic both within the Project Action Area and routes to and from the Ventura Harbor. Absent mitigation, the Project Actions have the potential to result in injury and/or mortality to sea turtles from ship strikes, which would adversely affect these species. However, with incorporation of **MM BIO-6**, the effect would be reduced.

Project Actions have the potential to interfere with sea turtle migration routes. However, the Santa Barbara Channel measures over 20 miles wide and the Project Action Area would be under 2 miles wide. Due to the expansive open ranges that are available for these in the greater region, the Project Actions interference with migration routes would not adversely affect these species.

Project Actions have the potential to result in changes of sea turtle migrating behavior during construction from noise or avoidance of migratory routes. Although noise effects will be very low, these species may temporarily avoid construction

areas. Artificial lighting during construction activities and regular operations can be disorienting to sea turtles (as well as seabirds and migratory birds). Absent mitigation, construction activities may adversely affect this species. However, with incorporation of **MM BIO-3, MM BIO-5, MM BIO-6 and MM BIO-12**, the effect would be reduced.

Indirect Effects

Project Actions have the potential to result in inadvertent oil spills. Any sea turtles traversing through areas that enter areas containing material oil spills or other pollutants may experience immediate health effects. Absent mitigation, Project Activities may adversely affect these species. However, with incorporation of **MM BIO-7**, the effect would be reduced.

Determination of Effects

Project Actions have the potential to result in direct and indirect effects to sea turtle individuals and/or their migration behaviors. The highest risk to these species includes entanglement in fugitive nets and fishing line that may become attached to aquaculture gear. Construction activities are anticipated to be relatively brief (several weeks) within each plot which would cause temporary changes to sea turtle and migrating behavior. In addition, due to the availability of open ocean in the Santa Barbara Channel, Project Actions are not anticipated to interfere with these species' migration routes. Additional Project effects to these species include possible ship strikes and the release of invasive species. Measures to avoid and minimize any potential adverse effects to sea turtles are discussed above and include **MM BIO-1 through BIO-12**. With implementation of these measures, the effects of the Project Actions would not jeopardize the continued existence or recovery of these species. As such, the Project Actions **may affect, but are not likely to adversely affect** the loggerhead and green sea turtles.

5.1.2 OTHER NON-LISTED SPECIES PROTECTED UNDER THE MMPA

5.1.2.1 Cetaceans

The common minke whale, common bottlenose dolphin, long-beaked common dolphin, short-beaked common dolphin, and pacific white-sided dolphin are anticipated to experience similar effects as those described for humpback and fin whale. However, these dolphins are resident that may be present in the Santa Barbara Channel year-round. As described below, these species are expected to be directly and indirectly effected by the Project Actions from entanglement, ship strikes, interference with migration or feeding routes, changes in behavior from construction noise, potential oil spills, and release of invasive species, parasites, and pathogens from seed stock. There are few documented cases of interactions between cetaceans and shellfish farms. However, in Australia, studies of bottlenose dolphins indicate that they avoid mussel farms in shallow nearshore waters and the displacement of habitat causes a reduction in fecundity (Kemper et al. 2003). This study involved coastal bottlenose dolphins, and it is unknown if displacement of habitat will occur in offshore waters for offshore bottlenose dolphins. Similarly, in New Zealand, dusky dolphins were seen avoiding mussel leases in shallow waters (they utilize shallow waters for foraging) which may indicate that placing mussel farms in nearshore waters affects their ability to forage. In Chile, a bay used by Chilean dolphins was completely filled in with mussel lines and the dolphins ceased to use the area for foraging (Kemper et al. 2003). These studies occur in shallow coastal waters and for different species than those that occur on the project site but it habitat displacement may occur to offshore species as well, such as bottlenose dolphins,

common dolphins, pacific white-sided dolphins and minke whales in the project area. If these species are prevented from foraging in the project area, it would be a small reduction in their overall foraging area and would not adversely affect these species.

Direct Effects

The common minke whale may migrate along the Project Action Area and many dolphins are year-round residents. If Project Actions occur during the common minke whale migration period, individuals have the potential for entanglement in aquaculture gear. In addition, dolphins have the potential for entanglement year-round. Normally adept at maneuvering around objects, individuals have the potential for entanglement in loose fishing nets, debris and other ghost gear that could become attached to the mussel aquaculture gear. Absent mitigation, entanglement may adversely affect these species. However, with incorporation of **MM BIO-1 through BIO-5 and MM BIO-10**, the effect would be reduced.

Project Actions will involve an increase in boat traffic both within the Project Action Area and routes to and from the Ventura Harbor. Ship strike risk may also increase at nighttime when migrating common minke whales may be resting, unaware of ship presence, and are less visible to staff onboard. In addition, dolphins are known to bow-ride which may result in accidental ship strikes to these species. Absent mitigation, the Project Actions have the potential to result in injury and/or mortality, which would adversely affect these species. However, with incorporation of **MM BIO-6**, the effect would be reduced.

Project Actions have the potential to interfere with common minke whale migration routes. In addition, foraging areas for the common minke whale and dolphins may be disrupted from Project Actions. However, the Santa Barbara Channel measures over 20 miles wide and the Project Action Area would be under 2 miles wide. Habitat displacement could occur for these species, but it would be a small reduction in their overall foraging area. Due to the expansive open ranges that are available for these in the greater region, the Project Actions interference with migration and feeding routes would not adversely affect this species.

Project Actions have the potential to result in changes of common minke whale migration along with whale and dolphin feeding behavior during construction from noise or avoidance of suitable feeding areas. These species may temporarily avoid construction areas or experience more long lasting and adverse effects, as described above. Absent mitigation, construction activities may adversely affect this species. However, with incorporation of **MM BIO-3, MM BIO-5 and MM BIO-6**, the effect would be reduced.

Indirect Effects

Project Actions have the potential to result in inadvertent oil spills. Any common minke whales or dolphins traversing through areas that enter areas containing material from oil spills or other pollutants may experience immediate health effects. Absent mitigation, Project Activities may adversely affect these species. However, with incorporation of **MM BIO-7**, the effect would be reduced.

Project Actions have the potential to result in the release of invasive species, parasites, and pathogens. Absent mitigation, Project Activities may adversely affect these species. However, with incorporation of **MM BIO-4** and **MM BIO-8**, the effect would be reduced.

Determination of Effects

Project Actions have the potential to result in direct and indirect effects to the common minke whale, common bottlenose dolphin, long-beaked common dolphin, short-beaked common dolphin, and pacific white-sided dolphin. The highest risk to these species includes entanglement in gear (loose fishing nets, debris, or other ghost gear that has become entangled in the aquaculture array) and vessel strikes. Construction activities are anticipated to be relatively brief (several weeks) within each plot which would cause temporary changes to whale and dolphin feeding and/or migrating behavior. In addition, due to the availability of feeding habitat in the Santa Barbara Channel, Project Actions are not anticipated to interfere with these species' migration and feeding routes. Additional Project effects to these species include the release of invasive species. Measures to avoid and minimize any potential adverse effects to the common minke whale and dolphins are discussed above and include MM BIO-1 through BIO-11. With implementation of these measures, the effects of the Project Actions would not jeopardize the continued existence of these species. As such, the Project Actions may affect, but are not likely to adversely affect these species.

5.1.2.2 Pinnipeds

Pinnipeds, including the California sea lion and Pacific harbor seal, are expected to experience similar effects as those described for small cetaceans. Similar to dolphins, pinnipeds are resident and are present in the Santa Barbara Channel year-round. As described below, these species are expected to be directly and indirectly effected by the Project Actions from entanglement, ship strikes, interference with feeding routes, changes in behavior from construction activities (disturbance), invasive species, parasites, and pathogens, altered marine food chains/habitat due to fouling the water and changes to the benthic fauna (Kemper et al. 2003). Other affects may include predator control.

Direct Effects

Pinnipeds may be present year round in the Project Action Area. There have been no reported interactions between pinnipeds and shellfish aquaculture (Kemper et al. 2003) indicating a very low possibility of an impact; however, individuals have the potential for entanglement in loose fishing nets, debris and other ghost gear that could become attached to the mussel aquaculture array. Absent mitigation, entanglement may adversely affect these species. However, with incorporation of **MM BIO-1 through BIO-5 and MM BIO-10**, the effect would be reduced.

Project Actions will involve an increase in boat traffic both within the Project Action Area and routes to and from the Ventura Harbor. Absent mitigation, the Project Actions have the potential to result in injury and/or mortality, which would adversely affect these species. However, with incorporation of **MM BIO-6**, the effect would be reduced.

Project Actions have the potential to interfere with pinniped feeding routes. However, the Santa Barbara Channel measures over 20 miles wide and the Project Action Area would be under 2 miles wide. Due to the expansive open ranges that are available for these in the greater region, the Project Actions interference with migration and feeding routes would not adversely affect this species.

Project Actions have the potential to result in changes of pinniped feeding behavior during construction from noise or avoidance of suitable feeding areas. These species may temporarily avoid construction areas or experience more long lasting and adverse effects, as described above. Absent mitigation, construction activities may adversely affect this species. However, with incorporation of **MM BIO-3, MM BIO-5 and MM BIO-6**, the effect would be reduced.

Predator control is unlikely to be needed for this project given the feeding preferences of pinnipeds in the area. However, if predator control is required, **MM BIO-13** will be incorporated.

Indirect Effects

Project Actions have the potential to result in inadvertent oil spills or other pollution. Any pinnipeds traversing through areas that contain material from oil spills may experience immediate health effects. Absent mitigation, Project Activities may adversely affect these species. However, with incorporation of **MM BIO-7**, the effect would be reduced.

Project Actions have the potential to result in the release of invasive species, parasites, and pathogens. Absent mitigation, Project Activities may adversely affect these species. However, with incorporation of **MM BIO-4 and MM BIO-8**, the effect would be reduced.

Determination of Effects

Project Actions have the potential to result in direct and indirect effects to pinnipeds, including the California sea lion, and Pacific harbor seal. The highest risk to these species includes vessel strikes. Construction activities are anticipated to be relatively brief (several weeks) within each plot which would cause temporary changes to pinniped feeding behavior. In addition, due to the availability of feeding habitat in the Santa Barbara Channel, Project Actions are not anticipated to interfere with these species' feeding routes. Additional Project effects to these species include the release of invasive species, parasites, and pathogens from seed stock. Measures to avoid and minimize any potential adverse effects to pinnipeds are discussed above and include **MM BIO-1 through BIO-11**. With implementation of these measures, the effects of the Project Actions would not jeopardize the continued existence of these species. As such, the Project Actions **may affect, but are not likely to adversely affect** pinnipeds.

5.2 Mitigation Measures

MM BIO-1 Marine Wildlife Entanglement Plan. No less than once per month, each grower/producer operating on a VPD lease shall visually inspect all ropes, cables, and equipment via depth/fish finders to determine if any entanglement of a marine mammal has occurred and to ensure that (a) no lines have been broken, lost or removed; (b) all longlines, anchor lines, and buoy lines remain taught and in good working condition; and (c) any derelict fishing gear or marine debris that collects in the growing gear is removed and disposed of at an identified onshore facility. All equipment and materials accidentally released or found to be missing from the facility during monthly inspections, including buoys, floats, lines, ropes, chains, cultivation trays, wires, fasteners, and clasps, shall be searched for, collected, properly disposed of onshore, and documented in the annual inspection report. Monitoring shall occur monthly for the first two years following deployment and, in the event

that there are no marine wildlife entanglements within the first two years, may be reduced to quarterly inspections thereafter.

Inspections shall include recordings by depth/fish finder or ROV surveys of lines and/or monitoring performed by SCUBA divers. Recorded video shall be provided along with the annual report described above. Any maintenance issues including wear, loosening, or fatigue of materials shall be remedied as soon as possible. All incidents of observed whale entanglement shall be immediately reported to SOS WHALe. Any other marine wildlife (i.e., other marine mammals, turtles) observed to be entangled will be immediately reported to NOAA Fisheries Marine Mammal Stranding Network Coordinator, West Coast Region, Long Beach Office. Only personnel who have been authorized by NOAA Fisheries and who have training, experience, equipment, and support will attempt to disentangle marine wildlife. If possible, the grower/producer shall document and photograph entangled wildlife and the entangling gear material so as to modify gear and avoid any future entanglements.

MM BIO-2 Entanglement Prevention. Grow-ropes will be attached to the head rope with a low-breaking-strength twine (4-millimeter (0.16-inch) diameter; <1,000 pounds), which will facilitate rapid detachment in the unlikely event of any interaction with the longline. A 1,100-pound breakaway link will be installed between surface marking buoys and the vertical lines.

MM BIO-3 Marine Wildlife Observer. A Marine Wildlife Observer shall be present on each project construction vessel during all construction activities, including the installation of long lines and anchoring systems. The observer shall monitor and record the presence of all marine wildlife (marine mammals and sea turtles) within 100 yards of the work area. The observer shall have the authority to halt operations if marine wildlife are observed or anticipated to be near a work area and construction activities have the potential to result in injury or entanglement of marine wildlife. In addition, all work (including vessel motors) will be halted if a cetacean is observed within the monitoring area or if a pinniped or sea turtle is observed within 50 yards of the work area. Work may commence after the observed individuals have moved out of the monitoring area.

Observers' reports on marine mammal monitoring during construction activities shall be prepared and submitted to NOAA Fisheries on a monthly basis. Reports shall include such information as the (1) number, type, and location of marine mammals observed; (2) the behavior of marine mammals in the area of potential sound effects during construction; (3) dates and times when observations and in-water project construction activities were conducted; and (4) dates and times when in-water construction activities were suspended because of marine mammals.

VPD shall prepare a list of qualified marine wildlife observers who meet the following minimum qualifications: visual acuity in both eyes (correction is permissible) sufficient to discern moving targets at the water's surface with ability to estimate target size and distance; (2) use of binoculars or

spotting scope may be necessary to correctly identify the target; (3) advanced education in biological science, wildlife management, mammalogy, or related fields (bachelor's degree or higher is preferred); (4) experience and ability to conduct field observations and collect data according to assigned protocols (this may include academic experience); (5) experience or training in the field identification of marine mammals (cetaceans and pinnipeds) and sea turtles; and (6) ability to communicate orally, by radio or in person, with project personnel to provide real time information on marine wildlife observed in the area, as needed.

MM BIO-4 Cultivation of Spat Off site. Only hatchery-reared mussel spat grown at a facility certified by CDFW will be used in order to ensure that spat are free of introduced invasive species, parasites, and pathogens of concern; however, natural mussel spat collected on farm grow-out lines and buoys may also be harvested and cultivated.

MM BIO-5 Marine Wildlife Education. Each grower/producer will be required to provide bi-annual (twice per year) marine wildlife education to its employees regarding proper procedures relating to marine wildlife. The training curriculum will include identifying the presence of specified marine wildlife and procedures for avoiding impacts to marine wildlife during operations. These procedures will include (1) reducing speed and observing the distances from marine life specified in MM BIO-6; (2) providing a safe path of travel for marine mammals that avoids encirclement or entrapment of the animal(s) between the vessel and growing apparatus; (3) if approached by a marine mammal, reducing speed, placing the vessel in neutral and waiting until the animal is observed clear of the vessel before making way; (4) avoiding sudden direction or speed changes when near marine mammals; (5) refraining from approaching, touching or feeding a marine mammal; and (6) immediately contacting their supervisor and other identified parties/agencies identified in MM BIO-1 should an employee observe an injured marine mammal.

MM BIO-6 Vessel Management. Vessels in transit to and from the growing area shall maintain a distance of 100 yards from any observed cetacean and 50 yards between any observed pinniped or sea turtle. If cetaceans are observed within 100 yards or pinnipeds or sea turtles observed within 50 yards, the vessel shall reduce speeds to 12 knots or less until it is the appropriate distance (as required by this condition) from the particular marine life. If a cetacean is heading into the direct path of the vessel (i.e., approaching a moving vessel directly into the bow), the vessel shall shut off the engine until the cetacean is no longer approaching the bow and until a greater separation distance is observed. If small cetaceans are observed bow-riding, and the vessel is operating at speeds of 12 knots or less, the vessel shall remain parallel to the animal's course and avoid abrupt changes in direction until the cetaceans have left the area.

Each sighting of a federally listed threatened or endangered whale or turtle shall be recorded and the following information shall be provided:

- a. Date, time, coordinates of vessel
- b. Visibility, weather, sea state

- c. Vector of sighting (distance, bearing)
- d. Duration of sighting
- e. Species and number of animals
- f. Observed behaviors (feeding, diving, breaching, etc.)
- g. Description of interaction with aquaculture facility

MM BIO-7 Spill Prevention and Response. Discharges of feed, pesticides, or chemicals (including antibiotics and hormones) in ocean waters are prohibited. Fuel, lubricants and chemicals must be labeled, stored and disposed of in a safe and responsible manner, and marked with warning signs. Precautions shall be taken to prevent spills, fires and explosions, and procedures and supplies shall be readily available to manage chemical and fuel spills or leaks. Each grower/producer shall comply with the Spill Prevention and Response Plan (SPRP) for vessels and work barges that will be used during project construction and operations. Each grower/producer operating in the project area shall be trained in, and adhere to, the emergency procedures and spill prevention and response measures specified in the SPRP during all project operations. The SPRP shall provide for emergency response and spill control procedures to be taken to stop or control the source of the spill and to contain and clean up the spill. The SPRP shall include, at a minimum: (a) identification of potential spill sources and quantity estimates of a project specific reasonable worst case spill; (b) identification of prevention and response equipment and measures/procedures that will be taken to prevent potential spills and to protect marine and shoreline resources in the event of a spill. Spill prevention and response equipment shall be kept onboard project vessels at all times; (c) a prohibition on at-sea vessel or equipment fueling/refueling activities; and (d) emergency response and notification procedures, including a list of contacts to call in the event of a spill; (e) assurance that all hydraulic fluid to be used for installation, maintenance, planting, and harvesting activities shall be vegetable based.

MM BIO-8 Invasive Species. Grower/producers operating in the project area shall be required to receive training from NMFS to identify potential invasive species and how to properly dispose of such invasive species if discovered.

MM BIO-9 Sediment Quality Monitoring Plan. A Sediment Quality Monitoring Plan shall be developed requiring monitoring of sediment conditions within the project area, including monitoring the quantity, type, and distribution of biological materials (such as shellfish, shell material, and fouling organisms) that accumulate on the seafloor. Monitoring will also include an evaluation of any changes to oxygen demand of benthic infaunal and epifaunal communities, and changes to the chemical and biochemical conditions of seafloor sediments along with a description of performance standards to meet.

If performance standards are not met, corrective actions will be outlined. The Plan will include reporting requirements, including annual report submittals to NOAA and NMFS for review. If performance standards are met for a period of time, the plan will provide for appropriately scaling down monitoring and intervals over time.

- MM BIO-10 Aquaculture Gear Monitoring and Escapement Plan.** Include in overall management plan an aquaculture gear monitoring and escapement plan. Any farm gear that has broken loose from the farm location shall be retrieved. The farm site shall be visited at minimum twice per month to examine the aquaculture gear for potential loss or non-compliant deployment, including inspections for fouling organisms. Any organisms that have a potential to cover the sea floor will be removed and disposed of at an identified upland facility. A Marine Debris Management Plan shall also be prepared that includes (a) a plan for permanently marking all lines, ropes, buoys, and other facility infrastructure and floating equipment with the name and contact information of the grower/producer; (b) a description of the extent and frequency of maintenance operations necessary to minimize the loss of materials and equipment to the marine environment resulting from breakages and structural failures; and (c) a description of the search and cleanup measures that would be implemented if loss of shellfish cultivation facility materials, equipment, and/or infrastructure occurs.
- MM BIO-11 Decommissioning Plan.** A decommissioning plan for the timely removal of all shellfish, structures, anchoring devices, equipment, and materials associated with the shellfish cultivation facility and documentation of completion of removal activities will be a requirement of each permit or sub-permit. Financial assurances to guarantee implementation of the plan will be in place and reviewed periodically.
- MM BIO-12 Lighting.** All growing area operations shall be completed during daylight hours. No growing area operations will be conducted at night and no permanent artificial lighting of the shellfish cultivation facility shall occur, except for that associated with the use of navigational safety buoys required by the U.S. Coast Guard.
- MM BIO-13 Predator Control.** Potential predator species will be identified. Specified humane methods of predator deterrence will be utilized, favoring non-lethal methods. No controls, other than non-lethal exclusion, shall be applied to species that are listed as threatened or endangered.
- MM NAV-1 Update NOAA Charts.** VPD to submit to the NOAA Office of Coast Survey: (a) the geographical coordinates of the facility boundaries obtained using a different geographic position unit or comparable navigational equipment; (b) as-built plans of the facility and associated buoys and anchors; (c) each grower/producer's point of contact and telephone number; and (d) any other information required by the NOAA Office of Coast Survey to accurately portray the location of the shellfish cultivation facility on navigational charts.
- MM NAV-2 Notice to Mariners.** No less than 15-days prior to the start of in-water activities associated with the installation phase of the project, VPD shall submit to (a) the U.S. Coast Guard (for publication in a Notice to Mariners); and (b) the harbor masters (for posting in their offices of public noticeboards), notices containing the anticipated start date of installation, the anticipated installation schedule, and the coordinates of the installation sites. During installation, VPD shall also make radio broadcast announcements to the local fishers' emergency radio frequency that provide the current installation location and a phone number that can be called for additional information.

5.3 Cumulative Effects

Section 7 (FESA) regulations require a federal agency taking an action to provide an analysis of cumulative effects when requesting initiation of formal consultation. Cumulative effects include the effects of future state, tribal, local, or private actions, not involving a federal action, that are reasonably certain to occur in or adjacent to the project site. Future federal actions that are unrelated to the Proposed Action are not considered in this analysis, because they require separate consultation pursuant to Section 7. Federal actions may include granting a permit for a project, authorizing funds for a project, or implementing a project. For the purposes of this BA, cumulative effects are defined as environmental change that results from the incremental effects of several projects that may be individually minor, but that become significant when considered collectively. There are no known actions (Federal, State or Tribal) slated to occur in or immediately adjacent to the project area.

5.4 Compensatory Mitigation

No impacts requiring compensatory mitigation will result from implementation of the Project Actions.

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

6.0 CONCLUSIONS

This BA forms the basis for the conclusions presented below regarding the effects of the Project Actions on thirteen species with a potential to occur in the action area. Based on a review of the current status of these species, the effects of the Project Actions, and recommended measures to avoid and minimize effects to listed species, the Project Actions may **affect, but are not likely to adversely affect** each of these species. Table 2 below summarizes the effects determination for the Project Actions.

Table 2
Summary of Effects Determinations

Federally Protected Species	No Effect	May Affect, But Is Not Likely to Adversely Affect	Is Likely to Adversely Affect
<i>Balaenoptera acutorostrata</i> Common Minke Whale		✓	
<i>Balaenoptera physalus physalus</i> Fin Whale		✓	
<i>Caretta caretta</i> Loggerhead Sea Turtle		✓	
<i>Chelonia mydas</i> Green Sea Turtle		✓	
<i>Delphinus capensis capensis</i> Long-beaked Common Dolphin		✓	
<i>Delphinus delphis delphis</i> Short-beaked Common Dolphin		✓	
<i>Eschrichtius robustus</i> Gray Whale		✓	
<i>Lagenorhynchus obliquidens</i> Pacific White-sided Dolphin		✓	
<i>Megaptera novaeangliae</i> Humpback Whale		✓	
<i>Phoca vitulina</i> Pacific Harbor Seal		✓	
<i>Tursiops truncatus</i> Common Bottlenose Dolphin		✓	
<i>Zalophus californianus</i> California Sea Lion		✓	

As noted in the Nationwide Permit (NWP) 48 Decision Document (USACE 2017) recently approved by the Corps, which considered shellfish aquaculture uses nationwide, “Compared to the disturbances and degradation caused by coastal development, pollution, and other human activities in coastal areas, commercial shellfish aquaculture activities present relatively mild disturbances to estuarine and marine ecosystems.” The Decision Document

concludes that impacts from most aquaculture projects would be *de minimis* on the surrounding environment. This determination is generally reaffirmed in the Corps' 2015 Programmatic Biological Assessment (USACE 2015) that considered new and existing shellfish aquaculture in Washington State, as well as the 2016 Programmatic Biological Opinions from NOAA's NMFS (NMFS 2012f) evaluating the same, which concluded that impacts would be minor upon imposition of identified conservation measures. Notably, the above analyses evaluated shellfish aquaculture at a larger scale than that proposed by the project. NWP 48 covers most shellfish aquaculture projects nationwide and the Programmatic Biological Evaluation evaluated environmental impacts associated with a total of 38,400 commercial aquaculture acres in Washington.

With implementation of the mitigation measures identified in this BA, including measures for navigational safety **MM BIO-14** and **MM BIO-15**, the Project Actions are not expected to directly or indirectly reduce, in any appreciable manner, the likelihood of survival or recovery of the species described above by reducing its reproduction, numbers, or distribution. The measures proposed to offset anticipated effects provide reasonable protections to avoid and minimize adverse effects of the Project Actions. Additionally, no designated critical habitat is present within the Action Area.

Overall, the Project Actions would not result in permanent impacts to ESA-listed or MMPA species, based on: (1) the nature and extent of the activities proposed to be implemented; (2) avoidance and minimization measures proposed in this BA; (3) the relative size of the Project Actions within the Santa Barbara Channel; and (4) the temporary nature of construction activities. See Dudek (2018) for an assessment of Essential Fish Habitat for this project.

7.0 REFERENCES

- Abramson, L., S. Polefka, S. Hastings, and K. Bor. 2010. Reducing the Threat of Ship Strikes on Large Cetaceans in the Santa Barbara Channel Region and Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary: Recommendations and Case Studies. Marine Sanctuaries Conservation Series ONMS-11-01. U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. Office of National Marine Sanctuaries, Silver Spring, MD. 59pp.
- Allen, B.M. and R.P. Angliss. 2014. Alaska Marine Mammal Stock Assessments. NOAA-TM-AFSC-301. Accessed July 24, 2017. http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/sars/pdf/stocks/alaska/2014/ak2014_ssl-eastern.pdf.
- Barlow, J. and G.A. Cameron. 2003. Field Experiments Show That Acoustic Pingers Reduce Marine Mammal Bycatch in the California Drift Gill Net Fishery. *Marine Mammal Science*. 19(2):265-283.
- Baulch, S. and C. Perry. 2014. Evaluating the impacts of marine debris on cetaceans. *Marine Pollution Bulletin*. Accessed July 24, 2017. 80(1-2):210-221. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.marpolbul.2013.12.050>
- Baumann-Pickering, S., T.M. Yack, J. Barlow, S.M. Wiggins, and J.A. Hildebrand. Baird's beaked whale echolocation signals. *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America* 133:4321-4331.
- Becker, E.A., Forney, K.A., Thayre, B.J., Debich, A.J., Campbell, G.S., Whitaker, K., Douglas, A.B., Gilles, A., Hoopes, R., and J.A. Hildebrand. 2017. *Frontiers in Marine Science*. 4(121): 1-14.
- Benjamins, S., Harnois, V., Smith, H.C.M., Johanning, L., Greenhill, L., Carter, C., and B. Wilson. 2014. Understanding the potential for marine megafauna entanglement risk from renewable marine energy developments. Scottish Natural Heritage Commissioned Report No. 791.
- Bennington-Castro, J. 2016. The Cost of Saving Sea Turtles from Gillnets. NOAA Fisheries. Pacific Islands Regional Office. Accessed July 24, 2017. http://www.fpir.noaa.gov/stories/04262016_the_cost_of_saving_sea_turtles_from_gillnets.html
- Berman-Kowalewski, M., F.M.D. Gulland, S. Wilkin, J. Calambokidis, B. Mate, J. Cordado, D. Rotstein, J. St. Leger, P. Collins, K. Fahy, and S. Dover. 2010. Association between blue whale (*Balaenoptera musculus*) mortality and ship strikes along the California coast. *Aquatic Mammals* 36: 59–66.
- Bullard, S.G., Lambert, G., Carman, M.R., Bymes, J., Whitlatch, R.B., Ruiz, G., Miller, R.J., Harris, L., Valentine, P.C., Collie, J.S., Pederson, J., McNaught, D.C., Cohen, A.N., Asch, R.G., Dijkstra, J., and K. Heinonen. The colonial ascidian *Didemnum* sp. A: Current distribution, basic biology and potential threat to marine communities of the northeast and west coasts of North America. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 342: 99-108. Accessed July 12, 2018. http://byrneslab.net/pdfs/Bullard_et_al_2007_JEMBE.pdf.

- Calambokidis, J., Steiger, G.H., Curtice, C., Harrison, J., Ferguson, M.C., Becker, E., DeAngelis, M., and S.M. Van Parijs. 2015. Biologically important Areas for Selected Cetaceans Within U.S Waters- West Coast Region. *Aquatic Mammals*. 41(1): 39-53
- California Bird Records Committee (CBRC). 2018. California Bird Records Committee Database. Accessed March 6, 2018. http://californiabirds.org/database_query.asp.
- California Department of Fish and Wildlife (CDFW). 2009. Marine Mammal Haulouts and Rookeries (Map). Version 2.0. Printing date 4/13/2009. Map 3.2-1h. Accessed February 13, 2018. https://www.dfg.ca.gov/marine/pdfs/rpsc/map3_2-1h-i.pdf.
- CDFW. 2011. Kelp Canopy Map Data-2011-California Coast. California Department of Fish and Wildlife, Marine Region. State of California Geoportal. Accessed April 15, 2018. https://map.dfg.ca.gov/arcgis/rest/services/Project_Marine/Marine_Kelp/MapServer.
- CDFW. 2018. California Natural Diversity Database (CNDDDB). RareFind Version 5.2.14 (Commercial Subscription). Sacramento, California: CDFW, Biogeographic Database Branch. Accessed February 12, 2018. <http://www.dfg.ca.gov/biogeodata/cnddb/mapsanddata.asp>.
- California Fish and Game Commission (CFGC). 2018. State of California, California Natural Resources Agency, California Fish and Game Commission, Mitigated Negative Declaration for Santa Barbara Mariculture Company Continued Shellfish Aquaculture Operations on State Water Bottom Lease Offshore Santa Barbara, California. 143 pp.
- Campbell, G.S., Thomas, L., Whitaker, K., Douglas, A.B., Calambokidis, J., and J.A. Hildebrand. 2014. Inter-annual and seasonal trends in cetacean distribution, density and abundance off southern California. *Deep-Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography*. 112: 143-157.
- Carwardine, M., Fordyce, R.E., Gill, P., and E. Hoyt. 1998. *Whales, Dolphins, and Porpoises*. Fog City Press, San Francisco, California.
- Cascadia. 2011. Large Cetacean Analysis for the Santa Barbara Channel Region. Prepared by National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration's Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary Staff and Cascadia Research Collective Staff. PARS Cetacean Analysis Attachment 1. Accessed July 24, 2018. https://nmschannelislands.blob.core.windows.net/channelislands-prod/media/archive/management/resource/pdf/pars5_19_11.pdf
- Clement, D. 2013. Effects of Marine Mammals. Chapter 4 in: Ministry for Primary Industries. Literature review of ecological effects of aquaculture. Report prepared by Cawthron Institute, Nelson, New Zealand.
- Cornell Lab of Ornithology (CLO). 2018. eBird. Accessed February 12, 2018. <https://ebird.org/home>.

- Collins, P.W. 2011. *Channel Islands Bird Checklist*. U.S. Department of the Interior, National Park Service. November 4.
- Condor Express. 2018. Whale Watch Report. February 2018. <https://condorexpress.com/captains-blog/>.
- Dawson, S., Northridge, S. P., Waples, D., & Read, A. 2013. To ping or not to ping: the use of active acoustic devices in mitigating interactions between small cetaceans and gillnet fisheries. *Endangered Species Research* (19) 201-221.
- Douglas, A.B., Calambokidis, J., Munger, L.M., Soldevilla, M.S., Ferguson, M.C., Havron, A.M., Cmacho, D.L., Campbell, G.S., and J.A. Hildebrand. 2014. Seasonal distribution and abundance of cetaceans off Southern California estimated from CalCOFI cruise data from 2004 to 2008. *Fish. Bull.* 112: 197-220.
- Dudek. 2017a. Draft Initial Study Checklist for the Ventura Shellfish Enterprise Project. Prepared by Dudek. Prepared for Ventura Port District. September.
- Dudek. 2017b. Draft Ventura Shellfish Enterprise Environmental Impact Report. Prepared by Dudek. Prepared for Ventura Port District. May.
- Dudek. 2017c. Ventura Shellfish Enterprise: Strategic Permitting Initiative to Substantially Increase Shellfish Farming in Southern California. 2017 NOAA Sea Grant Aquaculture Extension and Technology Transfer. Task 1 Deliverable: Strategic Permitting Plan. Prepared by Dudek. May 26.
- Dudek. 2018. *In Preparation*. Essential Fish Habitat Assessment Report for the Ventura Shellfish Enterprise. Prepared by Dudek. Prepared for Ventura Port District.
- Environmental Sensitivity Index (ESI). 2010. Environmental Sensitivity Index Map. Biological Resources. Southern California: Ventura. ESI map 9 and 10. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. National Ocean Service. Office of Response and Restoration. Emergency Response Division. Accessed July 20, 2018. <https://response.restoration.noaa.gov/maps-and-spatial-data/environmental-sensitivity-index-esi-maps.html>
- Fleming, A.H., C.T. Clark, J. Calambokidis, and J Barlow. 2016. Humpback Whale Diets Respond to Variance in Ocean Climate and Ecosystem Conditions in the California Current. *Global Change Biology* 22: 1214-1224. doi: 10.1111/gcb.13171.
- Garrett, K. and J. Dunn. 1981. *Birds of southern California: status and distribution*. Los Angeles, CA: Los Angeles Audubon Society.
- Gentry R.R., S.E. Lester, C.V. Kappel, C. White, T.W. Bell, J. Stevens, and S.D. Gaines. 2017. "Offshore Aquaculture: Spatial Planning Principles for Sustainable Development." *Ecology and Evolution*. 7:733–743. doi: 10.1002/ece3.2637.
- Gray Whales Count. 2018. About Gray Whales Count. February 10, 2018. http://www.graywhalescount.org/GWC/The_Count/The_Count.html

- R. Guza and W. O'Reilly. Wave Prediction in the Santa Barbara Channel. MMS OCS Study 2001-055. Coastal Research Center, Marine Science Institute, University of California, Santa Barbara, California. MMS Cooperative Agreement Number 14-35-0001-30758. 8 pages.
- Henrique de Carvalho, R., P.D. Lacerda, S.D. Mendes, B.C. Barbosa, M. Paschoalini, F. Prezoto, and B.M de Sousa. 2015. Marine debris ingestion by sea turtles (*Testudines*) on the Brazilian coast: an underestimated threat? *Marine Pollution Bulletin*. 101(2):746-749. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.marpolbul.2015.10.002>
- Jefferson, T.A., M.A. Webber, MA, and R.L. Pitman. 2008. Marine Mammals of the World: A Comprehensive Guide to Their Identification. Second Edition. Academic Press. Elsevier. San Diego, California.
- Keeley, N., Forrest, B.M., Hopkins, G.A., Gillespie, P.A., Knight, B.R., Webb, S.C., Clement, D., and J. Gardner. 2009. Review of the ecological effects of farming shellfish and other non-fish species in New Zealand. Cawthron Report 1476. Prepared for New Zealand's Ministry of Fisheries.
- Kemper, C.M., Pemberton, D., Cawthorn, M, Heinrich, S., Mann, J., Wursig, B., Shaughnessy, P. and R. Gales. 2003. Aquaculture and Marine Mammals: Co-existence or Conflict? Research Gate. 208-225 pp.
- Kenyon, K.W. 1971. Status of Marine Mammals in the Eastern North Pacific Ocean. Prepared for the Department of the Interior, 102 Statement Task Force B of the Task Force on Alaskan Oil Development. July 29.
- Kot, B. W., Sears, R., Anis, A., Nowacek, D. P., Gedamke, J., & Marshall, C. D. 2012. Behavioral responses of minke whales (*Balaenoptera acutorostrata*) to experimental fishing gear in a coastal environment. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology*. 413: 13-20.
- Laist, D.W., Knowlton, A.R., Mead, J.G., Collet, A.S. and Podesta, M. 2001. Collisions between ships and whales. *Marine Mammal Science* 17(1): 35-75.
- Leet, W.S., C.M. Dewees, R. Klingbeil, and E.J. Larson, eds. 2001. California's Living Marine Resources: A Status Report. The Resources Agency, California Department of Fish and Game. 592 pp.
- Lehman, P.E. 2018. *The Birds of Santa Barbara County, California*. Revised edition. Accessed March 12, 2018. <https://sites.google.com/site/lehmanbosbc/>
- Lindell, S. 2014. Santoro Fishing Corporation mussel farm biological assessment. Supplemental information for permit application (NAE-2013-1584 Santoro) submitted to the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers New England District.
- Lloyd, B.D. 2003. Potential effects of mussel farming on New Zealand's marine mammals and seabirds: a discussion paper. Department of Conservation, Wellington, New Zealand. Accessed July 10, 2018. <https://www.doc.govt.nz/Documents/science-and-technical/MusselFarms01.pdf>

- Lowry, M.S., and J.V. Carretta. 1999. Market Squid (*Loligo opalescens*) in the Diet of California Sea Lions (*Zalophus californianus*) in Southern California (1981-1995). CalCOFI Report 40: 196-207.
- Lowry, M.S., R. Condit, B. Hatfield, S.G. Allen, R. Berger, P.A. Morris, B.J. Le Boeuf, and J. Reiter. 2014. "Abundance, Distribution, and Population Growth of the Northern Elephant Seal (*Mirounga angustirostris*) in the United States from 1991 to 2010." *Aquatic Mammals* 40: 20-31.
- Marine Mammal Commission (MMC). 2007. Marine Mammals and Noise. A Sound Approach to Research and Management. A Report to Congress from the Marine Mammal Commission. February 10, 2018. <https://www.mmc.gov/wp-content/uploads/fullsoundreport.pdf>.
- MMC. 2018. North Pacific Right Whale. Accessed February 10, 2018. <https://www.mmc.gov/priority-topics/species-of-concern/north-pacific-right-whale/>.
- Markowitz, T.M., Harlin, A.D., Wursig B. and C.J. McFadden. 2004. Dusky dolphin foraging habitat: overlap with aquaculture in New Zealand. *Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Fresh-water Ecosystems* 14: 133149.
- Miller, M.H., J. Carlson, P. Cooper, D. Kobayashi, M. Nammack, and J. Wilson. 2013. Status Review Report: Scalloped Hammerhead Shark (*Sphyrna lewini*). National Marine Fisheries Service. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. 125 pp.
- Moore, K., and D. Wieting. 1999. Marine Aquaculture, Marine Mammals, and Marine Turtles Interaction Workshop 12-13 January 1999, Silver Spring, Maryland. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo NMFS-OPR-16, 60 pp.
- Nelson, S. K.. 1997. Marbled Murrelet (*Brachyramphus marmoratus*), version 2.0. In *The Birds of North America* (A. F. Poole and F. B. Gill, Editors). Cornell Lab of Ornithology, Ithaca, NY, USA. <https://doi.org/10.2173/bna.276>.
- National Data Buoy Center. 2017. Station 46217 - Anacapa Passage, CA (111). Center of Excellence in Marine Technology, NOAA. Accessed April 15, 2018. http://www.ndbc.noaa.gov/station_history.php?station=46217.
- National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 2007a. Appendix B. Current Seismic Surveys Mitigation Measures in the GOM. United States Department of the Interior, Minerals Management Service (MMS), Gulf of Mexico (GOM) OCS Region. OMB Control Number: 1010-0151. Accessed February 25, 2018. http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/pdfs/permits/boemre_appendixb.pdf.
- NMFS. 2007b. Bocaccio (*Sebastes paucispinus*). Species of Concern. NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service. Accessed February 20, 2018. http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/pdfs/species/bocaccio_highlights.pdf.
- NMFS. 2007c. Pink Abalone (*Haliotis corrugata*). Species of Concern. NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service. Accessed February 20, 2018. http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/publications/SOC/pinkabalone_detailed.pdf.

- NMFS. 2008. Steelhead Trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*). Oregon Coast ESU. Species of Concern. NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service. Accessed February 20, 2018. http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/publications/SOC/steelhead_detailed.pdf.
- NMFS. 2009a. Pacific Hake (*Merluccius productus*). Georgia Basin DPS. Species of Concern. NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service. Accessed February 20, 2018. http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/pdfs/species/pacifichake_detailed.pdf.
- NMFS. 2009b. Cowcod (*Sebastes levis*). Species of Concern. NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service. Accessed February 20, 2018. http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/pdfs/species/cowcod_detailed.pdf.
- NMFS. 2009c. Status Review Report for Black Abalone (*Haliotis cracherodii*). NMFS Southwest Region. U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service. Accessed February 20, 2018. http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/publications/status_reviews/other_species/blackabalone_status_review_2009.pdf.
- NMFS. 2009d. Green Abalone (*Haliotis fulgens*). Species of Concern. NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service. Accessed February 20, 2018. http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/publications/SOC/greenabalone_detailed.pdf.
- NMFS. 2009e. Template for Biological Assessments & Biological Evaluations. Provided by NMFS Pacific Island Regional Office, Protected Resources Division. Revised January 2009. Accessed February 15, 2018. <http://www.fpir.noaa.gov/Library/PRD/ESA%20Consultation/Final%20Action%20Agency%20Consultation%20Package%20Files%20for%20website%201-12-09/Template%20for%20BA-BE%20-%201-12-09.pdf>.
- NMFS. 2010. Chinook Salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*). Central Valley Fall, Late-Fall Run ESU. Species of Concern. NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service. Accessed February 20, 2018: http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/pdfs/species/chinooksalmon_highlights.pdf.
- NMFS. 2011a. Common Bottlenose Dolphin. California/Oregon/Washington Offshore Stock. NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service. Accessed August 27, 2018. <https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/webdam/download/70099129>.
- NMFS. 2011b. Pacific Cod (*Gadus microcephalus*). Salish Sea Population. Species of Concern. NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service. Accessed February 20, 2018. http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/pdfs/species/pacificcod_detailed.pdf.
- NMFS. 2011c. Critical Habitat for the Southern Distinct Population Segment of Eulachon. Final Biological Report. Southwest Region Protected Resources Division..
- NMFS. 2011d. Final Designation of Critical Habitat for Black Abalone. Final Biological Report. Southwest Region Protected Resources Division.

- NMFS. 2014. Status Review Report for Pinto Abalone (*Haliotis kamtschatkana*). U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service. Accessed February 22, 2018. http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/publications/protected_species/other/abalone_species/pintoabsr_report_final_dec_2014.pdf.
- NMFS. 2015a. Southern Distinct Population Segment of the North American Green Sturgeon (*Acipenser medirostris*). 5-Year Review: Summary and Evaluation. National Marine Fisheries Service. West Coast Region. Accessed February 22, 2018. http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/listing/southern_dps_green_sturgeon_5-year_review_2015__2_.pdf.
- NMFS. 2015b. ESA Recovery Plan for Snake River Sockeye Salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*). National Marine Fisheries Service, West Coast Region, Portland, Oregon. Accessed February 20, 2018: http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/recovery/plans/snake_river_sockeye_recovery_plan_june_2015.pdf.
- NMFS. 2016a. Recovery Plan for Oregon Coast Coho Salmon Evolutionarily Significant Unit. National Marine Fisheries Service, West Coast Region, Portland, Oregon. Accessed February 20, 2018: http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/recovery/plans/final_oc_coho_recovery_plandec_20.pdf.
- NMFS. 2016c. Technical Guidance for Assessing the Effects of Anthropogenic Sound on Marine Mammal Hearing: Underwater Acoustic Thresholds for Onset of Permanent and Temporary Threshold Shifts. U.S. Dept. of Commerce, NOAA. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-OPR-55, 178 p.
- NMFS. 2016b. 5-Year Review: Summary and Evaluation of Southern California Coast Steelhead Distinct Population Segment. National Marine Fisheries Service. West Coast Region. California Coastal Office. Long Beach, California.
- NMFS. 2016c. Minke Whale (*Balaenoptera acutorostrata scammoni*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock. Marine Mammal Stock Assessment Report. Revised August 16, 2016. Accessed February 15, 2018. http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/sars/pdf/stocks/pacific/2016/po2016_miw-cow.pdf.
- NMFS. 2017a. Pygmy Sperm Whale (*Kogia breviceps*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock. Marine Mammal Stock Assessment Report. Revised February 10, 2017. Accessed February 15, 2018. <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/sars/species.htm>.
- NMFS. 2017b. Dwarf Sperm Whale (*Kogia sima*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock. Marine Mammal Stock Assessment Report. Revised February 10, 2017. Accessed February 15, 2018. <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/sars/species.htm>.
- NMFS. 2017c. Striped Dolphin (*Stenella coeruleoalba*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock. Marine Mammal Stock Assessment Report. Revised February 9, 2017. Accessed February 15, 2018. <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/sars/species.htm>.

- NMFS. 2017d. Chum Salmon (*Onchorhynchus keta*). NOAA Fisheries. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. Accessed February 15, 2018: <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/fish/chum-salmon.html>.
- NMFS. 2017e. Rockfish Recovery Plan: Puget Sound / Georgia Basin yelloweye rockfish (*Sebastes ruberrimus*) and bocaccio (*Sebastes paucispinis*). National Marine Fisheries Service. Seattle, WA.
- NMFS. 2017f. National Marine Fisheries Service Endangered Species Consultation Biological Opinion on U.S. Army Corps of Engineers' Nationwide Permit Program. February 2012. U.S. Department of Commerce. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. National Marine Fisheries Service. Silver Spring, Maryland. Accessed February 20, 2018. http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/pdfs/consultations/biop_acoe_permits2012.pdf.
- NMFS. 2017g. Common Bottlenose Dolphin (*Tursiops truncatus*): California Coastal Stock. Marine Mammal Stock Assessment Report. Revised February 9, 2017. Accessed February 20, 2018. http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/sars/pdf/stocks/pacific/2016/po2016_cbd-cc.pdf.
- NMFS. 2018a. Find a Species Website. NOAA Fisheries. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. Accessed February 20, 2018. <https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/find-species>.
- NMFS. 2018b. Species of Concern Website. NOAA Fisheries, West Coast Region, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. Accessed February 20, 2018. http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/protected_species/species_of_concern/species_of_concern.html
- NMFS. 2018c. Protected Species: Marine Mammals. NOAA Fisheries, West Coast Region, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. Accessed February 20, 2018. http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/protected_species/marine_mammals/marine_mammals.html
- NMFS. 2018d. Protected Species: Sea Turtles. NOAA Fisheries, West Coast Region, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. Accessed February 20, 2018. http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/protected_species/sea_turtles/marine_turtles.html.
- NMFS. 2018e. 2018 Revisions to: Technical Guidance for Assessing the Effects of Anthropogenic Sound on Marine Mammal Hearing (Version 2.0): Underwater Thresholds for Onset of Permanent and Temporary Threshold Shifts. U.S. Dept. of Commer., NOAA. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-OPR-59, 167 p.
- NMFS and USFWS (US Fish and Wildlife Service). 1998a. Recovery Plan for the U.S. Pacific Populations of the Loggerhead Turtle (*Caretta caretta*). National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD.
- NMFS and USFWS. 1998b. Recovery Plan for U.S. Pacific Populations of the East Pacific Green Turtle (*Chelonia mydas*). National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD.

- NMFS and USFWS. 1998c. Recovery Plan for U.S. Pacific Populations of the Leatherback Turtle (*Dermochelys coriacea*). National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD.
- NMFS and USFWS. 1998d. Recovery Plan for U.S. Pacific Populations of the Hawksbill Turtle (*Eretmochelys imbricata*). National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD.
- NMFS and USFWS. 1998e. Recovery Plan for U.S. Pacific Populations of the Olive Ridley Turtle (*Lepidochelys olivacea*). National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD.
- NMFS and USFWS. 2007. Loggerhead Sea Turtle (*Caretta caretta*) 5-Year Review: Summary and Evaluation. National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD. August.
- National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA). 2008. "Gear Modification Techniques for Complying with the Atlantic Large Whale Take Reduction Plan (ALWTRP)." Effective April 5, 2008. https://www.greateratlantic.fisheries.noaa.gov/nero/hotnews/whalesfr/Gear%20Modification%20Techniques%20for%20Complying%20with%20the%20ALWTRP_vs8.pdf.
- NOAA. 2011. "National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration Marine Aquaculture Policy." NOAA Fisheries. Accessed April 15, 2019. http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/aquaculture/docs/policy/noaa_aquaculture_policy_2011.pdf.
- NOAA. 2009. Designation of Critical Habitat for the threatened Southern Distinct Population Segment of North American Green Sturgeon. Final Biological Report. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. U.S. Department of Commerce. Accessed July 20, 2018. http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/publications/protected_species/other/green_sturgeon/g_s_critical_habitat/gschd_finalbiologicalrpt.pdf.
- NOAA. 2011. "National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration Marine Aquaculture Policy." NOAA Fisheries. Accessed July 20, 2018. <https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/topic/aquaculture/regulation-policy>.
- NOAA. 2012. Cetacean & Sound Mapping. Metadata. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. U.S. Department of Commerce. Accessed July 20, 2018. https://cetsound.noaa.gov/metadata/swfsc_stratified_graywhale_2012.html.
- NOAA. 2013a. "National Shellfish Initiative." Fact sheet. NOAA Fisheries. Accessed March 15, 2018. http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/aquaculture/docs/policy/natl_shellfish_init_factsheet_summer_2013.pdf.
- NOAA. 2013b. Gray Whale Stranding and Marine Debris. Grey Whale Outreach Activity Informational Flyer. Accessed March 15, 2018. <http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/publications/education/graywhalestrandingmarinedebrisactivitypacket.pdf>

- NOAA. 2014. U.S. west coast large whale entanglement information sharing workshop report. The National Marine Fisheries Service. West Coast Regional Office. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. U.S. Department of Commerce. Accessed July 20, 2018. http://www.opc.ca.gov/webmaster/ftp/project_pages/dctf/ec-meeting-10/finalentanglementwsreport.pdf.
- NOAA. 2017a. United States West Coast, California. Port Hueneme to Santa Barbara. Mercator Projection. Nautical Chart. Washington, DC. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA, National Ocean Science, Coast Survey. 30th Ed. June 2013. Last correction 7/3/2017.
- NOAA. 2017b. Reducing Ship Strike Risk to Whales. Resource Protection. National Marine Sanctuaries. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. Accessed February 20, 2018. <https://sanctuaries.noaa.gov/protect/shipstrike/welcome.html>.
- NOAA. 2017c. 2016 West Coast Entanglement Summary. Overview of Entanglement Data. NOAA Fisheries. West Coast Region. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. U.S. Department of Commerce. Accessed July 20, 2018. http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/mediacenter/WCR%202016%20Whale%20Entanglements_3-26-17_Final.pdf.
- NOAA. 2018a. California Species List Tools. NOAA Fisheries West Coast Region. Accessed February 20, 2018. http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/maps_data/california_species_list_tools.html
- NOAA. 2018b. Endangered Species Act, Section 6 Program Website. Accessed February 20, 2018. <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/conservation/states/california.htm>
- NOAA. 2018c. Critical Habitat Maps. Accessed February 20, 2018. <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/criticalhabitat.htm>
- NOAA. 2018d. Water Temperature Table of the Southern Pacific Coast. NOAA National Centers for Environmental Information. Last update on March 7, 2018. Accessed February 20, 2018. https://www.nodc.noaa.gov/dsdt/cwtg/all_meanT.html
- NOAA. 2018e. Cetacean and Sound Mapping. Biologically Important Areas. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. Accessed May 29, 2018. <https://cetsound.noaa.gov/biologically-important-area-map>
- National Ocean Council. 2013. National Ocean Policy Implementation Plan. Accessed April 15, 2019. https://obamawhitehouse.archives.gov/sites/default/files/national_ocean_policy_implementation_plan.pdf.
- National Park Service (NPS). 2013. Viewing Elephant Seals. Point Reyes National Seashore, California. National Park Service. Accessed February 20, 2018. https://www.nps.gov/pore/planyourvisit/wildlife_viewing_elephantseals.htm

- Okumus, I., Bascinar, N., and M. Ozkan. 2002. The effects of phytoplankton concentration, size of mussel and water temperature on feed consumption and filtration rate of the Mediterranean Mussel (*Mytilus galloprovincialis* Lmk). *Turkish Journal of Zoology*. 26: 167-172.
- OSPAR (OSPAR Commission). 2009. Assessment of the environmental impact of underwater noise. Biodiversity Series. Prepared by F. Thomsen and the Intersessional correspondence group on underwater noise. OSPAR Commission. ISBN : 978-1-906840-76-1. Publication Number: 436/2009.
- Pearson, T., and R. Rosenberg. 1978. Macrobenthic succession in relation to organic enrichment and pollution of the marine environment. *Oceanography and Marine Biology Annual Review* 16: 229–311.
- Point Blue Conservation Science (PBCS). 2018. Whale Alert Map. Point Blue Conservation Science. Accessed February 15, 2018. <https://geo.pointblue.org/whale-map/index.php>
- Price, C.S., E.Keane, D. Morin, C. Vaccaro, D. Bean, and J.A. Morris,Jr. 2016. Protected Species & Longline Mussel Aquaculture Interactions. NOAA Technical Memorandum NOS NCCOS 211. 85 pp.
- Ritter, F. 2012. Collisions of sailing vessels with cetaceans worldwide: First insights into a seemingly growing problem. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management* 12(1): 119-127.
- Santa Barbara Channelkeeper. 2017. About the Santa Barbara Channel. Accessed April 14, 2017 from the ChannelKeeper website: <http://www.sbck.org/about-the-santa-barbara-channel/>.
- Silber, G.K., Slutsky, J. and Bettridge, S. 2010. Hydrodynamics of a ship/whale collision. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 391: 10-19.
- Stadmark J., and D.J. Conley. 2011. Mussel farming as a nutrient reduction measure in the Baltic Sea: consideration of nutrient biogeochemical cycles. *Mar Pollut Bull* 62:1385–1388.
- Southern California Coastal Water Research Project (SCCWRP). 2016. Bight '13 Regional Monitoring. Regional Monitoring. SCCWRP: A Public Agency for Environmental Research. Accessed August 27, 2018. <http://sccwrp.org/ResearchAreas/RegionalMonitoring/Bight13RegionalMonitoring.aspx>.
- Souchu, P, Vaquer, A., Collos, Y., Landrein, S., Deslous-Paoli, J., and B. Bibent. 2001. Influence of shellfish farming activities on the biogeochemical composition of the water column in Thau lagoon. *Inter-Research. Marine Ecology Progress Series*. 218: 141-152.
- The Orange County Register (OC Register). 2018. Rare Pilot Whale Surface off Dana Point. Written by Kelly Zhou. October 30, 2014 at 7:05am. Accessed February 20, 2018. <https://www.ocregister.com/2014/10/30/rare-pilot-whales-surface-off-dana-point/>.

- USACE (U.S. Army Corps of Engineers). 2015. Programmatic Biological Assessment. Shellfish Activities in Washington State Inland Marine Waters. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Regulatory Program. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Seattle.
- USACE. 2017. Decision Document. Nationwide Permit 48. Sections 10 and 404. Accessed February 20, 2018. https://www.usace.army.mil/Missions/Civil-Works/Regulatory-Program-and-Permits/Nationwide-Permits/2017_NWP_FinalDD/.
- USFWS (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service). 1985. Revised California Least Tern Recovery Plan. *Sterna antillarum brownii*. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Portland, Oregon. 112. pp.
- USFWS. 1997. Recovery Plan for the Threatened Marbled Murrelet (*Brachyramphus marmoratus*) in Washington, Oregon, and California. Portland, Oregon. 203 pp.
- USFWS. 2005. Recovery Plan for the Tidewater Goby (*Eucyclogobius newberryi*). Region 1. Ecological Services.
- USFWS. 2006. California least tern (*Sternula antillarum browni*) 5-Year Review Summary and Evaluation. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Carlsbad Fish and Wildlife Office, Carlsbad, California. September.
- USFWS. 2011. Santa Ana Sucker (*Catostomus santaanae*). 5-Year Review: Summary and Evaluation. Carlsbad Fish and Wildlife Office.
- USFWS. 2015. Southern Sea Otter (*Enhydra lutris nereis*) 5-Year Review: Summary and Evaluation. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Ventura Fish and Wildlife Office, Ventura, California. September 15.
- USFWS. 2018a. Information for Planning and Consulting. Accessed February 20, 2018. <https://ecos.fws.gov/ipac/>.
- USFWS. 2018b. Environmental Conservation Online System (ECOS). Accessed February 20, 2018. <https://ecos.fws.gov/ecp/>.
- USFWS. 2018c. International Affairs CITES Informational Website. Oceanic Whitetip Shark (*Carcharhinus longimanus*). Accessed February 20, 2018. <https://www.fws.gov/international/cites/cop16/oceanic-whitetip-shark.html>.
- USFWS. 2018d. Short-tailed albatross. Oregon Fish and Wildlife Offices. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Accessed February 20, 2018. <https://www.fws.gov/oregonfwo/articles.cfm?id=149489452>.
- Ventura County Star (VCS). 2017. Humpback Whale Gets Stuck in Ventura Harbor. Ventura County Star. February 15, 2018. <http://www.vcstar.com/story/news/local/communities/ventura/2017/05/20/humpback-whale-stuck-ventura-harbor/101946876/>.

- Weise, M.J., Costa, D.P., and R.M. Kudela. 2006. Movement and diving behavior of male California sea lion (*Zalophus californianus*) during anomalous oceanographic conditions of 2005 compared to those of 2004. *Geophysical Research Letters*. 33: L22S10. Accessed July 20, 2018. <https://agupubs.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/epdf/10.1029/2006GL027113>.
- Whale and Dolphin Conservation (WDC). 2018. Blainville's Beaked Whale (*Mesoplodon densirostris*). Accessed February 20, 2018. <http://us.whales.org/species-guide/blainvilles-beaked-whale>.
- Wilding T.A., and T.D. Nickell. 2013. Changes in Benthos Associated with Mussel (*Mytilus edulis* L.) Farms on the West-Coast of Scotland. *PLoS ONE* 8(7): e68313. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0068313.
- Wilding, T.A. 2012. Changes in Sedimentary Redox Associated with Mussel (*Mytilus edulis* L.) Farms on the West-Coast of Scotland. *PLoS ONE* 7(9): e45159. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0045159.
- Woods Hole Science Center. 2007. *Didemnum* sp. – California Coast Locations. Marine Nuisance Species. Accessed July 20, 2018. <https://woodshole.er.usgs.gov/project-pages/stellwagen/didemnum/images/pdf/page12.pdf>.
- Yen, P.P.W., W.J. Sydeman, and K.D. Hyrenbach. 2004. "Marine birds and Cetacean Associations with Bathymetric Habitats and Shallow-Water Topographies: Implications for Trophic Transfer and Conservation." *Journal of Marine Systems*. 50: 79–99.

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

APPENDIX A

Essential Fish Habitat Assessment

APPENDIX B

Federally Protected Species Potential to Occur

APPENDIX B
Federally Protected Species Potential To Occur

Scientific Name	Common Name	Federal Status ¹	Distribution and Primary Habitat Associations	Potential to Occur
Marine Mammals²				
Cetaceans				
<i>Balaenoptera acutorostrata</i>	Common minke whale	MMPA	Worldwide distribution. Polar, temperate, and tropical waters in both coastal and offshore habitats (NMFS 2018a).	Moderate potential to occur. Foraging and migration habitat is present in the Action Area. Some individuals are residents in California waters. Minke whales feed on euphausiids, copepods and small schooling fish, which are present in the Channel. In addition, this species has been recorded since 1988 in the Santa Barbara Channel and within 1 mile of the Action Area (PBCS 2018).
<i>Balaenoptera borealis borealis</i>	Sei whale	Endangered, MMPA	Worldwide distribution in subtropical, temperate, and subpolar waters. This species prefers deeper waters far from the coastline (NMFS 2018a). This species' habitat preference is the continental shelf edge and slope (NMFS 2018a).	Low potential to occur. This species may traverse through the Action Area during migration. In general, sei whales migrate annually from cool and subpolar waters in summer to temperate and subtropical waters for winter, where food is more abundant. Foraging resources (krill, copepods, small schooling fish, cephalopods) are likely present in the Action Area.
<i>Balaenoptera edeni</i>	Bryde's whale	Proposed Endangered, MMPA	Prefers highly productive tropical, subtropical and warm temperate waters worldwide.	Low potential to occur. This species may be found in all oceans from 40°S to 40°N; however, some populations migrate seasonally while others are resident and do not migrate (NMFS 2018). Year-round residents appear to be present along the west coast of Baja California, Mexico (Kenyon 1971). Foraging resources (krill, copepods, small schooling fish, crustaceans) are likely present in the Action Area. This species displays a preference for subtropical and tropical zones, inhabiting waters 16°C (60°F) or warmer (Jefferson et al. 2008).
<i>Balaenoptera musculus musculus</i>	Blue whale	Endangered, MMPA	Worldwide, from sub-polar to sub-tropical latitudes; generally occurs more offshore than other whales (NMFS 2018a).	Low potential to occur. This species has been observed migrating and feeding through the Santa Barbara Channel on many occasions, with several occurrences within the Action Area (PBCS 2018). In general, this species migrates poleward to feed in the summer and to the tropics to breed in the winter (Jefferson et al. 2008). Most occurrences are north of Santa Rosa and western Santa Cruz Island along the 200 meter isobath (Cascadia 2011), approximately 7.4 miles east of the Action Area. In addition, foraging resources (predominantly krill) are likely present in the Action Area.
<i>Balaenoptera physalus physalus</i>	Fin whale	Endangered, MMPA	Worldwide, primarily in temperate to polar latitudes and less common in the tropics.	Moderate potential to occur. This species has been observed migrating and feeding through the Santa Barbara Channel on many occasions, with one occurrence (12

APPENDIX B
Federally Protected Species Potential To Occur

Scientific Name	Common Name	Federal Status ¹	Distribution and Primary Habitat Associations	Potential to Occur
				individuals) noted within 1 mile of the Action Area in 2011 (PBCS 2018; Cascadia 2011). This species' distribution is not well known, but it generally migrates poleward to feed in the summer and to the subtropics to breed in the winter (Jefferson et al. 2008). Resources (krill, small schooling fish, squid) are likely present in the Action Area. This species is more commonly associated with the 200 meter isobath, which is approximately 7.4 miles from the Action Area (Cascadia 2011)
<i>Berardius bairdii</i>	Baird's beaked whale	MMPA	Throughout the North Pacific Ocean and adjacent seas. This species prefers deep, cold waters of 3,000 feet (nearly 1,000 meters) or greater and may occur near shore along narrow continental shelves. Beaked whales are deep divers that prefer submarine canyons, seamounts, and continental slopes (NMFS 2018a).	Low potential to occur. Migration and distribution are poorly known (Jefferson et al. 2008). Suitable foraging resources (e.g., deep water and bottom-dwelling crustaceans, cephalopods, gadiform fish; Jefferson et al. 2008) are not likely present in the Action Area. This species prefers deep waters that are not present within the Action Area. This species has been observed far south of the Channel Islands, and west of Point Conception (Baumann-Pickering et al. 2013).
<i>Delphinus capensis capensis</i>	Long-beaked common dolphin	MMPA	Coastal habitats; prefers shallower tropical, subtropical, and warmer temperate to cool waters closer to the coast (within 50-100 nautical miles (90-180 km)) and the continental shelf (NMFS 2018a).	High potential to occur. Foraging resources (small schooling fish and squid) are likely present in the Action Area. This species has been recorded multiple times and in great numbers (e.g., occurrences with 1,500 individuals) in the Santa Barbara Channel, including the Action Area (PBCS 2018). This species displays a habitat preference for coastal waters, sometimes coming close to shore within waters that are only a few meters deep (Jefferson et al. 2008).
<i>Delphinus delphis delphis</i>	Short-beaked common dolphin	MMPA	Warm tropical to cool temperate waters, primarily oceanic and offshore. Species also occurs along the continental slope in waters 650-6,500 feet (200-2,000 m) deep (NMFS 2018a).	Moderate potential to occur. Foraging resources (small schooling fish and squid) are likely present in the Action Area. This species has been recorded multiple times and in great numbers (e.g., occurrences with 1,500 individuals) in Santa Barbara Channel and adjacent to the Action Area (PBCS 2018). This species is often associated with areas of upwelling and areas of steep sea-bottom (Jefferson, Webber and Pitman 2008).
<i>Eschrichtius robustus</i>	Gray whale (Eastern North Pacific stock)	MMPA	Occurs in coastal waters along the west coast of North America from Mexico to Alaska and in eastern Siberia. Usually feeds along the Bering, Chukchi, and Beaufort seas during the summer, and winters along breeding and calving areas off the coast of	High potential to occur. This species is a frequent visitor to the Ventura coastline and Santa Barbara Channel and commonly observed during migration, especially during the northward migration from Baja to Alaska. This species is a bottom feeder (epibenthic fauna such as mysids, amphipods, polychaete tube worms) and so are restricted

APPENDIX B
Federally Protected Species Potential To Occur

Scientific Name	Common Name	Federal Status ¹	Distribution and Primary Habitat Associations	Potential to Occur
			Baja California. Calves are born from January to February (NMFS 2018a). During their northward migration from Baja to Alaska, cow-calf pairs stay particularly close to shore to avoid predation by orcas (NMFS 2014). Bottom feeder that consumes benthic amphipods.	to shallow continental shelf waters (Jefferson et al. 2008). Gray whales are often observed close to shore and has multiple occurrences in the Action Area (PBCS 2018).
<i>Eubalaena glacialis</i>	North Pacific right whale	Endangered, MMPA	Pacific Ocean between 20°N and 60°N latitude, from temperate to subpolar waters. Primarily occurs in shelf or coastal waters (NMFS 2018a).	Low potential to occur. Distribution is not well known but they appear to have a northward migration in the spring and a southward migration in the fall. This species is extremely rare with likely less than 50 individuals in U.S. waters (MMC 2018) and a scattered distribution throughout its range (NMFS 2018a). Suitable foraging resources (zooplankton) may be present within the Action Area. The most recent and closest occurrences for this species include 2 possible individuals sighted near San Miguel Island (February 2015), 10 individuals off Monterey (May 2016, PBCS 2018), and 1 individual off La Jolla (April 2017, MMC 2018). This species is historically known to inhabit offshore waters in depths sometimes greater than 2,000 m (Jefferson, Webber and Pitman 2008).
<i>Grampus griseus</i>	Risso's dolphin	MMPA	Temperate, subtropical, and tropical waters generally greater than 3,300 feet (1,000 m) and seaward of the continental shelf and slopes (NMFS 2018a).	Low potential to occur. Suitable foraging resources (cephalopods and crustaceans) may be present within the Action Area. This species has been observed in the Santa Barbara Channel, with many occurrences located south and northwest of the Action Area (PBCS 2018). This species prefers deeper waters on the continental shelf and slope, between 30° and 45° latitude (Jefferson et al. 2008), and is unlikely to occur in the Action Area.
<i>Globicephala macrorhynchus</i>	Short-finned pilot whale	MMPA	Prefers warmer tropical and temperate waters, typically within waters of 1,000 feet or more deep (NMFS 2018a).	Not expected to occur. Once common around the Channel Islands, a strong El Nino in 1982-1983 brought changes to the ecosystem affecting prey and this species disappeared from the area (Jefferson et al. 2008). This species inhabits areas with a high density of squid, their preferred prey. The most recent documented sighting occurred in October 2014 off Dana Point, Orange County, CA (OC Register 2018). This species prefers deep waters and is unlikely to occur in the Action Area.
<i>Kogia breviceps</i>	Pygmy sperm whale	MMPA	Worldwide distribution. Prefers tropical, sub-tropical and temperate waters. Most	Not expected to occur. In addition, based on shipboard surveys from 1991 to 2014, this species has only been

APPENDIX B
Federally Protected Species Potential To Occur

Scientific Name	Common Name	Federal Status ¹	Distribution and Primary Habitat Associations	Potential to Occur
			common along waters seaward of the continental shelf edge and slope. Mostly forages in mid- and deep-water environments (NMFS 2018a).	sighted a handful of times (including unidentified <i>Kogia</i> sp.) off the coast of Central and Southern California (NMFS 2017a). This species prefers deep waters (outer continental shelf and beyond) and therefore is unlikely to occur in the Action Area.
<i>Kogia sima</i>	Dwarf sperm whale	MMPA	Worldwide; prefers tropical, sub-tropical, and temperate waters. Most common along the continental shelf edge and slope (NMFS 2018a).	Not expected to occur. This species inhabits warmer waters in offshore areas, and there is no evidence of migrations. Dwarf sperm whales feed on deep-water cephalopods (Jefferson, Webber and Pitman 2008). Based on shipboard surveys from 1991 to 2014, <i>Kogia</i> sp. have only been sighted a handful of times off the coast of central and southern California (NMFS 2017b). This species prefers deep waters and is unlikely to occur in the Action Area.
<i>Lagenorhynchus obliquidens</i>	Pacific white-sided dolphin	MMPA	North Pacific Ocean; cool, temperate waters from the continental shelf to the deep open ocean (NMFS 2018a).	Moderate potential to occur. Exhibits seasonal inshore/offshore and north/south movements. Foraging habitat is present in the Action Area. This species feeds mostly on cephalopods and small schooling fish in deep offshore waters but also on the continental shelf (Jefferson, Webber and Pitman 2008). In addition, this species has numerous occurrences within the Santa Barbara Channel and a few occurrences in the Action Area (PBCS 2018).
<i>Lissodelphis borealis</i>	Northern right-whale dolphin	MMPA	Endemic to deep, cold temperate waters of the North Pacific Ocean from Baja California to the Gulf of Alaska; generally in waters over the continental shelf and slope colder than 66°F (NMFS 2018a).	Low potential to occur. Although foraging habitat (i.e., for market squid) is present in the Action Area, this species has several scattered observations within the Santa Barbara Channel and no known observations within the Action Area (PBCS 2018). Northern right-whale dolphins are an open ocean species and are known only to come nearshore where there are deep submarine canyons (Jefferson, Webber and Pitman 2008).
<i>Mesoplodon densirostris</i>	Blainville's beaked whale	MMPA	Worldwide in temperate and tropical waters; prefers deep waters (WDC 2018).	Not expected to occur. Blainville's beaked whale has the most extensive distribution of the genus and inhabits depths between 200 to 1,000 m (Jefferson, Webber and Pitman 2008), where squid are plentiful. This species prefers deep waters and is unlikely to occur in the Action Area.
<i>Mesoplodon stejnegeri</i>	Stejneger's beaked whale	MMPA	North Pacific Ocean; prefer cold temperate and subarctic waters; generally found in	Not expected to occur. Inhabiting the North Pacific basin, this species is primarily oceanic but also inhabits the continental slope. It feeds on deep-water squid (Jefferson,

APPENDIX B
Federally Protected Species Potential To Occur

Scientific Name	Common Name	Federal Status ¹	Distribution and Primary Habitat Associations	Potential to Occur
			deep, offshore waters from 2,500-5,000 feet deep (NMFS 2018a).	Webber and Pitman 2008). This species prefers deep waters and is unlikely to occur in the Action Area.
<i>Megaptera novaeangliae</i>	Humpback whale	Threatened (Mexico DPS) and Endangered (Central America DPS), MMPA	Worldwide distribution from the equator to sub-polar latitudes; feeding areas for the Mexico DPS occur off the coast of central California; Migrating individuals from the Central America DPS may migrate through the Action Area on their way to feeding grounds located off the Pacific Northwest (NMFS 2018a). This species stays near the surface of the ocean when migrating and prefers shallow waters when feeding and calving. This species can be seen close to shore when conditions allow for prey switching from krill to small schooling fish, which inhabit nearshore areas.	Moderate to high potential to occur. Foraging and migration habitat is present in the Action Area. Numerous observations of this species have been documented within the Santa Barbara Channel both close to shore and near the Channel Islands (PBCS 2018). In addition, this species is strongly associated with the 200 meter isobaths (Cascadia 2011).
<i>Orcinus orca</i>	Killer Whale (Southern Resident DPS – consisting of pods J, K, and L, Eastern North Pacific Transient Stock, and Eastern North Pacific Offshore Stock)	Endangered MMPA (all populations)	The Southern Resident DPS reside for part of the year in the inland waters of Washington State and British Columbia and have been known to travel to coastal sites as far south as central California (71 FR 69054-69070). Transient forms (Eastern North Pacific Transient Stock) of the species prefer coastal waters from Alaska through California, and offshore forms (Eastern North Pacific Offshore Stock) can be found from Mexico to Alaska (71 FR 69054-69070). In general, this species is most abundant in colder waters and high latitudes; fairly abundant in temperate waters; lower densities in tropical, subtropical, and offshore waters (NMFS 2018a, 70 FR 69903-69912).	Low potential to occur. Foraging resources (primarily fish) are present in the Action Area, which could be prey for offshore stocks that occasionally visit the area (feed primarily on sharks). Residents have only been observed as far south as Monterey Bay. However, transients (which prey on marine mammals) are more common in the Santa Barbara Channel, with more occurrences nearer to the islands than the shore (PBCS 2018).
<i>Peponocephala electra</i>	Melon-headed whale	MMPA	Primarily in deep waters throughout the tropical areas of the world (NMFS 2018a).	Not expected to occur. The Action Area is located outside of this species' known range. The closest habitat occurs in Baja. This species is rarely found nearshore. They feed on squid and small fish deep in the water column (Jefferson, Webber and Pitman 2008). This species prefers deep waters and is unlikely to occur in the Action Area.
<i>Phocoenoides dalli</i>	Dall's porpoise	MMPA	North Pacific open ocean, prefers temperate to boreal waters than are more than 600 feet	Low potential to occur. This species feeds on mid-water fish and squid in offshore waters, only using nearshore

APPENDIX B
Federally Protected Species Potential To Occur

Scientific Name	Common Name	Federal Status ¹	Distribution and Primary Habitat Associations	Potential to Occur
			(180 meters) in depth and temperatures between 36-63°F (NMFS 2018a).	waters if there are deep-water features such as canyons (Jefferson, Webber and Pitman 2008). Although there are many scattered observations of this species in the Santa Barbara Channel (predominantly north of Santa Cruz Island), the closest occurrences near the Action Area occurred in 2007 (PBCS 2018). This species prefers deep waters and unlikely to occur in the Action Area.
<i>Phocoena phocoena</i>	Harbor porpoise	MMPA	North temperate and subarctic coastal and offshore waters; commonly found in bays, estuaries, harbors, and fjords less than 650 feet deep. Along the North American coast, range from central California to the Beaufort Sea (NMFS 2018a).	Not expected to occur. The Action Area is located outside of this species' known range. The Action Area may have their preferred prey species (cephalopods and small schooling fish) but the southern range of the species extends only to Point Conception. A shallow-water species, they normally inhabit waters less than 100 m (Jefferson, Webber and Pitman 2008). In addition, the closest incidental observation of the species were located along the Gaviota coast in 1992 (PBCS 2018).
<i>Physeter catodon</i> (= <i>microcephalus</i>)	Sperm whale	Endangered, MMPA	Worldwide; prefer deep waters and consumes deep water species (e.g., squid, sharks, skates, and fish) (NMFS 2018a)	Not expected to occur. A somewhat migratory species, sperm whales inhabit continental slope and oceanic waters with steep drop-offs where they prey on cephalopods (Jefferson, Webber and Pitman 2008). Although a few incidental observations of this species has occurred in the Santa Barbara Channel (dated 2002, 2004, and 2016; PBCS 2018), this species prefers deep waters and is unlikely to occur in the Action Area.
<i>Pseudorca crassidens</i>	False killer whale	MMPA	Ranges in the U.S. in Hawaii, along the west coast, and mid-Atlantic coast. Prefer tropical to temperate waters deeper than 3,300 feet (1,000 meters) (NMFS 2018a).	Not expected to occur. False killer whales are found in deep, offshore waters, and sometimes occur on the continental shelf (Jefferson, Webber and Pitman 2008). They feed on cephalopods and fish which are present in the Channel. However, this species prefers deep waters and is unlikely to occur in the Action Area.
<i>Stenella coeruleoalba</i>	Striped dolphin	MMPA	Mainly found seaward of the continental shelf from 50°N to 40°S latitude. Prefer highly productive tropical to warm temperate waters (52-84°F) that are oceanic and deep; often occurs in areas of upwelling and convergence zones (NMFS 2018a).	Not expected to occur. Primarily a warm water species that can be associated with convergence zones. They feed on fish in pelagic zones, along the continental slope or oceanic regions (Jefferson, Webber and Pitman 2008). This species prefers open oceans, has been recorded west of the Channel Islands (NMFS 2017c), and is unlikely to occur in the Action Area.
<i>Steno bredanensis</i>	Rough-toothed dolphin	MMPA	Worldwide; found primarily in deep waters throughout tropical and warmer temperate areas. Two recognized stock occur in Hawaii and Northern Gulf of Mexico (NMFS	Not expected to occur. This warm open ocean species rarely ranges north of 40° N (Jefferson, Webber and

APPENDIX B
Federally Protected Species Potential To Occur

Scientific Name	Common Name	Federal Status ¹	Distribution and Primary Habitat Associations	Potential to Occur
			2018a). May be a specialist feeder on mahi mahi (<i>Coryphaena hippurus</i>).	Pitman 2008). Suitable deep water habitats are absent in the Action Area.
<i>Tursiops truncatus</i>	Common bottlenose dolphin	MMPA	Worldwide ranging from 45°N to 45°S latitude; found in temperate and tropical waters. Coastal populations migrate into bays, estuaries, and river mouths. Offshore populations inhabit pelagic waters along the continental shelf.	High potential to occur. A common coastal species and a generalist feeder (Jefferson, Webber and Pitman 2008). This species has many occurrences throughout the Santa Barbara Channel and within or directly adjacent to the Action Area (PBCS 2018). This species is also known to regularly occur within 1 kilometer of shore (Carretta et al. 1998).
<i>Ziphius cavirostris</i>	Cuvier's beaked whale	MMPA	Worldwide in temperate, subtropical, and tropical waters; prefer deep pelagic waters (typically 3,300 feet or deeper along the continental slope and edge or deep geologic features)(NMFS 2018a).	Not expected to occur. This widely distributed species is found in offshore waters, especially deep waters near the continental slope, necessary for catching deep-sea squid.(Jefferson, Webber and Pitman 2008). This species prefers deep waters and unlikely to occur in the Action Area.
Mustelids				
<i>Enhydra lutris nereis</i>	Southern sea otter	Threatened, MMPA	North Pacific Ocean; occurs in only two areas of California: the mainland coastline from San Mateo County to Santa Barbara County, and San Nicholas Island, Ventura County (USFWS 2015).	Low potential to occur. One of four disjunct remnant populations, the central/southern California population sea otters are found in shallow, nearshore waters along the coast (Jefferson, Webber and Pitman 2008). This species known range is both north and south of the Action Area and this species usually occurs within 2 kilometers (1.2 miles) of shore (USFWS 2015). However, it is possible that foraging/travelling individuals may traverse the Action Area.
Pinnipeds				
<i>Arctocephalus philippii townsendii</i>	Guadalupe fur seal	Threatened, MMPA	Tropical waters of the Southern California/Mexico region. This non-migratory species breeds along rocky coastal habitats and associated caves (NMFS 2018a).	Low potential to occur. This species has known haulouts and breeding colonies (rookeries) along the Channel Islands, San Miguel Island (CDFW 2009), and Guadalupe Island, Mexico (where most of the known rookeries are located)(NMFS 2018a). This species travels great distances to foraging areas for lanternfish and squid and therefore may traverse and/or forage in the Action Area. They are highly pelagic species and foraging areas are not well known. They prefer far offshore to deep oceanic areas for feeding (Jefferson, Webber and Pitman 2008).
<i>Callorhinus ursinus</i>	Northern fur seal	MMPA (Depleted – Eastern Pacific Stock)	Open ocean for foraging and rocky beaches for reproduction. Haul out habitat may include rocky or sandy beaches (NMFS 2018a).	Low potential to occur. Northern fur seals migrate from the Bering Sea southward to the North Pacific to feed in the winter. This species is known to haulout and breed at San Miguel Island (NMFS 2018a, CDFW 2009). This

APPENDIX B
Federally Protected Species Potential To Occur

Scientific Name	Common Name	Federal Status ¹	Distribution and Primary Habitat Associations	Potential to Occur
				species has the potential to forage on fish and squid in the Action Area, however, they are one of the most pelagic pinnipeds and their foraging is usually offshore at the edge of the continental shelf and slope (Jefferson, Webber and Pitman 2008).
<i>Eumetopias jubatus</i>	Steller sea lion	Endangered (Western DPS) and Delisted due to Recovery (Eastern DPS), MMPA	North Pacific Ocean, mainly around coasts to outer continental shelf and slope. Prefer cold temperate to sub-arctic waters. Haul-outs and rookeries usually on beaches, ledges, and rocky reefs (NMFS 2018a).	Low potential to occur. On the west coast of North America, Steller sea lions range from the Aleutian Islands to Central California (formally southern California). This species is rarely seen south of Monterey Bay (Jefferson, Webber and Pitman 2008). Although foraging resources (fishes and cephalopods) are present in the Action Area, the closest known rookery is located at Año Nuevo Island off the coast of central California (Allen and Angliss 2014).
<i>Mirounga angustirostris</i>	Northern elephant seal	MMPA	Eastern and central North Pacific Ocean most of the year (9 months); prefer sandy beaches when on land. Range from Alaska to Mexico and typically breed in the Channel Islands or Baja California (NMFS 2018a).	Low potential to occur. This species migrates to and from their rookeries twice a year. Rookeries range from Baja to northern California (Jefferson, Webber and Pitman 2008). In addition, this species is known to haulout and breed at the Channel Islands (NMFS 2018a, Lowry et al. 2014, CDFW 2009). This species is a deep diver (300-800 meters) and prefers to forage in deeper pelagic waters, often with seamounts and other underwater features (Jefferson, Webber and Pitman 2008). Foraging resources (e.g., squid, fishes) are present in the Action Area. However, when present at the Channel Islands, they are spending their time molting. Their preferred foraging areas are north of the islands.
<i>Phoca vitulina</i>	Pacific harbor seal	MMPA	Generally non-migratory. On the U.S. west coast this species is found in coastal and estuarine waters from Canada to Baja California, Mexico. Temperate coastal habitats and uses rocks, reefs, beaches, and drifting glacial ice for hauling out and pupping sites (NMFS 2018a).	High potential to occur. This species is non-migratory and inhabits the coast to the continental slope (Jefferson, Webber and Pitman 2008). Harbor seals have known haulouts and rookeries at Rincon Point (Santa Barbara County) and Point Mugu (Ventura County); and haulouts from Point Conception to Santa Barbara and along all of the Channel Islands (CDFW 2009). Diving averages less than 35 meters and they are generalist feeders (Jefferson, Webber and Pitman 2008).
<i>Zalophus californianus</i>	California sea lion	MMPA	Eastern North Pacific Ocean from central Mexico to Canada; shallow coastal and estuarine waters; prefers sandy beaches for haul out sites but will also haul out on marina docks, jetties, and buoys (NMFS 2018a).	High potential to occur. This species is present along the west coast from Puerto Vallarta to Alaska. Males (adult, subadult and juveniles) undertake a northward migration to Central California and Washington after the breeding season in southern rookeries are generalist feeders (Jefferson, Webber and Pitman 2008). This species has

APPENDIX B
Federally Protected Species Potential To Occur

Scientific Name	Common Name	Federal Status ¹	Distribution and Primary Habitat Associations	Potential to Occur
				known haulouts along all of the Channel Islands and rookeries at San Nicholas Island (CDFW 2009, NMFS 2018a). California sea lions are generalist opportunistic feeders and utilize the continental shelf and slope, but have also been observed in deeper oceanic waters (Jefferson, Webber and Pitman 2008).
Birds				
<i>Brachyramphus marmoratus</i> (nesting)	Marbled murrelet	Threatened	Breeds along the coast from Santa Cruz County north to Alaska. Nests in old-growth coastal forests, sea-facing talus slopes, or cliffs (Nelson 1997). During migration and winter (mostly July to February), occurs from Baja California to Alaska during the non-breeding season, in nearshore and protected coastal waters. Usually feeds nearshore within 5 kilometers (3 miles) and in waters less than 60 meters (197 feet) deep. Dives and pursues prey (opportunistic feeder) by flying underwater. This species is opportunistic and feeds on fish, crustaceans, and squid (Nelson 1997).	Low potential to feed. Suitable foraging habitat is present within the Action Area. However, while this species occurs regularly north of Point Conception, it occurs far less frequently farther south (CLO 2018, Lehman 2018, Garrett and Dunn 1991). In addition, the Action Area is located 3 miles off the coast of Ventura County, at the very edge of where this species potentially occurs. Not expected to nest. The Action Area occurs in open water, and nesting habitat is absent.
<i>Phoebastria albatrus</i>	Short-tailed albatross	Endangered	Nests on several isolated islands of the northwestern Pacific, but travels over much of the northern Pacific to forage in open waters for squid, fish, fish eggs, shrimp, and crustaceans.	Very low potential to forage. This species forages widely throughout the North Pacific Ocean and Bering Sea (USFWS 2018e). The global population is extremely low (approximately 1,200 individuals), and this species is an extremely rare visitor to offshore waters along the California coast, with only 43 records in the state since the 1970s (USFWS 2018e, CBRC 2018). The majority of occurrences are from north of Point Conception, but several have been observed farther south, with the nearest reports being of 1 subadult at Prisoner's Harbor, Santa Cruz Island, in July 2005, and 1 subadult at Santa Barbara Island in February and March 2002 (CBRC 2018). Not expected to nest. The Action Area occurs in open water, so nesting habitat is absent.
<i>Sternula antillarum browni</i> (nesting colony)	California least tern	Endangered	Breeding range extends from the San Francisco Bay Area south to Baja California, Mexico, including nesting colonies in coastal Santa Barbara and Ventura counties. May migrate coastally or over open water.	Low potential to forage. The site is farther from shore and in deeper water than where this species prefers to forage. Individuals may occasionally pass through the Action Area during migration.

APPENDIX B
Federally Protected Species Potential To Occur

Scientific Name	Common Name	Federal Status ¹	Distribution and Primary Habitat Associations	Potential to Occur
			Forages in shallow estuaries and lagoons. During the nesting season, foraging primarily takes places within 2 miles of shore and in waters less than 60 feet deep (USFWS 2006). Nests on sandy beaches or exposed tidal flats.	Not expected to nest. The Action Area is in open water, and nesting habitat is absent.
Sea Turtles³				
<i>Caretta caretta</i>	Loggerhead sea turtle (North Pacific Ocean DPS)	Endangered	Occurs in tropical to temperate waters in the Pacific Ocean. Nesting in the Pacific basin occurs along Japan and Australia, where it nests on ocean beaches, usually with high energy, narrow, steeply slopes, and coarse-grain sand. Migrates from nesting grounds in Japan and Australia to feeding grounds located along the west coast from central to north America. Baja California has the largest known aggregations of loggerhead sea turtles. Migrates along nearshore coastal waters (neritic zone). Typically feeds on benthic invertebrates in hard bottom habitats, although fish and plants are occasionally consumed (NMFS and USFWS 1998a).	High potential to feed and migrate. During ideal conditions (water temp/break), this species is known to migrate along the coast of California including the Santa Barbara Channel. Although there is no suitable feeding habitat (hard bottoms, benthic invertebrates) within the Action Area, during migration they may enter the Action Area. Sightings of this species along the U.S. west coast typically are of juveniles measuring 20-60 centimeter shell length (NMFS and USFWS 1998a). This species has also been observed at San Clemente Island (NMFS and USFWS 2007). Not expected to nest. Nesting occurs mainly on open beaches or along narrow bays having suitable sand, and often in association with other species of sea turtles. No beach habitat is present in the Action Area and the Santa Barbara Channel is outside of nesting range. There are no known nesting habitats that occur along the western seaboard of the U.S. or Hawaii (NMFS and USFWS 1998a). The closest known loggerhead nesting beaches in the North Pacific Ocean are located in Japan (NMFS and USFWS 2007).
<i>Chelonia mydas</i>	Green sea turtle (East Pacific DPS)	Threatened	Eastern Pacific Ocean range. This species forages in the open ocean as well as shallow waters of lagoons, bays, estuaries, mangroves, eelgrass, and seaweed beds	High potential to occur. Green sea turtles are generally found in shallow waters except when migrating. They have been observed at Sterns Wharf in Santa Barbara harbor and at the Channel Islands. This species may migrate and/or forage in the Action Area. A regular visitor in the waters off the southwest coast of the US. Residents occur in the San Gabriel River, Long Beach (NMFS and USFWS 1998b).

APPENDIX B
Federally Protected Species Potential To Occur

Scientific Name	Common Name	Federal Status ¹	Distribution and Primary Habitat Associations	Potential to Occur
				Not expected to nest. This species requires open beaches with a sloping platform and minimal disturbance for nesting. The closest known nesting occurrences are in Mexico (NMFS and USFWS 1998b).
<i>Dermochelys coriacea</i>	Leatherback sea turtle (Western Pacific Population)	Endangered	Pacific Ocean pelagic marine waters; foraging habitat unknown. This population migrates from their nesting grounds in the Indo-Pacific to feeding areas off the Pacific coast of North America.	<p>Not expected to occur. This species migrates to the west coast of North America to forage on jellyfish, salps and pyrosomes. They utilize both open ocean and coastal habitats. Despite the Channel Islands area not being within the Final Critical Designated Habitat for Leatherback sea turtles, this species could nonetheless migrate and/or forage in the Action Area. This species has been observed in Monterey Bay (NMFS and USFWS 1998c).</p> <p>Not expected to nest. Nesting for the Western Pacific Population occurs in Indonesia. Their preferred nesting beaches are typically on continent shores and have unobstructed, often deep offshore access (NMFS and USFWS 1998c).</p>
<i>Eretmochelys imbricata</i>	Hawksbill sea turtle	Endangered	Circumtropical oceans (generally 30°N to 30°S latitude), including the Pacific Ocean pelagic marine waters	<p>Not expected to occur. This species is rare to nonexistent in most localities (NMFS and USFWS 1998d) but may migrate and/or forage (specialist sponge carnivore) in Action Area. However, the Action Area is a sandy bottom habitat, and this species is typically found feeding in the vicinity of rock or reef habitats in shallow tropical waters. No sighting have been documented in recent history (NMFS and USFWS 1998d).</p> <p>Not expected to nest. Hawksbill sea turtles nest high up on the beach under/in dune vegetation, commonly in pocket beaches without a lot of sand. The largest remaining concentrations of nesting hawksbills occur on remote oceanic islands of Australia and the Indian Ocean. Other known nesting sites include Hawaii. American Samoa, Guam, Republic of Palau, Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, Republic of the Marshall Islands, and the Federated States of Micronesia (NMFS and USFWS 1998d).</p>
<i>Lepidochelys olivacea</i>	Olive Ridley sea turtle	Threatened ⁴	Pacific Ocean pelagic marine waters; foraging habitat unknown (NMFS and USFWS 1998d).	Low potential to occur. This species distribution ranges from Southern California to Northern Chile. Olive Ridley sea turtles are mostly pelagic but will also inhabit coastal areas. This species feeds on algae, lobster, crabs, tunicates,

APPENDIX B
Federally Protected Species Potential To Occur

Scientific Name	Common Name	Federal Status ¹	Distribution and Primary Habitat Associations	Potential to Occur
				<p>mollusks, shrimp, and fish. Olive Ridley sea turtles may migrate and/or forage in the Action Area. This species has been observed in the Los Angeles Harbor (NMFS and USFWS 1998e).</p> <p>Not expected to nest. In the eastern Pacific, the largest nesting concentrations occur in southern Mexico and northern Costa Rica, with some nesting as far north as southern Baja California. This species nests on continental margins, and exhibits an unusual nesting habit called "arribada" whereby up to thousands of turtles come ashore at the same time to nest.</p>
Sharks/Rays				
<i>Carcharhinus longimanus</i>	Oceanic whitetip shark	Threatened	Worldwide, in tropical and sub-tropical waters and found up to 30°N and 30°S latitude (USFWS 2018c). This species is pelagic, mostly offshore in open ocean or along the continental shelf. They are opportunistic feeders and top predators, and prefer fish and cephalopods (NMFS 2018a).	Not expected to occur. Action Area is outside of this species known range.
<i>Cetorhinus maximus</i>	Basking shark	NMFS Species of Concern	Inhabits tropical and arctic waters but most commonly observed in coastal temperate waters. This species is a filter feeder, forages at the surface, and consumes zooplankton (NMFS 2018b).	Low potential to occur. This species is not common, and has had a dramatic decline since the mid-1900's from fishing and the eastern Pacific population has not rebounded (NMFS 2018b). The Action Area is located at the southernmost extent of their range.
<i>Manta birostris</i>	Giant manta ray	Threatened	Inhabits temperate, subtropical and temperate waters, utilizing all habitats: offshore, oceanic and coastal areas.. This species feeds mainly on zooplankton and can be found diving to depths of 10 – 1,000 meters (NMFS 2018a).	Low potential to occur. Manta rays can be found in temperatures as low as 19°C (66.2°F). Santa Barbara Channel waters are not normally warm enough for this species. Last year in Ventura waters, only the month of August was warm enough for this species (NOAA 2018d).
Fish				
<i>Acipenser medirostris</i>	Green Sturgeon (southern DPS)	Threatened, NMFS Species of Concern	Ranges from Alaska to Mexico and spawns in the Rogue River, Klamath River Basin and the Sacramento River. Spawns in deep pools in large, turbulent, freshwater rivers; adults live in oceanic waters, bays, and estuaries, feeding on benthic invertebrates (NMFS 2015a).	Low potential to occur. Adults may migrate and/or forage in the project vicinity. There is very little data on green sturgeon use from Monterey south to the Mexican border. The area may be used minimally by the southern DPS (NOAA 2009).

APPENDIX B
Federally Protected Species Potential To Occur

Scientific Name	Common Name	Federal Status ¹	Distribution and Primary Habitat Associations	Potential to Occur
<i>Catostomus santaanae</i>	Santa Ana Sucker	Threatened	Small, shallow, cool, clear streams less than 7 meters (23 feet) in width and a few centimeters to more than a meter (1.5 inches to more than 3 feet) in depth; substrates are generally coarse gravel, rubble, and boulder (USFWS 2011)	Not expected to occur. Habitat is unsuitable for this species. This species inhabits freshwater streams only.
<i>Gadus microcephalus</i>	Pacific cod (Salish Sea Population)	NMFS Species of Concern	This specific population inhabits Puget Sound, the Strait of Juan de Fuca and the Strait of Georgia. They feed on krill, shrimp, sand lance and crabs. They are often found over sandy bottoms and eelgrass may play a role in habitat selection (NMFS 2011a).	Not expected to occur. Although the Action Area is a sandy bottom substrate, no eelgrass is present at these depths. The Action Area not within the species known range.
<i>Encyclogobius newberryi</i>	Tidewater goby	Endangered	Brackish water habitats along the California coast from Agua Hedionda Lagoon, San Diego County, to the mouth of the Smith River (USFWS 2005).	Not expected to occur. Unsuitable habitat for tidewater goby, as they are a freshwater and brackish water species. Rincon Creek, Santa Clara River and Ventura River are the closest known locations of this species to the Action Area.
<i>Merluccius productus</i>	Pacific hake (Georgia Basin DPS)	NMFS Species of Concern	The Georgia Basin DPS includes three stocks: the highly migratory stock that ranges from southern California to Queen Charlotte Sound, a central-south Puget Sound Stock and a Strait of Georgia stock (NMFS 2009a).	Not expected to occur. The highly migratory stock range includes southern California waters where the Action Area is located. The highly migratory stock spawns in the winter in California and migrates northward to feed as far north as Vancouver Island in the summer and spring. They are found at moderate depths of up to 3,000 feet (910 meters) (NMFS 2009a).
<i>Oncorhynchus keta</i>	Chum salmon	Threatened	Inhabits the lowermost reaches of rivers and streams, open ocean for anadromous form. Historical distribution included as far south as Monterey, however presently major spawning populations are found only as far south as Tillamook Bay, Oregon (NMFS 2017d).	Not expected to occur. The Action Area not within the species' known range.
<i>Oncorhynchus kisutch</i>	Coho salmon (Puget Sound/Strait of Georgia ESU)	NMFS Species of Concern	Inhabits streams and freshwater tributaries with gravel substrates, open ocean for anadromous form. This species distribution is from central California to Alaska (NMFS 2016a).	Not expected to occur. The Action Area not within the species' known range.
<i>Oncorhynchus mykiss</i>	Steelhead trout-Oregon Coast ESU	NMFS Species of Concern	Ranges from Asia, through Alaska and south to Southern California. This is a coastal species (NMFS 2008).	Not expected to occur. Oceanic range is unknown. However, spawning rivers only occur in rovers basins on the coast of Oregon from the Columbia River south to Cape Blanco (NMFS 2008).

APPENDIX B
Federally Protected Species Potential To Occur

Scientific Name	Common Name	Federal Status ¹	Distribution and Primary Habitat Associations	Potential to Occur
<i>Oncorhynchus mykiss irideus</i>	Southern steelhead-Southern California DPS	NMFS Species of Concern	This DPS includes watersheds from the Santa Maria River to the U.S. Mexican border, coast and inland habitats. Clean, clear, cool, well-oxygenated streams; needs relatively deep pools in migration and gravelly substrate to spawn, open ocean for anadromous form (NMFS 2016b).	Low potential to occur. Adults may migrate and/or forage in project vicinity Steelhead were observed in 2017 occupying the Ventura River (A. Dransfield, pers. comm.).
<i>Oncorhynchus nerka</i>	Sockeye salmon (Snake River ESU and Ozette Lake ESU)	Endangered (Snake River) and Threatened (Ozette Lake)	In the U.S., these populations occur in Oregon and Washington, and critical habitat is designated for this species in Snake River and Ozette Lake. This species inhabits riverine, marine and lake environments (lakes are a requirement), and feed on aquatic insects and plankton (NMFS 2015b).	Not expected to occur. The Action Area is outside of species range.
<i>Oncorhynchus tshawytscha</i>	Chinook salmon (Central Valley Fall, Late-fall run ESU)	NMFS Species of Concern	In the U.S., Chinook salmon ranges from Alaska to California. This ESU spawns in the Sacramento River and San Joaquin River. Chinook salmon require deeper and larger freshwater streams than other salmonids; open ocean for anadromous form. They range from Alaska to Southern California, and feed on aquatic insects, amphipods, crustaceans, and, once they are large enough, fish (NMFS 2010).	Not expected to occur. The Action Area not within the species' known range.
<i>Sebastes levis</i>	Cowcod	NMFS Species of Concern	The species ranges from central Oregon to central Baja California and Guadalupe Island, Mexico. Inhabits deep shelf and upper continental slope, inhabiting depths of 65 to 1,600 feet (20 to 500 meters) in rocky areas, and feeds on squid, octopus and other fish (NMFS 2009b).	Low potential to occur Unsuitable habitat for cowcod, individuals may migrate through the area. Southern California has been recognized as the center of distribution of the species since the 1880s (Eigenmann and Beeson 1894).
<i>Sebastes paucispinus</i>	Bocaccio (Southern DPS)	NMFS Species of Concern	Ranges from Baja California to Alaska; most common between 160-820 feet in depth, but found up to 1,560 feet in depth. This species feeds on other fish species (mainly other rockfish) (NMFS 2007b).	Not expected to occur. This species prefers deep waters and is unlikely to occur in the Action Area.
<i>Sebastes ruberrimus</i>	Yelloweye rockfish	Threatened	Yelloweye rockfish range from northern Baja California to Alaska. This species is associated with rocky reefs, kelp canopies, and artificial structures like oil platforms.	Not expected to occur. This species prefers deep waters, is more common from Central California northward, and is unlikely to occur in the Action Area.

APPENDIX B
Federally Protected Species Potential To Occur

Scientific Name	Common Name	Federal Status ¹	Distribution and Primary Habitat Associations	Potential to Occur
			Adults prefer deeper waters and rocky bottoms. This species is commonly found in depths of 300 to 590 feet (91 to 180 meters)(NMFS 2017e).	
<i>Sphyrna lewini</i>	Scalloped hammerhead shark	Threatened	In the east Pacific, scalloped hammerhead sharks range from southern California to Ecuador. Inhabits coastal warm temperate and tropical seas, ranging from intertidal to depths of up to 1000 meters. Adults are common at seamounts (Miller et al. 2013).	Low potential to occur. Adults may migrate and/or forage in the project vicinity.
<i>Thaleichthys pacificus</i>	Pacific eulachon (Southern DPS)	Threatened	Ranges from Northern California to Alaska and into the southeastern Bering Sea. Critical habitat is designated for the Southern DPS in northern California in Mad River, Redwood Creek and Klamath River. Anadromous fish, endemic to northeastern Pacific Ocean. In the US, most eulachon production originates in the Columbia River Basin (NMFS 2011b).	Not expected to occur. The Action Area is outside of this species' known range. No records at the Channel Islands, Critical habitat extends as far south as the Mad River, Northern California (NMFS 2011b).
Invertebrates				
<i>Haliotis corrugate</i>	Pink abalone	NMFS Species of Concern	Ranges from Point Conception to Baja California. This species required sheltered waters with depths from 20 to 118 feet (6 - 36 m) (NMFS 2007c).	Not expected to occur. Suitable habitat not present. Very low population numbers.
<i>Haliotis cracherodii</i>	Black abalone	Endangered	This species feeds predominantly on kelp and inhabits rocky, low intertidal zones up to 6 meters deep (NMFS 2009c) Their range extends from Point Area in Mendocino County to Northern Baja California.	Not expected to occur. Suitable habitat not present. Very low population numbers. The nearest critical habitat to the Action Area is at Anacapa Island (NMFS 2011c).
<i>Haliotis fulgens</i>	Green abalone	NMFS Species of Concern	Ranges from Point Conception to Baja California. This species is found in rock crevices in shallow water on exposed coast from the low intertidal to depths of 60 feet (18 m) (NMFS 2009d).	Not expected to occur. Suitable habitat not present. Very low population numbers.
<i>Haliotis kamtschatkana</i>	Pinto abalone	NMFS Species of Concern	Ranges from Sitka, Alaska to Point Conception. This species is usually found in the tidal zone up to 30 feet but can be at depths of up to 330 feet. Pinto Abalone are associated with kelp beds in exposed areas (NMFS 2014).	Not expected to occur. Suitable habitat not present. Very low population numbers. The Action Area is not within this species known range.

APPENDIX B

Federally Protected Species Potential To Occur

Scientific Name	Common Name	Federal Status ¹	Distribution and Primary Habitat Associations	Potential to Occur
<i>Haliotis sorenseni</i>	White abalone	Endangered	Open low- or high-relief rock or bolder areas interspersed with sand channels. This species inhabits rocky pinnacles and deep reefs in Southern California; especially those off the Channel Islands (Hobday and Tegner 2000).	Not expected to occur. Suitable habitat not present. Observed along the coastline in Santa Barbara County and the Channel Islands. They usually occur at depths of 20-60 meters and to be most abundant between 25-30 meters (80-100 feet)(Hobday and Tegner 2000).

Notes:

¹ **Federal Status:** MMPA = Marine Mammal Protection Act (50 CFR Part 216); Depleted species population stock is below optimum sustainable populations; NMFS Species of Concern = National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) Species of Concern (not federally listed or protected under the Endangered Species Act).

² The best potential to occur assessment has been provided given the paucity of information available for marine mammals, especially whales. Low potentials to occur do not negate the possibility of a given whale species occurring in the Action Area.

³ Sea turtles are highly migratory and much of their geographic range and/or foraging habitat in the Pacific Ocean is unknown (e.g., see NMFS and USFWS 1998a)

⁴ Endangered status provided to the breeding colony populations on the Pacific Coast of Mexico.

APPENDIX C

Phytoplankton Population Impact Calculations

Appendix C

PHYTOPLANKTON POPULATION IMPACT STATEMENT AND CALCULATION

Adapted from Santa Barbara Mariculture Company MND calculations for estimating the maximum effect of a mussel farm on phytoplankton (CDFG 2018).

Estimating the Maximum Effect of a Mussel Farm on Phytoplankton:

Use estimates of maximum clearance rates of mussels, scale up to show how much water passes through mussels in the farm and using minimum flow rates assess how much phytoplankton is removed by the mussel farm. This will be a MAXIMUM estimate of the effects of a mussel farm on phytoplankton. We use the maximum clearance rate for mussels in the mariculture study of Brigolin *et al.*, (2009). From their table 2, they use a maximum clearance rate (CR_max) of 107 liters / (day g DW). Source info for the CR_max estimates are in Brigolin *et al.*, (2009). Table 2 also provide various conversion ratios for wet to dry weight (17.4; which includes the shell weight).

Ventura Shellfish Enterprise wants to grow a maximum of 22,000,000 pounds of mussels at a time (this is the maximum amount the plots can produce, assuming all plots are leased and all arrays are at the grow-out stage simultaneously). This is equivalent to 9,979,032 kg or 573,507 kg DW (using the conversion rate above).

The maximum volume of seawater flowing through mussels is 1.0×10^9 liters/day or $\sim 1 \times 10^6$ m³ / day (=573,507 kg DW * 107 liters/(day g DW)). This assumes the mussels are filtering seawater at their maximum rate.

$$573,507 \text{ kg DW} * 107 \text{ liters} = \sim 61,365,249 \text{ m}^3/\text{day}$$

The turnover time (how long it takes the entire volume seawater at the farm to go through mussels) is equal to: Turnover time through mussels = volume_farm / farm_clearance_rate
Note: 1 ac = 4047m²

$$\text{Volume_farm} = \text{Area}(= 2000 \text{ acres}) * \text{Depth}(=30\text{m}) = 2000 \text{ acres} * 4047\text{m}^2 = 8,094,000 \text{ m}^3/\text{acre}$$

$$\text{The turnover time is therefore equal to...} = \text{volume_farm} / \text{farm_clearance_rate} = (8,094,000 \text{ m}^3/\text{acre}) * 30 \text{ m} = 242,820,000 \text{ m}^3 / (61,365,249 \text{ m}^3/\text{day}) = 2 \text{ days}$$

So how does this 2 day turnover time compare with how long seawater is resident in the farm itself? To do this we will use a MINIMUM velocity scale (10 cm/s) to assess MAXIMUM residence time of water in the farm. The minimum flow rate estimate comes from many years of measurements off Arroyo Burro by the SBC LTER. It is the ratio of the two time scales that is important here.

$$\text{Max_res_time} = \text{Farm_size}(\text{sqrt}(2000\text{acres})) / \text{Min_Speed}(10 \text{ cm/s} \sim 10 \text{ km/d}) = 0.0136 \text{ km} / 10 \text{ km/d} = 0.00136 \text{ day} = 0.03 \text{ hour} = \sim 2 \text{ min.}$$

Note that the time scales differ by orders of magnitude (2 min & 2 d) and the mussels will not clear much of the water passing through the farm.



SOURCE: NAIP 2016

DUDEK

0 3,600 7,200 Feet

FIGURE 5
CASS Report Alternative 1 Overlaid with SeaSketch Alternative 8